Securities Act File No. 333-

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

FORM N-2
REGISTRATION STATEMENT
UNDER

THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933 ☒

Pre-Effective Amendment No. ☐

Post-Effective Amendment No. ☐

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in Charter)

1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005
Evanston, Illinois 60201
(Address of Principal Executive Offices)

(847) 859-3940
(Registrant's Telephone Number, including Area Code)

Edward H. Ross
Chief Executive Officer
1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005
Evanston, Illinois 60201
(Name and Address of Agent for Service)

COPIES TO:

Steven B. Boehm
Payam Siadatpour
Eversheds Sutherland (US) LLP
700 Sixth Street, NW, Suite 700
Washington, D.C. 20001-3980
(202) 383-0100

Approximate date of proposed public offering: From time to time after the effective date of the Registration Statement.

If any securities being registered on this form will be offered on a delayed or continuous basis in reliance on Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered in connection with a dividend reinvestment plan, check the following box. ☒

It is proposed that this filing will become effective (check appropriate box):

☒ when declared effective pursuant to section 8(c).

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

Title of Securities Being Registered	Amount Being Registered	Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price(1)	Amount of Registration Fee(2)
Common Stock, par value $0.001 per share(3)			
Preferred Stock(3)			
Subscription Rights(3)			
Debt Securities(4)			
Warrants(5)			
Total		$300,000,000(6)	$22,750

(1) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee. Pursuant to Rule 457(o) of the rules and regulations under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), which permits the registration fee to be calculated on the basis of the maximum offering price of all the securities listed, the table does not specify by each class information as to the amount to be registered, proposed maximum offering price per unit or proposed maximum aggregate offering price.

(2) Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act, the Registrant is carrying forward to this Registration Statement $117,265,845 in aggregate offering price of unsold securities that the Registrant previously registered on its registration statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-202531) (the "Prior Registration Statement"), which was initially filed by the Registrant on March 5, 2015. Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act, the filing fee previously paid with respect to such unsold securities will continue to be applied to such unsold securities. The amount of the registration fee in the "Calculation of Registration Fee Under the Securities Act of 1933" table relates to the additional $182,734,155 in aggregate offering price of securities being registered hereunder. As a result, a filing fee of $22,750 is being paid herewith. If the Registrant sells any of such unsold securities pursuant to the Prior Registration Statement after the date of the initial filing and prior to the date of effectiveness of this Registration Statement, the Registrant will file a pre-effective amendment to this Registration Statement which will reduce the number of such unsold securities included on this Registration Statement. Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act, the offering of unsold securities under the Prior Registration Statement will be deemed terminated as of the date of effectiveness of this Registration Statement.

(3) Subject to Note 6 below, there is being registered hereunder an indeterminate principal amount of common stock, preferred stock, or subscription rights, from time to time.

(4) Subject to Note 6 below, there is being registered hereunder an indeterminate principal amount of debt securities as may be sold, from time to time. If any debt securities are issued at an original issue discount, then the offering price shall be in such greater principal amount as shall result in an aggregate price to investors not to exceed $300,000,000.

(5) Subject to Note 6 below, there is being registered hereunder an indeterminate principal amount of warrants as may be sold, from time to time, representing rights to purchase common stock, preferred stock or debt securities.

(6) In no event will the aggregate offering price of all securities issued from time to time pursuant to this Registration Statement exceed $300,000,000.

The Registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the Registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this Registration Statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or until this Registration Statement shall become effective on such date as the Securities and Exchange Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

Table of Contents

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

Subject To Completion, Dated March 1, 2018

PROSPECTUS

$300,000,000

FIDUS
INVESTMENT
CORPORATION

Common Stock
Preferred Stock
Subscription Rights
Debt Securities
Warrants

We may offer, from time to time, in one or more offerings or series, together or separately, up to $300,000,000 of our common stock, preferred stock, subscription rights, debt securities, or warrants representing rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock, or debt securities, which we refer to collectively as the "securities." We may sell our common stock through underwriters or dealers, "at-the-market" to or through a market maker into an existing trading market or otherwise directly to one or more purchasers or through agents or through a combination of methods of sale. The identities of such underwriters, dealers, market makers or agents, as the case may be, will be described in one or more supplements to this prospectus. The securities may be offered at prices and on terms to be described in one or more supplements to this prospectus.

We may offer shares of common stock at a discount to net asset value per share in certain circumstances. On June 15, 2017, our common stockholders voted to allow us to sell or otherwise issue common stock at a price below net asset value per share for a period of one year ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. We expect to present to our stockholders a similar proposal at our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. Sales of common stock at prices below net asset value per share dilute the interests of existing stockholders, have the effect of reducing our net asset value per share and may reduce our market price per share. In addition, continuous sales of common stock below net asset value may have a negative impact on total returns and could have a negative impact on the market price of our shares of common stock. See "Risk Factors" on page 12 and "Sales of Common Stock Below Net Asset Value" on page 101 of this prospectus for more information.

Our stockholders specified that the cumulative number of shares sold in each offering during the one-year period ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders may not exceed 25.0% of our outstanding common stock immediately prior to such sale. In addition, we cannot issue shares of our common stock below net asset value unless our board of directors determines that it would be in our and our stockholders' best interests to do so. Shares of closed-end investment companies such as us frequently trade at a discount to their net asset value. This risk is separate and distinct from the risk that our net asset value per share may decline. We cannot predict whether our common stock will trade above, at or below net asset value. You should read this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement carefully before you invest in our common stock.

We provide customized debt and equity financing solutions to lower middle-market companies located throughout the United States. We are an externally managed, closed-end, non-diversified management investment company that has elected to be regulated as a business development company under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended. Our investment objective is to provide attractive risk-adjusted returns by generating both current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our equity related investments. Our strategy includes partnering with business owners, management teams and financial sponsors by providing customized financing for ownership transactions, recapitalizations, strategic acquisitions, business expansion and other growth initiatives.

We generally invest in securities that would be rated below investment grade if they were rated. Below investment grade securities, which are often referred to as "high yield" or "junk," have speculative characteristics with respect to our capacity to pay interest and repay principal.

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol "FDUS." On February 27, 2018, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Global Select Market was $12.95 per share and our net asset value on December 31, 2017 was $16.05 per share.

Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC serves as our investment advisor and as our administrator.

Investing in our securities is speculative and involves numerous risks, and you could lose your entire investment if any of the risks occur. Among these risks is the risk associated with leverage and dilution. For more information regarding these risks, please see "Risk Factors" beginning on page 12.

Please read this prospectus and the accompanying prospectus supplement, if any, before investing, and keep it for future reference. It concisely sets forth important information about us that a prospective investor ought to know before investing in our securities. We file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information about us with the Securities and Exchange Commission. This information is available free of charge by contacting us at 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201, Attention: Investor Relations, by accessing our website at *http://www.fdus.com* or by calling us collect at (847) 859-3940. Information contained on our website is not incorporated by reference into, and you should not consider that information to be part of, this prospectus or any prospectus supplement. The Securities and Exchange Commission also maintains a website at *http://www.sec.gov* that contains such information.

The Securities and Exchange Commission has not approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

The date of this prospectus is , 2018

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we have filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, using the "shelf" registration process. Under the shelf registration process, we may offer, from time to time, up to $300,000,000 worth of our common stock, preferred stock, subscription rights, debt securities, or warrants representing rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities on terms to be determined at the time of the offering. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities that we may offer. Each time we use this prospectus to offer securities, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. The prospectus supplement may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. To the extent required by law, we will amend or supplement the information contained in this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement to reflect any material changes to such information subsequent to the date of the prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement and prior to the completion of any offering pursuant to the prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement. Please carefully read this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement together with the additional information described under "Available Information" and "Risk Factors" before you make an investment decision. During an offering, we will disclose material amendments to this prospectus through a post-effective amendment or prospectus supplement.

No dealer, salesperson or other person is authorized to give any information or to represent anything not contained in this prospectus or any accompanying supplement to this prospectus. You must not rely on any unauthorized information or representations not contained in this prospectus or any accompanying prospectus supplement as if we had authorized it. This prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement do not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of any offer to buy any security other than the registered securities to which they relate, nor do they constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy any securities in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such an offer or solicitation in such jurisdiction. The information contained in this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement is accurate as of the dates on their covers.

PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

This summary highlights some of the information in this prospectus. It is not complete and may not contain all of the information that you may want to consider. You should read the entire prospectus and any prospectus supplement carefully, including "Risk Factors," "Selected Consolidated Financial Data," "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and the financial statements contained elsewhere in this prospectus.

Fidus Investment Corporation ("FIC"), a Maryland Corporation, operates as an externally managed BDC under the 1940 Act. FIC completed its initial public offering, or IPO, in June 2011. In addition, FIC has elected to be treated as a regulated investment company ("RIC") under Subchapter M of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"). As of December 31, 2017, our shares were listed on the NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "FDUS."

FIC may make investments directly or through its two wholly-owned investment company subsidiaries, Fidus Mezzanine Capital, L.P. ("Fund I") and Fidus Mezzanine Capital II, L.P. ("Fund II")(collectively Fund I and Fund II are referred to as the "Funds"). Fidus Investment GP, LLC, the general partner of the Funds, is also a wholly owned subsidiary of FIC. The Funds are licensed by the U.S. Small Business Administration (the "SBA") as small business investment companies ("SBICs"). The Funds utilize the proceeds of the issuance of SBA-guaranteed debentures to enhance returns to our stockholders. We believe that utilizing both FIC and the Funds as investment vehicles provides us with access to a broader array of investment opportunities. Given our access to lower cost capital through the SBA's SBIC debenture program, we expect that the majority of our investments will continue to be made through the Funds until the Funds reach their borrowing limit under the program. For three or more SBICs under common control, the maximum amount of outstanding SBA debentures cannot exceed $350.0 million.

Unless otherwise noted in this prospectus, the terms "we," "us," "our," the "Company," "Fidus" and "FIC" refer to Fidus Investment Corporation and its consolidated subsidiaries.

As used in this prospectus, the term "our investment advisor" refers to Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC.

Fidus Investment Corporation

We provide customized debt and equity financing solutions to lower middle-market companies, which we define as U.S. based companies having revenues between $10.0 million and $150.0 million. Our investment objective is to provide attractive risk-adjusted returns by generating both current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our equity related investments. Our investment strategy includes partnering with business owners, management teams and financial sponsors by providing customized financing for ownership transactions, recapitalizations, strategic acquisitions, business expansion and other growth initiatives. We seek to maintain a diversified portfolio of investments in order to help mitigate the potential effects of adverse economic events related to particular companies, regions or industries.

We invest in companies that possess some or all of the following attributes: predictable revenues; positive cash flows; defensible and/or leading market positions; diversified customer and supplier bases; and proven management teams with strong operating discipline. We target companies in the lower middle-market with annual earnings, before interest, taxes, depreciation and amortization, or EBITDA, between $3.0 million and $20.0 million; however, we may from time to time opportunistically make investments in larger or smaller companies. Our investments typically range between $5.0 million and $30.0 million per portfolio company.

As of December 31, 2017, we had debt and equity investments in 63 portfolio companies with an aggregate fair value of $596.3 million. The weighted average yield on our debt investments as of December 31, 2017 was 13.0%. The weighted average yield of our debt investments is not the same as a return on investment for our stockholders but, rather, relates to a portion of our investment portfolio and is calculated before the payment of all of our fees and expenses. The weighted average yield was computed using the effective interest rates as of December 31, 2017, including accretion of original issue discount ("OID") and loan origination fees, but excluding investments on non-accrual status, if any. There can be no assurance that the weighted average yield will remain at its current level.

Market Opportunity

We believe that the limited amount of capital available to lower middle-market companies, coupled with the desire of these companies for flexible and partnership-oriented sources of capital, creates an attractive investment environment for us. From our perspective, lower middle-market companies have faced difficulty raising debt capital in both the capital markets and private markets. Given limited sources of capital for lower middle-market companies, we see opportunities for attractive risk-adjusted returns. Furthermore, we believe that, with a large pool of uninvested private equity capital seeking debt capital to complete buy-out transactions and a substantial supply of refinancing opportunities, there is an opportunity to attain appealing risk-adjusted returns on debt and equity investments in our target markets. See "The Company" in the accompanying prospectus for more information.

Business Strategy

We intend to accomplish our goal of becoming the premier provider of capital to and value-added partner of lower middle-market companies by:

- leveraging the experience of our investment advisor;
- capitalizing on our strong transaction sourcing network;
- serving as a value-added partner with customized financing solutions;
- employing rigorous due diligence and underwriting processes focused on capital preservation;
- actively managing our portfolio;
- benefiting from lower cost of capital through our SBIC subsidiaries.

Investment Criteria/Guidelines

We use the following criteria and guidelines in evaluating investment opportunities and constructing our portfolio. However, not all of these criteria and guidelines have been, or will be, met in connection with each of our investments.

Value Orientation / Positive Cash Flow. Our investment advisor places a premium on analysis of business fundamentals from an investor's perspective and has a distinct value orientation. We focus on companies with proven business models in which we can invest at relatively low multiples of operating cash flow. We also typically invest in portfolio companies with a history of profitability and minimum trailing twelve month EBITDA of $3.0 million. We do not invest in start-up companies, "turn-around" situations or companies that we believe have unproven business plans.

Experienced Management Teams with Meaningful Equity Ownership. We target portfolio companies that have management teams with significant experience and/or relevant industry experience coupled with meaningful equity ownership. We believe management teams with these attributes are more likely to manage the companies in a manner that protects our debt investment and enhances the value of our equity investment.

Niche Market Leaders with Defensible Market Positions. We seek to invest in portfolio companies that have developed defensible and/or leading positions within their respective markets or market niches and are well positioned to capitalize on growth opportunities. We favor companies that demonstrate significant competitive advantages, which we believe helps to protect their market position and profitability.

Diversified Customer and Supplier Base. We prefer to invest in portfolio companies that have a diversified customer and supplier base. Companies with a diversified customer and supplier base are generally better able to endure economic downturns, industry consolidation and shifting customer preferences.

Significant Equity Value. We believe the existence of significant underlying equity value provides important support to our debt investments. With respect to our debt investments, we look for portfolio companies where management/sponsors have provided significant equity funding and where we believe aggregate enterprise value significantly exceeds aggregate indebtedness, after consideration of our investment.

Viable Exit Strategy. We invest in portfolio companies that we believe will provide steady cash flows to service our debt, ultimately repay our loans and provide working capital for their respective businesses. In addition, we seek to invest in portfolio companies whose business models and expected future cash flows offer attractive exit possibilities for our equity investments. We expect to exit our investments typically through one of three scenarios: (a) the sale of the portfolio company resulting in repayment of all outstanding debt and monetization of equity; (b) the recapitalization of the portfolio company through which our investments are replaced with debt or equity from a third party or parties; or (c) the repayment of the initial or remaining principal amount of our debt investment from cash flow generated by the portfolio company. In some investments, there may be scheduled amortization of some portion of our debt investment that would result in a partial exit of our investment prior to the maturity of the debt investment.

About Our Advisor

Our investment activities are managed by Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC, our investment advisor, and supervised by our board of directors, a majority of whom are not “interested persons” of Fidus as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act, and who we refer to hereafter as the Independent Directors. Pursuant to the terms of the investment advisory and management agreement, which we refer to as the Investment Advisory Agreement, between us and our investment advisor, our investment advisor is responsible for determining the composition of our portfolio, including sourcing potential investments, conducting research and diligence on potential investments and equity sponsors, analyzing investment opportunities, structuring our investments and monitoring our investments and portfolio companies on an ongoing basis. Our investment advisor’s investment professionals seek to capitalize on their significant deal origination and sourcing, underwriting, due diligence, investment structuring, execution, portfolio management and monitoring experience. These professionals have developed a broad network of contacts within the investment community, have gained extensive experience investing in assets that constitute our primary focus and have expertise in investing across all levels of the capital structure of lower middle-market companies. For information regarding the people who control our investment advisor and their affiliations with the Company, see “Certain Relationships and Related Transactions—Investment Advisory Agreement” in the accompanying prospectus.

Our relationship with our investment advisor is governed by and dependent on the Investment Advisory Agreement and may be subject to conflicts of interest. We pay our investment advisor a fee for its services under the Investment Advisory Agreement consisting of two components – a base management fee and an incentive fee. The base management fee is calculated at an annual rate of 1.75% of the average value of our total assets (other than cash or cash equivalents but including assets purchased with borrowed amounts). The incentive fee consists of two parts. The first part is calculated and payable quarterly in arrears and equals 20.0% of our “pre-incentive fee net investment income” for the immediately preceding quarter, subject to a 2.0% preferred return, or “hurdle,” and a “catch up” feature. The second part is determined and payable in arrears as of the end of each fiscal year in an amount equal to 20.0% of our realized capital gains, if any, on a cumulative basis from inception through the end of each fiscal year, computed net of all realized capital losses and unrealized capital depreciation on a cumulative basis, less the aggregate amount of any capital gain incentive fees paid in prior years. We accrue, but do not pay, a capital gains incentive fee in connection with any unrealized capital appreciation, as appropriate. For more information about how we compensate our investment advisor and the related conflicts of interest, see “Management and Other Agreements – Investment Advisory Agreement” and “Certain Relationships and Related Transactions – Conflicts of Interest” in the accompanying prospectus.

Among other things, our board of directors is charged with protecting our interests by monitoring how our investment advisor addresses conflicts of interest associated with its management services and compensation. Our board of directors is not expected to review or approve each borrowing or incurrence of leverage. However, our board of directors periodically reviews our investment advisor’s portfolio management decisions and portfolio performance. In addition, our board of directors at least annually reviews the services provided by and fees paid to our investment advisor. In connection with these reviews, our board of directors, including a majority of our Independent Directors, considers whether the fees and expenses (including those related to leverage) that we pay to our investment advisor are fair and reasonable in relation to the services provided. Renewal of our Investment Advisory Agreement must be approved each year by our board of directors, including a majority of our Independent Directors.

With respect to the administrative agreement with our investment advisor, our board of directors reviews the methodology employed in determining how the expenses are allocated to us. Our board of directors assesses the reasonableness of such reimbursements for expenses allocated to us based on the breadth, depth and quality of such services as compared to the estimated cost to us of obtaining similar services from third-party service providers known to be available. In addition, our board of directors considers whether any third-party service provider would be capable of providing all such services at comparable cost and quality.

Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC is a Delaware limited liability company that is registered as an investment advisor under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, as amended, or the Advisers Act. In addition, Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC serves as our administrator and provides us with office space, equipment and clerical, book-keeping and record-keeping services pursuant to an administration agreement, which we refer to as the Administration Agreement.

Operating and Regulatory Structure

Our investment activities are managed by our investment advisor and supervised by our board of directors, a majority of whom are not interested persons of us, our investment advisor or its affiliates.

As a BDC, we are required to comply with certain regulatory requirements. For example, while we are permitted to finance investments using leverage, which may include the issuance of shares of preferred stock, or notes and other borrowings, our ability to use leverage is limited in significant respects. See “Regulation.” Any decision on our part to use leverage will depend upon our assessment of the attractiveness of available investment opportunities in relation to the costs and perceived risks of such leverage. The use of leverage to finance investments creates certain risks and potential conflicts of interest. See “Risk Factors – Risks Relating to Our Business and Structure – Regulations governing our operations as a BDC affect our ability to raise, and the way in which we raise, additional capital which may have a negative effect on our growth” and “Risk Factors – Risks Relating to Our Business and Structure – Because we borrow money and may in the future issue additional senior securities including preferred stock and debt securities, the potential for gain or loss on amounts invested in us is magnified and may increase the risk of investing in us.”

We have elected to be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a regulated investment company, or RIC, under Subchapter M of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code. In order to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC, we must satisfy certain source of income, asset diversification and distribution requirements. See “Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations.”

Risk Factors

The value of our assets, as well as the market price of our shares, will fluctuate. Our investments may be risky, and you may lose part of or all of your investment in us. Investing in our securities involves other risks, including the following:

- our dependence on key personnel of our investment advisor and our executive officers;
- our ability to maintain or develop referral relationships;
- our use of leverage;
- the availability of additional capital on attractive terms or at all;
- uncertain valuations of our portfolio investments;
- competition for investment opportunities;
- actual and potential conflicts of interests with our investment advisor;
- other potential conflicts of interest;

- SBA regulations affecting our wholly-owned SBIC subsidiaries;
- changes in interest rates;
- the impact of a protracted decline in liquidity of credit markets on our business and portfolio of investments;
- our ability to maintain our status as a RIC and as a BDC;
- the timing, form and amount of any distributions from our portfolio companies;
- changes in laws or regulations applicable to us;
- dilutions risks related to our ability to issue shares below our current net asset value;
- possible resignation of our investment advisor;
- the general economy and its impact on the industries in which we invest;
- risks associated with investing in lower middle-market companies;
- the ability of our investment advisor to identify, invest in and monitor companies that meet our investment criteria; and
- our ability to invest in qualifying assets.

See “Risk Factors” beginning on page 12 and the other information included in this prospectus, and any prospectus supplement, for additional discussion of factors you should carefully consider before deciding to invest in our securities.

Corporate Information

Our principal executive offices are located at 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201, and our telephone number is (847) 859-3940. Our corporate website is located at *http://www.fdus.com*. Information on our website is not incorporated into this prospectus or any supplements to this prospectus, and you should not consider information contained on our website to be part of this prospectus or any supplements to this prospectus.

The Offering

We may offer, from time to time, up to $300,000,000 worth of our securities, on terms to be determined at the time of the offering. Our securities may be offered at prices and on terms to be disclosed in one or more prospectus supplements.

We may sell or otherwise issue shares of common stock at a discount to net asset value per share at prices approximating market value less selling expenses upon approval, in certain circumstances, of our board of directors, including a majority of our directors that are not “interested persons” of the Company, as defined in the 1940 Act. On June 15, 2017, our stockholders voted to allow us to issue common stock at a price below net asset value per share for a period of one year ended on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. We expect to present to our stockholders a similar proposal at our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. See “Sales of Common Stock Below Net Asset Value” in this prospectus and in any accompanying prospectus supplement, if applicable. Sales or other issuances of common stock at prices below net asset value per share dilute the interests of existing stockholders, have the effect of reducing our net asset value per share and may reduce our market price per share.

Our stockholders did not specify a maximum discount below net asset value at which we are able to sell or otherwise issue our common stock; however, we do not intend to sell or otherwise issue shares of our common stock below net asset value unless our board of directors determines that it would be in our stockholders’ best interest to do so. The level of net asset value dilution that could result from such an offering is not limited.

Our securities may be offered directly to one or more purchasers by us or through agents designated from time to time by us, or to or through underwriters or dealers. The prospectus supplement relating to the offering will disclose the terms of the offering, including the name or names of any agents or underwriters involved in the sale of our securities by us, the purchase price, and any fee, commission or discount arrangement between us and our agents or underwriters or among our underwriters or the basis upon which such amount may be calculated. See “Plan of Distribution.” We may not sell any of our securities through agents, underwriters or dealers without delivery of a prospectus supplement describing the method and terms of the offering of our securities.

The Nasdaq Global Select Market Symbol	“FDUS”
Use of proceeds	We intend to use the net proceeds from selling our securities to make investments in lower middle-market companies in accordance with our investment objective and strategies and for working capital and general corporate purposes. See “Use of Proceeds.”
Dividends and distributions	We pay quarterly distributions to our stockholders out of assets legally available for distribution. Our distributions, if any, will be determined by our board of directors. Our ability to declare distributions depends on our earnings, our overall financial condition (including our liquidity position), qualification for or maintenance of our RIC status and such other factors as our board of directors may deem relevant from time to time. When we make distributions, we will be required to determine the extent to which such distributions are paid out of current or accumulated earnings, recognized capital gains or capital. To the extent there is a return of capital, investors will be required to reduce their basis in our stock for U.S. federal income tax purposes. In the future, our distributions may include a return of capital.
Dividend reinvestment plan	We have adopted a dividend reinvestment plan for our common stockholders, which is an “opt out” dividend reinvestment plan. Under this plan, if we declare a cash distribution, our stockholders who have not opted out of our dividend reinvestment plan will have their cash distribution automatically reinvested in additional shares of our common stock, rather than receiving the cash distribution. If a stockholder opts out, that stockholder will receive cash distributions. Stockholders who receive distributions in the form of shares of common stock generally are subject to the same U.S. federal income tax consequences as stockholders who elect to receive their distributions in cash; however, since their cash distributions will be reinvested, such stockholders will not receive cash with which to pay any applicable taxes on reinvested distributions. See “Dividend Reinvestment Plan.”

Taxation	We have elected to be treated as a RIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Accordingly, we generally will not pay corporate-level U.S. federal income taxes on any net ordinary income or capital gains that we distribute to our stockholders. To maintain our tax treatment as a RIC and the associated tax benefits, we must meet specified source-of-income and asset diversification requirements and distribute annually at least 90% of our realized net ordinary income and realized net short-term capital gains, if any, in excess of our net long-term capital losses. See “Distributions” and “Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations.”
Effective trading at a discount	Shares of closed-end investment companies, including business development companies, frequently trade at a discount to their net asset value. The risk that our shares may trade at a discount to our net asset value is separate and distinct from the risk that our net asset value per share may decline. We cannot predict whether our shares will trade above, at or below net asset value. See “Risk Factors.”
Sales of common stock below net asset value	Generally, the offering price per share of our common stock, exclusive of any underwriting commissions or discounts, may not be less than the net asset value per share of our common stock at the time we make the offering except (1) in connection with a rights offering to our existing stockholders, (2) with the consent of the majority of our common stockholders and approval of our board of directors, or (3) under such circumstances as the SEC may permit. On June 15, 2017, our common stockholders voted to allow us to sell or otherwise issue common stock at a price below net asset value per share for a period of one year ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. We expect to present to our stockholders a similar proposal at our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. Sales or other issuances by us of our common stock at a discount from our net asset value pose potential risks for our existing stockholders whether or not they participate in the offering, as well as for new investors who participate in the offering. See “Sales of Common Stock Below Net Asset Value” in this prospectus and in the prospectus supplement, if applicable.
Leverage	We borrow funds to make additional investments. We use this practice, which is known as “leverage,” to attempt to increase returns to our stockholders, but it involves significant risks. See “Risk Factors,” “Senior Securities” and “Regulation – Senior Securities.” With certain limited exceptions, we are only allowed to borrow amounts such that our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, equals at least 200% after such borrowing. The amount of leverage

Table of Contents

	that we employ at any particular time will depend on our Investment Advisor's investment committee's and our board of directors' assessment of market and other factors at the time of any proposed borrowing. In addition, the maximum amount of leverage that three or more SBICs under common control can have outstanding is $350.0 million.
Available Information	We are required to file periodic reports, current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. This information is available on the SEC's Internet website at *www.sec.gov*. You can also inspect any materials we file with the SEC, without charge, at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on the Public Reference Room. We intend to provide much of the same information on our website at *www.fdus.com*. Information contained on our website is not part of this prospectus or any prospectus supplement and should not be relied upon as such.

FEES AND EXPENSES

The following table is intended to assist you in understanding the costs and expenses that an investor in this offering will bear directly or indirectly. We caution you that some of the percentages indicated in the table below are estimates and may vary. Except where the context suggests otherwise, whenever this prospectus contains a reference to fees or expenses paid by "you," "us," "the Company" or "Fidus," or that "we" will pay fees or expenses, stockholders will indirectly bear such fees or expenses as investors in us.

Stockholder transaction expenses:	
Sales load (as a percentage of offering price)	— (1)
Offering expenses borne by us (as a percentage of offering price)	— (2)
Dividend reinvestment plan expenses	— (3)
Total stockholder transaction expenses paid by us (as a percentage of offering price)	— (4)
Annual expenses (as a percentage of net assets attributable to common stock)(5):	
Base management fee	2.60%(6)
Incentive fees payable under Investment Advisory Agreement	2.37%(7)
Interest payments on borrowed funds	2.43%(8)
Other expenses	1.08%(9)
Total annual expenses	8.48%(10)

(1) In the event that securities to which this prospectus relates are sold to or through underwriters, a corresponding prospectus supplement will disclose the applicable sales load.

(2) In the event that we conduct an offering of any of our securities, a corresponding prospectus supplement will disclose the estimated offering expenses because they will be ultimately borne by us.

(3) The expenses of administering our dividend reinvestment plan are included in other expenses.

(4) Total stockholder transaction expenses may include a sales load and will be disclosed in a future prospectus supplement, if any.

(5) Net assets attributable to common stock equals average net assets, which is calculated as the average of the net assets balances as of each quarter end during the year ended December 31, 2017 and the prior year end.

(6) Our base management fee is 1.75% of the average value of our total assets (other than cash and cash equivalents but including assets purchased with borrowed amounts). This item represents actual base management fees incurred for the year ended December 31, 2017. We may from time to time decide it is appropriate to change the terms of the Investment Advisory Agreement. Under the 1940 Act, any material change to our Investment Advisory Agreement must be submitted to stockholders for approval. The 2.60% reflected in the table is calculated on our net assets (rather than our total assets). See "Management and Other Agreements—Investment Advisory Agreement."

(7) This item represents actual fees incurred on pre-incentive fee net investment income for the year ended December 31, 2017. As of December 31, 2017, there was no capital gains incentive fee payable.

The incentive fee consists of two parts:

The first, payable quarterly in arrears, equals 20.0% of our pre-incentive fee net investment income, expressed as a rate of return on the value of our net assets, (including interest that is accrued but not yet received in cash), subject to a 2.0% quarterly (8.0% annualized) hurdle rate and a "catch-up" provision measured as of the end of each calendar quarter. Under this provision, in any calendar quarter, our investment advisor receives no incentive fee until our pre-incentive fee net investment income equals the hurdle rate of 2.0% but then receives, as a "catch-up," 100.0% of our pre-incentive fee net investment income with respect to that portion of such pre-incentive fee net investment income, if any, that exceeds the hurdle rate but is less than 2.5%. The effect of this provision is that, if pre-incentive fee net investment income exceeds 2.5% in any calendar quarter, our investment advisor will receive 20.0% of our pre-incentive fee net investment income as if a hurdle rate did not apply.

The second part, payable annually in arrears, equals 20.0% of our realized capital gains net of realized capital losses and unrealized capital depreciation, if any, on a cumulative basis from inception through the end of the fiscal year (or upon the termination of the Investment Advisory Agreement, as of the termination date), less the aggregate amount of any previously paid capital gain incentive fees. We accrue, but do not pay, a capital gains incentive fee in connection with any net unrealized capital appreciation, as appropriate. For the year ended December 31, 2017, we accrued capital gains incentive fees of $2.1 million in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

See “Management and Other Agreements—Investment Advisory Agreement.”

(8) As of December 31, 2017, we had outstanding SBA debentures of $231.3 million, and unfunded commitments from the SBA to purchase up to an additional of $27.0 million SBA debentures; we had $11.5 million of outstanding borrowings under our senior secured revolving credit agreement with certain lenders party thereto and ING Capital, LLC, as administrative agent (the “Credit Facility”), which has total commitment of $50.0 million . Interest payments on borrowed funds is based on estimated annual interest and fee expenses on outstanding SBA debentures and borrowings under the Credit Facility as of December 31, 2017 with a weighted average interest rate of 3.6%. We have estimated the annual interest expense on borrowed funds and caution you that our actual interest expense will depend on prevailing interest rates and our rate of borrowing, which may be substantially higher than the estimate provided in this table.

(9) Other expenses represent our estimated annual operating expenses, as a percentage of net assets attributable to common shares estimated for the current year, including professional fees, directors’ fees, insurance costs, expenses of our dividend reinvestment plan and payments under the Administration Agreement based on our allocable portion of overhead and other expenses incurred by our administrator. See “Management and Other Agreements—Administration Agreement.” Other expenses exclude interest payments on borrowed funds, and if we issue debt securities or preferred stock, interest payments on debt securities and distributions with respect to preferred stock. We currently do not have any class of securities outstanding other than common stock. “Other expenses” are based on actual other expenses for the year ended December 31, 2017.

(10) “Total annual expenses” as a percentage of consolidated net assets attributable to common stock are higher than the total annual expenses percentage would be for a company that is not leveraged. We borrow money to leverage our net assets and increase our total assets. The SEC requires that the “total annual expenses” percentage be calculated as a percentage of net assets (defined as total assets less indebtedness and before taking into account any incentive fees payable during the period), rather than the total assets, including assets that have been purchased with borrowed amounts. If the “total annual expenses” percentage were calculated instead as a percentage of average consolidated total assets, our “total annual expenses” would be 5.27% of average consolidated total assets.

Example

The following example demonstrates the projected dollar amount of total cumulative expenses over various periods with respect to a hypothetical investment in us. In calculating the following expense amounts, we have assumed we would have no additional leverage, that none of our assets are cash or cash equivalents and that our annual operating expenses would remain at the levels set forth in the table above. Transaction expenses are not included in the following example.

	1 year	3 years	5 years	10 years
You would pay the following expenses on a $1,000 investment, assuming a 5.0% annual return	$ 87	$ 251	$ 404	$ 738
You would pay the following expenses on a $1,000 investment, assuming a 5.0% annual return resulting entirely from net realized capital gains (all of which is subject to our incentive fee on capital gains)	$ 95	$ 272	$ 433	$ 778

The foregoing table is to assist you in understanding the various costs and expenses that an investor in our common stock will bear directly or indirectly. While the example assumes, as required by the SEC, a 5.0% annual return, our performance will vary and may result in a return greater or less than 5.0%. Assuming a 5.0% annual return, the incentive fee under the Investment Advisory Agreement would either not be payable or have an insignificant impact on the expense amounts shown above. If we achieve sufficient returns on our investments, including through the realization of capital gains, to trigger an incentive fee of a material amount, our expenses, and returns to our investors, would be higher. In addition, while the example assumes reinvestment of all distributions at net asset value, if our board of directors authorizes and we declare a cash dividend, participants in our dividend reinvestment plan who have not otherwise elected to receive cash will receive a number of shares of our common stock, determined by dividing the total dollar amount of the distribution payable to a participant by the market price per share of our common stock at the close of trading on the valuation date for the distribution. See “Dividend Reinvestment Plan” for additional information regarding our dividend reinvestment plan.

This example and the expenses in the table above should not be considered a representation of our future expenses, and actual expenses (including the cost of debt, if any, and other expenses) may be greater or less than those shown.

Table of Contents

RISK FACTORS

Investing in our securities involves a number of significant risks. You should carefully consider these risk factors, together with all of the other information included in this prospectus, or any prospectus supplement. The risks set out below are not the only risks we face. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known to us or not presently deemed material by us may also impair our operations and performance. If any of the following events occur, our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows could be materially and adversely affected. In such case, our net asset value and the trading price of our common stock could decline, and you may lose all or part of your investment.

Risks Relating to Our Business and Structure

We are dependent upon our investment advisor's managing members and our executive officers for our future success. If our investment advisor was to lose any of its managing members or we lose any of our executive officers, our ability to achieve our investment objective could be significantly harmed.

We depend on the investment expertise, skill and network of business contacts of the managing members of our investment advisor, who evaluate, negotiate, structure, execute and monitor our investments. Our future success will depend to a significant extent on the continued service and coordination of the investment professionals of our investment advisor and executive officers. Certain investment professionals and executives may not devote all of their business time to our operations and may have other demands on their time as a result of other activities. The departure of any of these individuals could have a material adverse effect on our ability to achieve our investment objective.

Our business model depends, to a significant extent, upon strong referral relationships with financial institutions, sponsors and investment professionals. Any inability of our investment advisor to maintain or develop these relationships, or the failure of these relationships to generate investment opportunities, could adversely affect our business.

We depend upon the investment professionals of our investment advisor to maintain their relationships with financial institutions, sponsors and investment professionals, and we intend to rely to a significant extent upon these relationships to provide us with potential investment opportunities. If the investment professionals of our investment advisor fail to maintain such relationships, or to develop new relationships with other sources of investment opportunities, we will not be able to grow our investment portfolio. In addition, individuals with whom the investment professionals of our investment advisor have relationships are not obligated to provide us with investment opportunities, and, therefore, we can offer no assurance that these relationships will generate investment opportunities for us in the future.

Our financial condition and results of operation depends on our ability to manage our business effectively.

Our ability to achieve our investment objective and grow depends on our ability to manage our business and deploy our capital effectively. This depends, in turn, on our investment advisor's ability to identify, evaluate and monitor companies that meet our investment criteria. Accomplishing our investment objectives on a cost-effective basis depends upon our investment advisor's execution of our investment process, its ability to provide competent, attentive and efficient services to us and, to a lesser extent, our access to financing on acceptable terms. Our investment advisor has substantial responsibilities under the Investment Advisory Agreement. In addition, our investment advisor's investment professionals may be called upon to provide managerial assistance to our portfolio companies. These activities may distract them or slow our rate of investment. Any failure to manage our business and our future growth effectively could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

We may suffer credit losses and our investments could be rated below investment grade.

Private debt in the form of mezzanine, senior secured or unitranche loans to corporate and asset-based borrowers is highly speculative and involves a high degree of risk of credit loss, and therefore an investment in our shares of common stock may not be suitable for someone with a low tolerance for risk. These risks are likely to increase during an economic recession.

In addition, investments in our portfolio are typically not rated by any rating agency. We believe that if such investments were rated, the vast majority would be rated below investment grade (which is sometimes referred to as “junk”) due to speculative characteristics of the issuer’s capacity to pay interest and repay principal. Our investments may result in an amount of risk, volatility or potential loss of principal that is greater than that of alternative investments.

Because we borrow money and may in the future issue additional senior securities, including preferred stock and debt securities, the potential for gain or loss on amounts invested in us is magnified and may increase the risk of investing in us.

Borrowings, also known as leverage, magnify the potential for gain or loss on amounts invested and, therefore, increase the risks associated with investing in us. The Funds borrow from and issue debt securities to the SBA, and we may borrow from banks and other lenders in the future. The SBA has fixed dollar claims on the Funds’ assets that are superior to the claims of our stockholders. We may also borrow from banks and other lenders or issue additional senior securities including preferred stock and debt securities in the future. If the value of our assets increases, then leveraging would cause the net asset value attributable to our common stock to increase more sharply than it would have had we not used leverage. Conversely, if the value of our assets decreases, leveraging would cause net asset value to decline more sharply than it otherwise would have had we not leveraged. Similarly, any increase in our income in excess of interest payable on the borrowed funds would cause our net income to increase more than it would without the leverage, while any decrease in our income would cause net income to decline more sharply than it would have had we not borrowed. Such a decline could negatively affect our ability to make distributions to our stockholders. Leverage is generally considered a speculative investment technique.

Our ability to achieve our investment objectives may depend in part on our ability to achieve additional leverage on favorable terms by borrowing from the SBA, banks or other lenders, and there can be no assurance that such additional leverage can in fact be achieved.

As a BDC, we are generally required to meet a coverage ratio at least equal to 200.0% of total assets to total borrowings and other senior securities, which include all of our borrowings (other than the Funds’ SBA leverage under the terms of SEC exemptive relief) and any preferred stock we may issue in the future. If this ratio declines below 200.0%, we may not be able to incur additional debt and may need to sell a portion of our investments to repay some debt when it is disadvantageous to do so, and we may not be able to make distributions to our stockholders.

The following table illustrates the effect of leverage on returns from an investment in our common stock assuming various annual returns, net of expenses. The calculations in the table below are hypothetical and actual returns may be higher or lower than those appearing in the table below.

Assumed Return on Our Portfolio
(Net of Expenses)

	(10.0)%	(5.0)%	0.0%	5.0%	10.0%
Corresponding return to common stockholder (1)	(18.7)%	(10.4)%	(2.2)%	6.0%	14.2%

(1) Assumes $646.3 million in total assets, $231.3 million in outstanding SBA debentures, $11.5 million in borrowings under the Credit Facility, and $393.3 million in net assets as of December 31, 2017 and an average cost of funds of 3.6%.

Funding a portion of our investments with preferred stock would magnify the potential for gain or loss and the risks of investing in us in the same way as our other borrowings.

Preferred stock, which is another form of leverage, has the same risks to our common stockholders as borrowings because the distributions with respect to any preferred stock must be cumulative. Payment of such distributions and repayment of the liquidation preference of such preferred stock must take preference over any distributions or other payments to our common stockholders, and preferred stockholders are not subject to any of our expenses or losses and are not entitled to participate in any income or appreciation in excess of their stated preference.

Pending legislation may allow us to incur additional leverage.

As a BDC, under the 1940 Act generally we are not permitted to incur indebtedness unless immediately after such borrowing we have an asset coverage for total borrowings of at least 200.0% (i.e., the amount of debt may not exceed 50.0% of the value of our assets). Legislation introduced to the U.S. House of Representatives, if passed, would modify this section of the 1940 Act and increase the amount of debt that BDCs may incur by modifying the minimum asset coverage ratio from 200.0% to 150.0%. If such legislation were to pass, we would be able to incur additional indebtedness in the future and therefore your risk of an investment in us may increase.

Legislation has been introduced in the U.S. House of Representatives which is intended to revise certain regulations applicable to BDCs. The legislation provides for (i) increasing the amount of funds BDCs may borrow by reducing asset to debt limitations from 2:1 to 3:2, (ii) permitting BDCs to file registration statements with the SEC that incorporate information from already-filed reports by reference, (iii) utilizing other streamlined registration processes afforded to operating companies, and (iv) allowing BDCs to own investment adviser subsidiaries. There are no assurances as to when the legislation will be reintroduced and enacted by Congress, if at all, or, if enacted, what final form the legislation would take.

All of our portfolio investments are recorded at fair value as determined in good faith by our board of directors, and, as a result, there is uncertainty as to the value of our portfolio investments and the valuation process for certain of our portfolio holdings creates a conflict of interest.

All of our portfolio investments take the form of debt and equity securities that are not publicly-traded. The debt and equity securities in which we invest for which market quotations are not readily available are valued at fair value as determined in good faith by our board of directors. As part of the valuation process, we may take into account the following types of factors, if relevant, in determining the fair value of our investments:

- a comparison of the portfolio company's securities to comparable publicly-traded securities;
- the enterprise value of a portfolio company;
- the nature and realizable value of any collateral;
- the portfolio company's ability to make payments and its earnings and discounted cash flow;
- the markets in which the portfolio company does business; and
- changes in the interest rate environment and the credit markets generally that may affect the price at which similar investments may be made in the future and other relevant factors.

The fair value of each investment in our portfolio is determined quarterly by our board of directors. Any changes in fair value of portfolio securities from the prior period are recorded in our consolidated statement of operations as net change in unrealized appreciation or depreciation.

In connection with that determination, investment professionals from our investment advisor prepare portfolio company valuations based upon the most recent portfolio company financial statements available and projected financial results of each portfolio company. In addition, certain members of our board of directors have a pecuniary interest in our investment advisor. The participation of our investment advisor's investment professionals in our valuation process, and the pecuniary interest in our investment advisor by certain members of our board of directors, may result in a conflict of interest as the management fees that we pay our investment advisor are based on our total assets (other than cash and cash equivalents but including assets purchased with borrowed amounts).

Due to the inherent uncertainty of determining the fair value of investments that do not have a readily available market value, the fair value of our investments may differ significantly from the values that would have been used had a readily available market value existed for such investments, and the differences could be material. Declines in prices and liquidity in the corporate debt markets may also result in significant net unrealized depreciation in our debt portfolio. Our net asset value could be adversely affected if our determinations regarding the fair value of our investments were materially higher than the values that we ultimately realize upon the disposal of such investments.

We operate in a highly competitive market for investment opportunities, which could reduce returns and result in losses.

A number of entities compete with us to make the types of investments that we make. We compete with public and private funds, other BDCs, commercial and investment banks, commercial financing companies and, to the extent they provide an alternative form of financing, private equity and hedge funds. Many of our competitors are substantially larger and have considerably greater financial, technical and marketing resources than we do. For example, we believe some of our competitors may have access to funding sources that are not available to us. In addition, some of our competitors may have higher risk tolerances or different risk assessments. These characteristics could allow our competitors to consider a wider variety of investments, establish more relationships and offer better pricing and more flexible structuring than we offer. We may lose investment opportunities if we do not match our competitors' pricing, terms and structure. If we match our competitors' pricing, terms and structure, we may experience a decrease in net investment income or an increase in risk of capital loss. A significant part of our competitive advantage stems from the fact that the lower middle-market is underserved by traditional commercial and investment banks, and generally has less access to capital. A significant increase in the number and/or the size of our competitors in this target market could force us to accept less attractive investment terms.

Furthermore, many of our competitors are not subject to the regulatory restrictions that the 1940 Act imposes on us as a BDC or the source of income, asset diversification and distribution requirements we must satisfy to maintain our RIC status. The competitive pressures we face may have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. As a result of this existing and potentially increasing competition, we may not be able to take advantage of attractive investment opportunities from time to time, and we may not be able to identify and make investments that are consistent with our investment objective.

Our management and incentive fee structure may create incentives for our investment advisor that are not fully aligned with the interests of our stockholders and may encourage our investment advisor to make speculative investments.

The management and incentive fees paid to our investment advisor are based on our total assets (other than cash or cash equivalents but including assets purchased with borrowed amounts), and our investor advisor may therefore benefit when we incur debt or use leverage. This fee structure may encourage our investment advisor to cause us to borrow money to finance additional investments. Under certain circumstances, the use of borrowed money may increase the likelihood of default, which would disfavor our stockholders. Our board of directors is charged with protecting our interests by monitoring how our investment advisor addresses these and other conflicts of interests. Our board of directors is not expected to review or approve each borrowing or incurrence of leverage. However, our board of directors, periodically reviews our investment advisor's portfolio management decisions and portfolio performance. In addition, our board of directors at least annually reviews the services provided by and fees paid to our investment advisor. In connection with these reviews, our board of directors, including a majority of our Independent Directors, considers whether the fees and expenses (including those related to leverage) that we pay to our investment advisor are fair and reasonable in relation to the services provided and must approve renewal of our Advisory Agreement.

The part of the incentive fee payable to our investment advisor that relates to our net investment income is computed and paid on income that includes interest income that has been accrued but not yet received in cash. This fee structure may encourage our investment advisor to favor debt financings that provide for deferred interest, rather than current cash payments of interest. Our investment advisor may have an incentive to invest in deferred interest securities in circumstances where it would not have done so but for the opportunity to continue to earn the incentive fee even when the issuers of the deferred interest securities would not be able to make actual cash payments to us on such securities. This risk could be increased because our investment advisor is not obligated to reimburse us for any incentive fees received even if we subsequently incur losses or never receive in cash the deferred interest that was previously accrued.

The incentive fee is based, in part, upon net capital gains realized on our investments. Unlike the portion of the incentive fee based on income, there is no hurdle rate applicable to the portion of the incentive fee based on net capital gains. As a result, our investment advisor may have a tendency to invest more capital in investments that are likely to result in capital gains as compared to income producing securities. Such a practice could result in our investing in more speculative securities than would otherwise be the case, which could result in higher investment losses, particularly during economic downturns.

We may be obligated to pay our investment advisor incentive compensation even if we incur a loss and may pay more than 20.0% of our net capital gains because we cannot recover payments made in previous years.

Our investment advisor will be entitled to incentive compensation for each fiscal quarter in an amount equal to a percentage of the excess of our pre-incentive fee net investment income for that quarter above a threshold return for that quarter. Our pre-incentive fee net investment income for incentive compensation purposes excludes realized and unrealized capital losses that we may incur in the fiscal quarter, even if such capital losses result in a net loss on our consolidated statement of operations for that quarter. Thus, we may be required to pay our investment advisor incentive compensation for a fiscal quarter even if there is a decline in the value of our portfolio or we incur a net loss for that quarter. Further, if we pay an incentive fee of 20.0% of our realized capital gains (net of all realized capital losses and unrealized capital depreciation on a cumulative basis) and thereafter experience additional realized capital losses or unrealized capital depreciation, we will not be able to recover any portion of the incentive fee previously paid.

A general increase in interest rates will likely have the effect of making it easier for the investment advisor to receive incentive fees, without necessarily resulting in an increase in our net earnings.

Given the structure of the Investment Advisory Agreement, any general increase in interest rates can be expected to lead to higher interest rates applicable to our debt investments and will likely have the effect of making it easier for the investment advisor to meet the quarterly hurdle rate for payment of income incentive fees under the Investment Advisory Agreement without any additional increase in relative performance on the part of the investment advisor. This may occur without a corresponding increase in distributions to our stockholders. In addition, in view of the catch-up provision applicable to income incentive fees under the Investment Advisory Agreement, the investment advisor could potentially receive a significant portion of the increase in our investment income attributable to such a general increase in interest rates. If that were to occur, our increase in net earnings, if any, would likely be significantly smaller than the relative increase in the Adviser’s income incentive fee resulting from such a general increase in interest rates.

We may have potential conflicts of interest related to obligations that our investment advisor may have to other clients.

Currently, the Company, the Funds, Fidus Credit Opportunities, L.P. and Fidus Equity Opportunities Fund, L.P. are the only investment vehicles managed by our investment advisor. The Investment Advisory Agreement does not limit our investment advisor’s ability to act as an investment advisor to other funds, including other BDCs, or other investment advisory clients. To the extent our investment advisor acts as an investment advisor to other funds or clients, including Fidus Credit Opportunities, L.P. and Fidus Equity Opportunities Fund, L.P., we may have conflicts of interest with our investment advisor or its other clients that elect to invest in similar types of securities as those in which we invest. Members of our investment advisor’s investment committee serve or may serve as officers, directors or principals of entities that operate in the same or a related line of business as we do, or of investment funds or other investment vehicles managed by our investment advisor. In serving in these multiple capacities, they may have obligations to other clients or investors in those entities, the fulfillment of which may not be in the best interests of us or our stockholders. Our investment advisor will seek to allocate investment opportunities among eligible accounts in a manner that is fair and equitable over time and consistent with an allocation policy approved by our board of directors.

To the extent our investment advisor forms affiliates, including Fidus Credit Opportunities, L.P. and Fidus Equity Opportunities Fund, L.P., we may co-invest on a concurrent basis with such affiliates, subject to compliance with applicable regulations and regulatory guidance and our allocation procedures. While we may co-invest with investment entities managed by our investment advisor or its affiliates, to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, the 1940 Act imposes significant limits on co-investment. On January 4, 2017, the SEC granted us relief sought in an exemptive application that expands our ability to co-invest in portfolio companies with certain of our affiliates managed by our investment advisor in a manner consistent with our investment objective, positions, policies, strategies and restrictions as well as regulatory requirements and other pertinent factors, subject to compliance with certain conditions (the “Order”). Pursuant to the Order, we are permitted to co-invest with our affiliates if a “required majority” (as defined in Section 57(o) of the 1940 Act) of our independent directors make certain conclusions in connection with a co-investment transaction, including that (1) the terms of the transactions, including the consideration to be paid, are reasonable and fair to us and our stockholders and do not involve overreaching by us or our stockholders on the part of any person concerned, and (2) the transaction is consistent with the interests of our stockholders and is consistent with our investment objective and strategies. We intend to co-invest, subject to the conditions included in the Order.

Our investment advisor or its investment committee may, from time to time, possess material non-public information, limiting our investment discretion.

The investment professionals of our investment advisor may serve as directors of, or in a similar capacity with, companies in which we invest, the securities of which are purchased or sold on our behalf. In the event that material non-public information is obtained with respect to such companies, or we become subject to trading restrictions under the internal trading policies of those companies or as a result of applicable law or regulations, we could be prohibited for a period of time from purchasing or selling the securities of such companies, and this prohibition may have an adverse effect on us.

We may have conflicts related to other arrangements with our investment advisor.

We entered into a license agreement with Fidus Partners, LLC under which Fidus Partners, LLC granted us a non-exclusive (provided that there is not a change in control of Fidus Partners, LLC), royalty-free license to use the name “Fidus.” Some of the members of our investment advisor’s investment committee and the senior origination professionals of our investment advisor are members of Fidus Partners, LLC. See “Management and Other Agreements — License Agreement.” In addition, we rent office space from our investment advisor and pay to our investment advisor our allocable portion of overhead and other expenses incurred in performing its obligations under the Administration Agreement, such as our allocable portion of the cost of our chief financial officer and chief compliance officer. This creates conflicts of interest that our board of directors must monitor.

The Funds are licensed by the SBA, and, therefore, are subject to SBA regulations.

The Funds are licensed to operate as SBICs and are regulated by the SBA. Under current SBA regulations, a licensed SBIC can provide capital to those entities that have a tangible net worth not exceeding $19.5 million and an average annual net income after U.S. federal income taxes not exceeding $6.5 million for the two most recent fiscal years. In addition, a licensed SBIC must devote 25.0% of its investment activity to those entities that have a tangible net worth not exceeding $6.0 million and an average annual net income after U.S. federal income taxes not exceeding $2.0 million for the two most recent fiscal years. The SBA regulations also provide alternative size standard criteria to determine eligibility, which depend on the industry in which the business is engaged and are based on either the number of employees or the gross sales of the business. The SBA regulations permit licensed SBICs to make long term loans to small businesses, invest in the equity securities of such businesses and provide them with consulting and advisory services. The SBA also places certain limitations on the financing terms of investments by SBICs in portfolio companies and prohibits SBICs from providing funds for certain purposes or to businesses in certain prohibited industries. Further, the SBA regulations require that a licensed SBIC be periodically examined and audited by the SBA staff to determine its compliance with the relevant SBA regulations. Compliance with these SBA requirements may cause the Funds to forego attractive investment opportunities that are not permitted under the SBA regulations, and may cause the Funds to make investments they otherwise would not make in order to remain in compliance with these regulations.

Failure to comply with the SBA regulations could result in the loss of the SBIC licenses and the resulting inability to participate in the SBA debenture program. The SBA prohibits, without prior SBA approval, a “change of control” of an SBIC or transfers that would result in any person (or a group of persons acting in concert) owning 10.0% or more of a class of capital stock of a licensed SBIC. Current SBA regulations provide the SBA with certain rights and remedies if an SBIC violates their terms. A key regulatory metric for SBA is the extent of “Capital Impairment,” which is the extent of realized (and, in certain circumstances, net unrealized) losses compared with the SBIC’s private capital commitments. Interest payments, management fees, organization and other expenses are included in determining “realized losses.” SBA regulations preclude the full amount of “unrealized appreciation” from portfolio companies from being considered when calculating Capital Impairment in certain circumstances. Remedies for regulatory violations are graduated in severity depending on the seriousness of Capital Impairment or other regulatory violations. For minor regulatory infractions, the SBA issues a warning. For more serious infractions, the use of SBA debentures may be limited or prohibited, outstanding debentures can be declared to be immediately due and payable, restrictions on distributions and making new investments may be imposed and management fees may be required to be reduced. In severe cases, the SBA may require the removal of a general partner of an SBIC or its officers, directors, managers or partners, or the SBA may obtain appointment of a receiver for the SBIC.

SBA regulations limit the amount of SBA-guaranteed debt that may be borrowed by an SBIC.

The SBA regulations currently limit the amount that is available to be borrowed by any SBIC and guaranteed by the SBA to 300.0% of an SBIC's regulatory capital or $150.0 million, whichever is less. For three or more SBICs under common control, the maximum amount of outstanding SBA debentures cannot exceed $350.0 million. If the Funds borrow the maximum amount from the SBA and thereafter require additional capital, our cost of capital may increase, and there is no assurance that we will be able to obtain additional financing on acceptable terms.

Moreover, the Funds' current status as SBICs does not automatically assure that they will continue to receive funding through the SBA debenture program. Receipt of SBA debenture funding is dependent upon the Funds' continuing compliance with SBA regulations and policies and there being funding available. The amount of SBA debenture funding available to SBICs is dependent upon annual Congressional authorizations and in the future may be subject to annual Congressional appropriations. There can be no assurance that there will be sufficient SBA debenture funding available at the times desired by the Funds.

The debentures issued by the Funds and guaranteed by the SBA have a maturity of ten years and bear interest semi-annually at fixed rates. Certain of the Funds' SBA debentures begin to mature in 2019 and will require repayment on or before the respective maturity dates. The Funds will need to generate sufficient cash flow to make required debt payments on such debentures. If the Funds are unable to generate such cash flow, the SBA, as guarantor of the debentures, will have a superior claim to our assets over our stockholders in the event the Funds liquidate or the SBA exercises its remedies under such debentures as the result of a default by the Funds.

The Funds, as SBICs, are limited in their ability to make distributions to us, which could result in us being unable to meet the minimum distribution requirements to maintain our status as a RIC.

In order to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC, we are required to distribute to our stockholders on an annual basis 90.0% of our net ordinary income and net short-term capital gains in excess of net long-term capital losses. For this purpose, our taxable income will include the income of the Funds (and any other entities that are disregarded as separate from us for U.S. federal income tax purposes). The Funds' ability to make distributions to us may be limited by the Small Business Investment Act of 1958. As a result, in order to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC, we may be required to make distributions attributable to the Funds' income without receiving any corresponding cash distributions with respect to such income. We can make no assurances that the Funds will be able to make, or not be limited in making, distributions to us. If we are unable to satisfy the annual distribution requirements, we may fail to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC, which would result in the imposition of corporate-level U.S. federal income tax on our entire taxable income without regard to any distributions made by us. See "We will be subject to corporate-level U.S. federal income tax if we are unable to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code."

Changes in interest rates will affect our cost of capital and net investment income.

Most of our debt investments bear interest at fixed rates and the value of these investments could be negatively affected by increases in market interest rates. In addition, to the extent that we borrow additional funds to make investments, an increase in interest rates would make it more expensive for us to use debt to finance our investments. As a result, a significant increase in market interest rates could both reduce the value of our portfolio investments and increase our cost of capital, which would reduce our net investment income. Conversely, a decrease in interest rates may have an adverse impact on our returns by requiring us to seek lower yields on our debt investments and by increasing the risk that our portfolio companies will prepay the debt investments, resulting in the need to redeploy capital at potentially lower rates.

You should also be aware that a rise in market interest rates typically leads to higher interest rates applicable to our debt investments. Accordingly, an increase in interest rates may result in an increase of the amount of incentive fees payable to our investment advisor.

Our ability to enter into transactions involving derivatives and financial commitment transactions may be limited.

The SEC has proposed a new rule under the 1940 Act that would govern the use of derivatives (defined to include any swap, security-based swap, futures contract, forward contract, option or any similar instrument) as well as financial commitment transactions (defined to include reverse repurchase agreements, short sale borrowings and any firm or standby commitment agreement or similar agreement) by BDCs. Under the proposed rule, a BDC would be required to comply with one of two alternative portfolio limitations and manage the risks associated with derivatives transactions and financial commitment transactions by segregating certain assets. Furthermore, a BDC that engages in more than a limited amount of derivatives transactions or that uses complex derivatives would be required to establish a formalized derivatives risk management program. If the SEC adopts this rule in the form proposed, our ability to enter into transactions involving such instruments may be hindered, which could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Global economic, political and market conditions may adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition, including our revenue growth and profitability.

The current worldwide financial market situation, as well as various social and political tensions in the United States and around the world, may contribute to increased market volatility, may have long-term effects on the U.S. and worldwide financial markets, and may cause economic uncertainties or deterioration in the United States and worldwide. The U.S. and global capital markets experienced extreme volatility and disruption during the economic downturn that began in mid-2007, and the U.S. economy was in a recession for several consecutive calendar quarters during the same period. In 2010, a financial crisis emerged in Europe, triggered by high budget deficits and rising direct and contingent sovereign debt, which created concerns about the ability of certain nations to continue to service their sovereign debt obligations. Risks resulting from such debt crisis, including any austerity measures taken in exchange for bailout of certain nations, and any future debt crisis in Europe or any similar crisis elsewhere could have a detrimental impact on the global economic recovery, sovereign and non-sovereign debt in certain countries and the financial condition of financial institutions generally. In June 2016, the United Kingdom held a referendum in which voters approved an exit from the European Union, which led to disruption and instability in the global markets, and the implications of the United Kingdom’s pending withdrawal from the European Union are unclear at present. There is continued concern about national-level support for the Euro and the accompanying coordination of fiscal and wage policy among European Economic and Monetary Union member countries. In addition, the fiscal and monetary policies of foreign nations, such as Russia and China, may have a severe impact on the worldwide and U.S. financial markets.

The current state of the economy and financial markets of the U.S., United Kingdom, China and other several countries in the European Union increases the likelihood of adverse effects on our financial position and results of operations.

Due to federal budget deficit concerns, S&P downgraded the federal government’s credit rating from AAA to AA+ for the first time in history on August 5, 2011. Further, Moody’s and Fitch had warned that they may downgrade the federal government’s credit rating. Further downgrades or warnings by S&P or other rating agencies, and the U.S. government’s credit and deficit concerns in general, could cause interest rates and borrowing costs to rise, which may negatively impact both the perception of credit risk associated with our debt portfolio and our ability to access the debt markets on favorable terms. In addition, a decreased U.S. government credit rating could create broader financial turmoil and uncertainty, which may weigh heavily on our financial performance and the value of our common stock.

In 2010, a financial crisis emerged in Europe, triggered by high budget deficits and rising direct and contingent sovereign debt in Greece, Ireland, Italy, Portugal and Spain, which created concerns about the ability of these nations to continue to service their sovereign debt obligations. While the financial stability of many of such countries has improved significantly, risks resulting from any future debt crisis in Europe or any similar crisis could have a detrimental impact on the global economic recovery, sovereign and non-sovereign debt in these countries and the financial condition of European financial institutions. In July and August 2015, Greece reached agreements with its international creditors for bailouts that provide aid in exchange for austerity terms that had previously been rejected by Greek voters. Market and economic disruptions have affected, and may in the future affect, consumer confidence levels and spending, personal bankruptcy rates, levels of incurrence and default on consumer debt and home prices, among other factors. We cannot assure you that market disruptions in Europe, including the increased cost of funding for certain governments and financial institutions, will not impact the global economy, and we cannot assure you that assistance packages will be available, or if available, be sufficient to stabilize countries and markets in Europe or elsewhere affected by a financial crisis. To the extent uncertainty regarding any economic recovery in Europe negatively impacts consumer confidence and consumer credit factors, our business, financial condition and results of operations could be significantly and adversely affected.

In the second quarter of 2015, stock prices in China experienced a significant drop, resulting primarily from continued selloff of shares trading in Chinese markets. In addition, in August 2015, Chinese authorities sharply devalued China's currency. Since then, the Chinese capital markets have continued to experience periods of instability. In June 2016, British voters passed a referendum to exit the European Union leading to heightened volatility in global markets and foreign currencies. These market and economic disruptions have affected, and may in the future affect, the U.S. capital markets, which could adversely affect our business, financial condition or results of operations.

In October 2014, the Federal Reserve announced that it was concluding its bond-buying program, or quantitative easing, which was designed to stimulate the economy and expand the Federal Reserve's holdings of long-term securities, suggesting that key economic indicators, such as the unemployment rate, had showed signs of improvement since the inception of the program. It is unclear what effect, if any, the conclusion of the Federal Reserve's bond-buying program will have on the value of our investments. Additionally, the Federal Reserve raised the Federal Funds Rate in December 2015 and again in December 2016, and has announced its intention to continue to raise the federal funds rate over time. These developments, along with the U.S. government's credit and deficit concerns, the European sovereign debt crisis and the economic slowdown in China, could cause interest rates and borrowing costs to rise, which may negatively impact our ability to access the debt markets on favorable terms.

We may experience fluctuations in our quarterly operating results.

We could experience fluctuations in our quarterly operating results due to a number of factors, including our ability or inability to make investments in companies that meet our investment criteria, the interest rate payable on the debt securities we acquire, the default rate on such securities, the level of our expenses, variations in and the timing of the recognition of realized and unrealized gains or losses, the degree to which we encounter competition in our markets and general economic conditions. As a result of these factors, results for any period should not be relied upon as being indicative of performance in future periods.

We will be subject to corporate-level U.S. federal income tax if we are unable to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code.

We have elected to be treated as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code; however, no assurance can be given that we will be able to maintain our RIC tax treatment. To maintain our tax treatment as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code and to avoid the imposition of U.S. federal income taxes on income and gains distributed to our stockholders, we must meet certain requirements, including source-of-income, asset diversification and annual distribution requirements. The source-of-income requirement will be satisfied if we derive at least 90.0% of our gross income for each year from dividends, interest, gains from sale of securities or similar sources. To maintain our tax treatment as a RIC, we must also meet certain asset diversification requirements at the end of each calendar quarter. Failure to meet these requirements may result in our losing our RIC tax treatment or our having to dispose of certain investments quickly in order to prevent the loss of RIC tax treatment. Because most of our investments will be in private or thinly traded public companies, any such dispositions could be made at disadvantageous prices and may result in substantial losses. The annual distribution requirement applicable to RICs will be satisfied if we distribute at least 90.0% of our net ordinary income and net short-term capital gains in excess of net long-term capital losses, if any, to our stockholders on an annual basis. In addition, we will be subject to a 4.0% nondeductible federal excise tax to the extent that we do not satisfy certain additional minimum distribution requirements on a calendar-year basis. We will be subject, to the extent we use debt financing, to certain asset coverage ratio requirements under the 1940 Act and financial covenants under loan and credit agreements that could, under certain circumstances, restrict us from making annual distributions necessary to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC. If we are unable to obtain cash from other sources, we may fail to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC and, thus, may be subject to U.S. federal corporate income tax on our entire taxable income without regard to any distributions made by us. If we fail to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC for any reason and become subject to U.S. corporate income tax, the resulting tax liability could substantially reduce our net assets, the amount of income available for distributions to stockholders and the amount of our distributions and the amount of funds available for new investments. Such a failure could have a material adverse effect on us and our stockholders.

We may not be able to pay you distributions, our distributions may not grow over time, a portion of distributions paid to you may be a return of capital, and investors in our debt securities may not receive all of the interest income to which they are entitled.

We intend to make distributions on a quarterly basis to our stockholders out of assets legally available for distribution. We cannot assure you that we will achieve investment results that will allow us to make a specified level of cash distributions or year-to-year increases in cash distributions. Our ability to pay distributions might be adversely affected by the impact of one or more of the risk factors described in this annual report on Form 10-K. In addition, due to the asset coverage test applicable to us as a BDC, in the future, we may be limited in our ability to make distributions. All distributions will be made at the discretion of our board of directors and will depend on our earnings, our financial condition, maintenance of RIC tax treatment, compliance with applicable BDC regulations, SBA regulations, state corporate laws affecting the distribution of corporate assets and such other factors as our board of directors may deem relevant from time to time. We cannot assure you that we will make distributions to our stockholders in the future.

If we issue debt securities in the future, the above-referenced restrictions on distributions may also inhibit our ability to make required interest payments to holders of any such debt securities, which may cause a default under the terms of our then-existing debt agreements. Such a default could materially increase our cost of raising capital, as well as cause us to incur penalties under the terms of our then-existing debt agreements.

When we make quarterly distributions, we will be required to determine the extent to which such distributions are paid out of current and accumulated earnings and profits, recognized capital gain or capital. To the extent there is a return of capital, investors will be required to reduce their basis in our stock for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

We may have difficulty paying our required distributions if we recognize income before, or without, receiving cash representing such income.

For U.S. federal income tax purposes, we are required to include in our income certain amounts that we have not yet received in cash, such as OID, which may arise if we receive warrants in connection with the making of a loan or in other circumstances, and contractual payment-in-kind (“PIK”) interest, which represents contractual interest added to the loan balance and due at the end of the loan term. Such OID, or increases in loan balances as a result of contracted PIK arrangements, will be included in our income before we receive any corresponding cash payments. We also may be required to include in our income certain other amounts that we will not receive in cash.

Since in certain cases we may be required to recognize income before or without receiving cash representing such income, we may have difficulty meeting the requirement to distribute on an annual basis at least 90.0% of our net ordinary income and net short-term capital gains in excess of net long-term capital losses, if any, to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC. In such a case, we may have to sell some of our investments at times and/or at prices we would not consider advantageous, raise additional debt or equity capital or forgo new investment opportunities to satisfy the annual distribution requirements. In such circumstances, if we are unable to obtain such cash from other sources, we may fail to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC and thus be subject to corporate-level U.S. federal income tax. See “We will be subject to corporate-level U.S. federal income tax if we are unable to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code.”

If a portfolio company defaults on a loan that is structured to provide accrued interest, it is possible that accrued interest previously used in the calculation of the incentive fee will become uncollectible. Our investment advisor will not be under any obligation to reimburse us for any part of the incentive fee it received that was based on accrued income that we never receive as a result of a default by an entity on the obligation that resulted in the accrual of such income. That part of the incentive fee payable by us that relates to our net investment income will be computed and paid on income that may include interest that has been accrued but not yet received in cash, such as market discount, debt instruments with PIK interest, preferred stock with PIK dividends and zero coupon securities.

You may have a current tax liability on distributions you elect to reinvest in our common stock but would not receive cash to pay such tax liability.

If you participate in our dividend reinvestment plan, you will be deemed to have received, and for U.S. federal income tax purposes will be taxed on, the amount reinvested in our common stock to the extent the amount reinvested was not a tax-free return of capital. As a result, unless you are a tax-exempt entity, you may have to use funds from other sources to pay your tax liability on the value of our common stock received as a result of the distribution.

Because we expect to distribute substantially all of our net investment income and net realized capital gains to our stockholders, we will need additional capital to finance our growth, and such capital may not be available on favorable terms or at all.

We have elected to be taxed for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code. If we continue to meet certain requirements, including source-of-income, asset diversification and distribution requirements, and if we continue to be regulated as a BDC, we will continue to qualify to be taxed as a RIC and therefore will not have to pay U.S. federal corporate income tax on income that we timely distribute to our stockholders, allowing us to substantially reduce or eliminate our corporate-level income tax liability. As a BDC, we are generally required to meet a coverage ratio of total assets to total senior securities, which includes all of our borrowings (other than SBA leverage) and any preferred stock we may issue in the future, of at least 200.0% at the time we issue any debt or preferred stock. This requirement limits the amount of our leverage. Because we will continue to need capital to grow our investment portfolio, this limitation may prevent us from incurring debt or issuing preferred stock and require us to raise additional equity at a time when it may be disadvantageous to do so.

While we expect to be able to borrow and to issue additional debt and equity securities, we cannot assure you that debt and equity financing will be available to us on favorable terms, or at all. If additional funds are not available to us, we could be forced to curtail or cease new investment activities, and our net asset value could decline. In addition, as a BDC, we generally are not permitted to issue equity securities priced below net asset value without stockholder approval. At our Annual Stockholders Meeting on June 15, 2017, our stockholders voted to allow us to issue common stock at a price below net asset value per share for a period of one year ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. We expect to present to our stockholders a similar proposal at our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. The maximum number of shares issuable below net asset value pursuant to the authority granted by our stockholders that could result in such dilution is limited to 25.0% of FIC’s then outstanding common stock immediately prior to each such sale. We do not intend to issue shares of our common stock below net asset value unless our board of directors determines that it would be in our stockholders’ best interests to do so. The level of net asset value dilution that could result from such an offering is not limited.

Illustration: Examples of Dilutive Effect of the Issuance of Shares Below Net Asset Value. The following table illustrates the level of net asset value dilution that would be experienced by a nonparticipating stockholder in three different hypothetical offerings of different sizes and levels of discount from net asset value per share, although it is not possible to predict the level of market price decline that may occur. Actual sales prices and discounts may differ from the presentation below.

Assume that Company XYZ has 1,000,000 common shares outstanding, $15,000,000 in total assets and $5,000,000 in total liabilities. The current net asset value and net asset value per share are thus $10,000,000 and $10.00, respectively. The table illustrates the dilutive effect on nonparticipating Stockholder A of (1) an offering of 50,000 shares (5.0% of the outstanding shares) at $9.50 per share after offering expenses and commission (a 5.0% discount from net asset value), (2) an offering of 100,000 shares (10.0% of the outstanding shares) at $9.00 per share after offering expenses and commissions (a 10.0% discount from net asset value) and (3) an offering of 200,000 shares (20.0% of the outstanding shares) at $8.00 per share after offering expenses and commissions (a 20.0% discount from net asset value). The acronym “NAV” stands for “net asset value.”

In any offering of common stock, we will present the actual dilution to stockholders in tabular form in the prospectus supplement specific to that offering.

	Prior to Sale Below NAV	Example 1 5% Offering At 5% Discount		Example 2 10% Offering At 10% Discount		Example 3 20% Offering At 20% Discount		Example 4 25% Offering At 25% Discount		Example 5 25% Offering At 100% Discount	
		Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change
Offering Price											
Price per Share to Public	—	$ 10.00	—	$ 9.47	—	$ 8.42	—	$ 7.89	—	$ —	—
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer	—	$ 9.50	—	$ 9.00	—	$ 8.00	—	$ 7.50	—	$ —	—
Decrease to NAV											
Total Shares Outstanding	1,000,000	1,050,000	5.00%	1,100,000	10.00%	1,200,000	20.00%	1,250,000	25.00%	1,250,000	25.00%
NAV per Share	$ 10.00	$ 9.98	(0.24)%	$ 9.91	(0.91)%	$ 9.67	(3.33)%	$ 9.50	(5.00)%	$ 8.00	(20.00)%
Dilution to Stockholder											
Shares Held by Stockholder A	10,000	10,000	—	10,000	—	10,000	—	10,000	—	10,000	—
Percentage Held by Stockholder A	1.0%	0.95%	(4.76)%	0.91%	(9.09)%	0.83%	(16.67)%	0.80%	(20.00)%	0.80%	(20.00)%
Total Asset Values											
Total NAV Held by Stockholder A	$ 100,000	$ 99,762	(0.24)%	$ 99,091	(0.91)%	$ 96,667	(3.33)%	$ 95,000	(5.00)%	$ 80,000	(20.00)%
Total Investment by Stockholder A (Assumed to be $10.00 per Share)	$ 100,000	$ 100,000	—	$ 100,000	—	$ 100,000	—	$ 100,000	—	$ 100,000	—
Total Dilution to Stockholder A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)	—	$ (238)	—	$ (909)	—	$ (3,333)	—	$ (5,000)	—	$ (20,000)	—
Per Share Amounts											
NAV per Share Held by Stockholder A	—	$ 9.98	—	$ 9.91	—	$ 9.67	—	$ 9.50	—	$ 8.00	—
Investment per Share Held by Stockholder A (Assumed to be $10.00 per Share on Shares Held Prior to Sale)	$ 10.00	$ 10.00	—	$ 10.00	—	$ 10.00	—	$ 10.00	—	$ 10.00	—
Dilution per Share Held by Stockholder A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)	—	$ (0.02)	—	$ (0.09)	—	$ (0.33)	—	$ (0.50)	—	$ (2.00)	—
Percentage Dilution to Stockholder A (Dilution per Share Divided by Investment per Share)	—	—	(0.24)%	—	(0.91)%	—	(3.33)%	—	(5.00)%	—	(20.00)%

Our board of directors may change our investment objective, operating policies and strategies without prior notice or stockholder approval, the effects of which may be adverse.

Our board of directors has the authority, except as otherwise provided by the 1940 Act, to modify or waive certain of our operating policies and strategies without prior notice and without stockholder approval. Under Maryland law, we also cannot be dissolved without prior stockholder approval except by judicial action. In addition, upon approval of a majority of our stockholders, we may elect to withdraw our status as a BDC. If we, or Fund I, decide to withdraw our election, or if we otherwise fail to maintain our qualification, as a BDC, we may be subject to the substantially greater regulation under the 1940 Act as a closed-end investment company. Compliance with such regulations would significantly decrease our operating flexibility, and could significantly increase our costs of doing business. We cannot predict the effect any changes to our current operating policies and strategies would have on our business, operating results or the value of our common stock. Nevertheless, any such changes could adversely affect our business and impair our ability to make distributions.

Regulations governing our operation as a BDC affect our ability to raise, and the way in which we raise, additional capital which may have a negative effect on our growth.

Our business will require capital to operate and grow. We may acquire such additional capital from the following sources:

Senior Securities. Currently we, through the Funds, issue debt securities guaranteed by the SBA and have access to funds under a revolving credit facility. In the future, we may issue debt securities or preferred stock and/or borrow money from banks or other financial institutions, which we refer to collectively as senior securities. As a result of issuing senior securities, we will be exposed to additional risks, including, but not limited to, the following:

- Under the provisions of the 1940 Act, we are permitted, as a BDC, to issue senior securities only in amounts such that our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, equals at least 200.0% after each issuance of senior securities. If the value of our assets declines, we may be unable to satisfy this test. If that happens, we may sell a portion of our investments and, depending on the nature of our leverage, repay a portion of our debt at a time when such sales and/or repayments may be disadvantageous. Further, we will not be permitted to declare or make any distribution to stockholders or repurchase shares until such time as we satisfy this test.
- Any amounts that we use to service our debt or make payments on preferred stock will not be available for distributions to our common stockholders.
- It is likely that any senior securities or other indebtedness we issue will be governed by an indenture or other instrument containing covenants restricting our operating flexibility. Additionally, some of these securities or other indebtedness may be rated by rating agencies, and in obtaining a rating for such securities and other indebtedness, we may be required to abide by operating and investment guidelines that further restrict operating and financial flexibility.
- We and, indirectly, our stockholders will bear the cost of issuing and servicing such securities and other indebtedness.
- Preferred stock or any convertible or exchangeable securities that we issue in the future may have rights, preferences and privileges more favorable than those of our common stock, including separate voting rights and could delay or prevent a transaction or a change in control to the detriment of the holders of our common stock.

Additional Common Stock. Under the provisions of the 1940 Act, we are not generally able to issue and sell our common stock at a price below net asset value per share. We may, however, sell our common stock, warrants, options or rights to acquire our common stock, at a price below the current net asset value of the common stock if our board of directors determines that such sale is in the best interests of our stockholders, and our stockholders approve such sale. At our Annual Stockholders Meeting on June 15, 2017, our stockholders voted to allow us to issue common stock at a price below net asset value per share for a period of one year ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. We expect to present to our stockholders a similar proposal at our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. The maximum number of shares issuable below net asset value pursuant to the authority granted by our stockholders that could result in such dilution is limited to 25.0% of FIC's then outstanding common stock immediately prior to each such sale. We do not intend to sell or otherwise issue shares of our common stock below net asset value unless our board of directors determines that it would be in our stockholders' best interests to do so. The level of net asset value dilution that could result from such an offering is not limited. In any such case, however, the price at which our common stock is to be issued and sold may not be less than a price which, in the determination of our board of directors, closely approximates the market value of such securities (less any distributing commission or discount). We may also make rights offerings to our stockholders at prices per share less than the net asset value per share, subject to applicable requirements of the 1940 Act and the regulations and staff interpretations thereunder. If we raise additional funds by issuing more common stock or senior securities convertible into, or exchangeable for, our common stock, the percentage ownership of our stockholders at that time would decrease, and they may experience dilution. Moreover, we can offer no assurance that we will be able to issue and sell additional equity securities in the future, on favorable terms or at all.

The U.S. Presidential Administration may make substantial changes to financial regulation, as well as fiscal and tax policies that may adversely affect our business.

As a result of the 2016 U.S. election, the Republican Party currently controls both the executive and legislative branches of government, which increases the likelihood that legislation may be adopted that could significantly affect the regulation of U.S. financial markets. Areas subject to potential change, amendment or repeal include the Wall Street Reform and Consumer protection Act of 2010 ("Dodd-Frank Act") and the authority of the Federal Reserve and the Financial Stability Oversight Council. The United States may also potentially withdraw from or renegotiate various trade agreements and take other actions that would change current trade policies of the United States. We cannot predict which, if any, of these actions will be taken or, if taken, their effect on the financial stability of the United States Such actions could have a significant adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. We cannot predict the effects of these or similar events in the future on the U.S. economy and securities markets or on our investments. We monitor developments and seek to manage our investments in a manner consistent with achieving our investment objective, but there can be no assurance that we will be successful in doing so.

Recent tax legislation could have a negative effect on the Company.

On December 22, 2017, tax reform legislation commonly referred to as the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act was signed into law. This legislation makes significant changes to the U.S. federal income tax rules applicable to both individuals and entities, including permanently reducing the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate, reducing the maximum U.S. federal individual income tax rate (effective for taxable years 2018 through 2025), restricting the deductibility of interest expense, and changing the rules regarding the calculation of net operating loss deductions that may be used to offset taxable income. There is uncertainty as to the impact of this legislation on us, the entities in which we invest, or an investment in our securities. You are urged to consult with your tax advisor with respect to the impact of this legislation and the status of any other regulatory or administrative developments and proposals and their potential effect on your investment in our securities.

Changes in laws or regulations governing our operations may adversely affect our business or cause us to alter our business strategy.

We are subject to regulation at the local, state and federal level. New legislation may be enacted or new interpretations, rulings or regulations could be adopted, including those governing the types of investments we are permitted to make, any of which could harm us and our stockholders, potentially with retroactive effect. In addition, any change to the SBA’s current debenture program could have a significant impact on our ability to obtain low-cost leverage and, therefore, our competitive advantage over other funds.

Legal, tax and regulatory changes could occur that may adversely affect us. For example, from time to time the market for private equity transactions has been (and is currently being) adversely affected by a decrease in the availability of senior and subordinated financings for transactions, in part in response to credit market disruptions and/or regulatory pressures on providers of financing to reduce or eliminate their exposure to the risks involved in such transactions.

Additionally, any changes to the laws and regulations governing our operations related to permitted investments may cause us to alter our investment strategy in order to meet our investment objectives. Such changes could result in material differences to the strategies and plans set forth in this Annual Report and may shift our investment focus from the areas of expertise of our investment advisor to other types of investments in which our investment advisor may have little or no expertise or experience. Any such changes, if they occur, could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and the value of your investment.

Our ability to enter into and exit investment transactions with our affiliates will be restricted.

Except in those instances where we have received prior exemptive relief from the SEC, we will be prohibited under the 1940 Act from knowingly participating in certain transactions with our affiliates without the prior approval of our Independent Directors. We, our investment advisor, the Funds, and Fidus Credit Opportunities, L.P. received exemptive relief from the SEC under the 1940 Act, which permits us to co-invest with other funds managed by our investment advisor or its affiliates in a manner consistent with our investment objective, positions, policies, strategies and restrictions as well as regulatory requirements and other pertinent factors. In addition, any person that owns, directly or indirectly, 5.0% or more of our outstanding voting securities is deemed our affiliate for purposes of the 1940 Act and we are generally prohibited from buying or selling any security from or to such affiliate, absent the prior approval of our Independent Directors. The 1940 Act also prohibits “joint” transactions with an affiliate, which could include investments in the same portfolio company (whether at the same or different times), without prior approval of our Independent Directors. If a person acquires more than 25.0% of our voting securities, we will be prohibited from buying or selling any security from or to such person, or entering into joint transactions with such person, absent the prior approval of the SEC. These restrictions could limit or prohibit us from making certain attractive investments that we might otherwise make absent such restrictions.

Our investment advisor can resign on 60 days' notice, and we may not be able to find a suitable replacement within that time, resulting in a disruption in our operations that could adversely affect our financial condition, business and results of operations.

Our investment advisor has the right, under the Investment Advisory Agreement, to resign at any time upon not less than 60 days' written notice, whether we have found a replacement or not. If our investment advisor resigns, we may not be able to find a new investment advisor and administrator or hire internal management with similar expertise and ability to provide the same or equivalent services on acceptable terms within 60 days, or at all. If we are unable to do so quickly, our operations are likely to experience a disruption, our financial condition, business and results of operations as well as our ability to pay distributions are likely to be adversely affected and the market price of our shares may decline. In addition, investment activities are likely to suffer if we are unable to identify and reach an agreement with a single institution or group of executives having the expertise possessed by our investment advisor and its affiliates. Even if we are able to retain comparable management, whether internal or external, the integration of such management and their lack of familiarity with our investment objective may result in additional costs and time delays that may adversely affect our financial condition, business and results of operations.

Our investment advisor can resign from its role as our administrator under the Administration Agreement, and we may not be able to find a suitable replacement, resulting in a disruption in our operations that could adversely affect our financial condition, business and results of operations.

Our investment advisor also has the right to resign under the Administration Agreement, whether we have found a replacement or not. If our investment advisor resigns as our administrator, we may not be able to find a new administrator or hire internal management with similar expertise and ability to provide the same or equivalent services on acceptable terms, or at all. If we are unable to do so quickly, our operations are likely to experience a disruption, our financial condition, business and results of operations as well as our ability to pay distributions are likely to be adversely affected and the market price of our shares may decline. In addition, administrative activities are likely to suffer if we are unable to identify and reach an agreement with a service provider or individuals with the expertise possessed by our investment advisor. Even if we are able to retain a comparable service provider or individuals to perform such services, whether internal or external, their integration into our business and lack of familiarity with our investment objective may result in additional costs and time delays that may adversely affect our financial condition, business and results of operations.

Efforts to comply with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act will involve significant expenditures, and non-compliance with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act may adversely affect us and the market price of our common stock.

As a publicly-traded company, we incur legal, accounting and other expenses, including costs associated with the periodic reporting requirements applicable to a company whose securities are registered under the Exchange Act, as well as additional corporate governance requirements, including requirements under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and other rules implemented by the SEC.

Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires that public companies evaluate and report on their systems of internal control over financial reporting. In addition, our independent registered public accounting firm must report on management's evaluation of those controls. In future periods, we may identify deficiencies in our system of internal controls over financial reporting that may require remediation. There can be no assurances that any such future deficiencies identified may not be material weaknesses that would be required to be reported in future periods.

Internal and external cyber threats, as well as other disasters, could impair our ability to conduct business effectively.

The occurrence of a disaster, such as a cyber-attack against us or against a third-party that has access to our data or networks, a natural catastrophe, an industrial accident, failure of our disaster recovery systems, or consequential employee error, could have an adverse effect on our ability to communicate or conduct business, negatively impacting our operations and financial condition. This adverse effect can become particularly acute if those events affect our electronic data processing, transmission, storage, and retrieval systems, or impact the availability, integrity, or confidentiality of our data.

We depend heavily upon computer systems to perform necessary business functions. Despite our implementation of a variety of security measures, our computer systems, networks, and data, like those of other companies, could be subject to cyber-attacks and unauthorized access, use, alteration, or destruction, such as from physical and electronic break-ins or unauthorized tampering. If one or more of these events occurs, it could potentially jeopardize the confidential, proprietary, and other information processed, stored in, and transmitted through our computer systems and networks. Such an attack could cause interruptions or malfunctions in our operations, which could result in financial losses, litigation, regulatory penalties, client dissatisfaction or loss, reputational damage, and increased costs associated with mitigation of damages and remediation.

Third parties with which we do business may also be sources of cybersecurity or other technological risk. We outsource certain functions and these relationships allow for the storage and processing of our information, as well as client, counterparty, employee, and borrower information. While we engage in actions to reduce our exposure resulting from outsourcing, ongoing threats may result in unauthorized access, loss, exposure, destruction, or other cybersecurity incident that affects our data, resulting in increased costs and other consequences as described above.

Risks Relating to Our Investments

Economic recessions or downturns could impair our portfolio companies and harm our operating results.

Many of our portfolio companies are susceptible to economic slowdowns or recessions (including industry specific downturns) and may be unable to repay our debt investments during these periods. Therefore, our non-performing assets are likely to increase and the value of our portfolio is likely to decrease during these periods. Adverse economic conditions may decrease the value of collateral securing some of our debt investments and the value of our equity investments. Economic slowdowns or recessions could lead to financial losses in our portfolio and a decrease in revenues, net income and assets. Unfavorable economic conditions also could increase our funding costs, limit our access to the capital markets or result in a decision by lenders not to extend credit to us. These events could prevent us from increasing our investments and harm our operating results.

A portfolio company's failure to satisfy financial or operating covenants imposed by us or other lenders could lead to defaults and, potentially, termination of its loans and foreclosure on its assets, which could trigger cross-defaults under other agreements and jeopardize our portfolio company's ability to meet its obligations under the loans and debt securities that we hold. We may incur expenses to the extent necessary to seek recovery upon default or to negotiate new terms with a defaulting portfolio company.

Terrorist attacks, acts of war, or natural disasters may affect any market for our common stock, impact the businesses in which we invest and harm our business, operating results and financial condition.

Portfolio investments may be affected by force majeure events *(i.e.*, events beyond the control of the party claiming that the event has occurred, including, without limitation, acts of God, fire, flood, earthquakes, war, terrorism and labor strikes). Some force majeure events may adversely affect the ability of a party (including a portfolio company or a counterparty to us or a portfolio company) to perform its obligations until it is able to remedy the force majeure event. In addition, the cost to a portfolio company of repairing or replacing damaged assets resulting from such force majeure event could be considerable. Additionally, a major governmental intervention into industry, including the nationalization of an industry or the assertion of control over one or more companies or its assets, could result in a loss to us, including if its investment in such issuer is cancelled, unwound or acquired (which could be without what we consider to be adequate compensation). To the extent we are exposed to investments in portfolio companies that as a group are exposed to such force majeure events, the risks and potential losses to us are enhanced.

Our investments in certain industry sectors, such as the energy sector, may be subject to significant political, economic and capacity risks that may increase the possibility that we lose all or a part of our investment.

The revenues and profitability of certain portfolio companies may be significantly affected by the future prices of and the demand for oil, natural gas liquids and natural gas, which are inherently uncertain. Investments in energy companies may have significant shortfalls in projected cash flow if prices decline from levels projected at the time the investment is made. Various factors beyond our control could affect energy prices, including worldwide supplies, political instability or armed conflicts in oil, natural gas liquids and natural gas producing regions, the price of foreign imports, the level of consumer demand, the price and availability of alternative fuels, capacity constraints and changes in existing government regulation, taxation and price controls. Energy prices have fluctuated greatly during the past, and energy markets continue to be volatile.

Changes in healthcare laws and other regulations applicable to some of our portfolio companies' businesses may constrain their ability to offer their products and services.

Changes in healthcare or other laws and regulations applicable to the businesses of some of our portfolio companies may occur that could increase their compliance and other costs of doing business, require significant systems enhancements, or render their products or services less profitable or obsolete, any of which could have a material adverse effect on their results of operations. There has also been an increased political and regulatory focus on healthcare laws in recent years, and new legislation could have a material effect on the business and operations of some of our portfolio companies.

If our portfolio companies are unable to protect their intellectual property rights, our business and prospects could be harmed, and if portfolio companies are required to devote significant resources to protecting their intellectual property rights, the value of our investment could be reduced.

Our future success and competitive position will depend in part upon the ability of our portfolio companies to obtain, maintain and protect proprietary technology used in their products and services. The intellectual property held by our portfolio companies often represents a substantial portion of the collateral securing our investments and/or constitutes a significant portion of the portfolio companies' value and may be available in a downside scenario to repay our loans. Our portfolio companies will rely, in part, on patent, trade secret, and trademark law to protect that technology, but competitors may misappropriate their intellectual property, and disputes as to ownership of intellectual property may arise. Portfolio companies may, from time to time, be required to institute litigation to enforce their patents, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights; protect their trade secrets; determine the validity and scope of the proprietary rights of others; or defend against claims of infringement. Such litigation could result in substantial costs and diversion of resources. Similarly, if a portfolio company is found to infringe or misappropriate a third-party's patent or other proprietary rights, it could be required to pay damages to the third party, alter its products or processes, obtain a license from the third-party, and/or cease activities utilizing the proprietary rights, including making or selling products utilizing the proprietary rights. Any of the foregoing events could negatively affect both the portfolio company's ability to service our debt investment and the value of any related debt and equity securities that we own, as well as any collateral securing our investment.

Our investments in portfolio companies may be risky, and we could lose all or part of our investment.

Investing in lower middle-market companies involves a number of significant risks. Among other things, these companies:

- may have limited financial resources and may be unable to meet their obligations under their debt instruments that we hold, which may be accompanied by a deterioration in the value of any collateral and a reduction in the likelihood of us realizing any guarantees from subsidiaries or affiliates of portfolio companies that we may have obtained in connection with our investment;
- may have shorter operating histories, narrower product lines and smaller market shares, which tend to render them more vulnerable to competitors' actions and market conditions, as well as general economic downturns, than larger businesses;
- are more likely to depend on the management talents and efforts of a small group of persons; therefore, the death, disability, resignation or termination of one or more of these persons could have a material adverse impact on our portfolio company and, in turn, on us;
- generally have less predictable operating results, may from time to time be parties to litigation, may be engaged in rapidly changing businesses with products subject to a substantial risk of obsolescence, and may require substantial additional capital to support their operations, finance expansion or maintain their competitive position; and
- generally have less publicly available information about their businesses, operations and financial condition. If we are unable to uncover all material information about these companies, we may not make a fully informed investment decision, and may lose all or part of our investment.

In addition, in the course of providing significant managerial assistance to certain portfolio companies, certain of our management and directors may serve as directors on the boards of such companies. To the extent that litigation arises out of investments in these portfolio companies, our management and directors may be named as defendants in such litigation, which could result in an expenditure of funds (through our indemnification of such officers and directors) and the diversion of management time and resources.

The lack of liquidity in our investments may adversely affect our business.

All of our assets may be invested in illiquid securities, and a substantial portion of our investments in leveraged companies will be subject to legal and other restrictions on resale or will otherwise be less liquid than more broadly traded public securities. The illiquidity of these investments may make it difficult for us to sell such investments when desired. In addition, if we are required to liquidate all or a portion of our portfolio quickly, we may realize significantly less than the value at which we have previously recorded these investments. As a result, we do not expect to achieve liquidity in our investments in the near-term. However, to maintain the elections to be regulated as a BDC and as a RIC, we may have to dispose of investments if they do not satisfy one or more of the applicable criteria under the respective regulatory frameworks. We may also face other restrictions on our ability to liquidate an investment in a portfolio company to the extent that we or our investment advisor have material nonpublic information regarding such portfolio company.

We may not have the funds to make additional investments in our portfolio companies which could impair the value of our portfolio.

After our initial investment in a portfolio company, we may be called upon from time to time to provide additional funds to such company or have the opportunity to increase our investment through the exercise of a warrant to purchase common stock. There is no assurance that we will make, or will have sufficient funds to make, follow-on investments. Any decisions not to make a follow-on investment or any inability on our part to make such an investment may have a negative impact on a portfolio company in need of such an investment, may result in a missed opportunity for us to increase our participation in a successful operation or may reduce the expected yield on the investment. Even if we have sufficient capital to make a desired follow-on investment, we may elect not to make a follow-on investment because we may not want to increase our level of risk, because we prefer other opportunities or because we are inhibited by compliance with BDC requirements or the desire to maintain our RIC tax treatment. Our ability to make follow-on investments may also be limited by our investment advisor’s allocation policy.

Portfolio companies may incur debt that ranks equally with, or senior to, our investments in such companies.

We will invest primarily in second lien and subordinated (“mezzanine”) debt as well as equity issued by lower middle-market companies. The portfolio companies generally have, or may be permitted to incur, other debt that ranks equally with, or senior to, the debt in which we invest. By their terms, such senior debt instruments may entitle the holders to receive payment of interest or principal on or before the dates on which we are entitled to receive payments with respect to the debt instruments in which we invest. Also, in the event of insolvency, liquidation, dissolution, reorganization or bankruptcy of a portfolio company, holders of debt instruments ranking senior to our investment in that portfolio company would typically be entitled to receive payment in full before we receive any distribution. After repaying such senior creditors, such portfolio company may not have any remaining assets to use for repaying its obligation to us. In the case of debt ranking equally with debt instruments in which we invest, we would have to share on an equal basis any distributions with other creditors holding such debt in the event of an insolvency, liquidation, dissolution, reorganization or bankruptcy of the relevant portfolio company.

There may be circumstances where our debt investments could be subordinated to claims of other creditors or could be subject to lender liability claims.

Even though we may have structured certain of our investments as senior loans, if one of our portfolio companies were to go bankrupt, depending on the facts and circumstances, including the extent to which we actually provided managerial assistance to that portfolio company, a bankruptcy court might recharacterize our debt investment and subordinate all or a portion of our claim to that of other creditors. We may also be subject to lender liability claims for actions taken by us with respect to a borrower’s business or instances where we exercise control over the borrower. It is possible that we could become subject to a lender’s liability claim, including as a result of actions taken in rendering significant managerial assistance.

Second priority liens on collateral securing loans that we make to our portfolio companies may be subject to control by senior creditors with first priority liens. If there is a default, the value of the collateral may not be sufficient to repay in full both the first priority creditors and us.

Certain loans we make to portfolio companies are and will be secured on a second priority basis by the same collateral securing senior secured debt of such companies. The first priority liens on the collateral secure the portfolio company's obligations under any outstanding senior debt and may secure certain other future debt that may be permitted to be incurred by the company under the agreements governing the loans. The holders of obligations secured by the first priority liens on the collateral will generally control the liquidation of and be entitled to receive proceeds from any realization of the collateral to repay their obligations in full before us. In addition, the value of the collateral in the event of liquidation will depend on market and economic conditions, the availability of buyers and other factors. There can be no assurance that the proceeds, if any, from the sale or sales of all of the collateral would be sufficient to satisfy the loan obligations secured by the second priority liens after payment in full of all obligations secured by the first priority liens on the collateral. If such proceeds are not sufficient to repay amounts outstanding under the loan obligations secured by the second priority liens, then we, to the extent not repaid from the proceeds of the sale of the collateral, will only have an unsecured claim against the company's remaining assets, if any.

The rights we may have with respect to the collateral securing the loans we make to portfolio companies with senior debt outstanding may also be limited pursuant to the terms of one or more intercreditor agreements entered into with the holders of senior debt. Under an intercreditor agreement, at any time that obligations having the benefit of the first priority liens are outstanding, any of the following actions that may be taken in respect to the collateral will be at the direction of the holders of the obligations secured by the first priority liens:

- the ability to cause the commencement of enforcement proceedings against the collateral;
- the ability to control the conduct of such proceedings;
- the approval of amendments to collateral documents;
- releases of liens on the collateral; and
- waivers of past defaults under collateral documents.

We may not have the ability to control or direct such actions, even if our rights are adversely affected.

We may hold the debt securities of leveraged companies that may, due to the significant volatility of such companies, enter into bankruptcy proceedings.

Leveraged companies may experience bankruptcy or similar financial distress. The bankruptcy process has a number of significant inherent risks. Many events in a bankruptcy proceeding are the product of contested matters and adversary proceedings and are beyond the control of the creditors. A bankruptcy filing by an issuer may adversely and permanently affect the issuer. If the proceeding is converted to a liquidation, the value of the issuer may not equal the liquidation value that was believed to exist at the time of the investment. The duration of a bankruptcy proceeding is also difficult to predict, and a creditor's return on investment can be adversely affected by delays until the plan of reorganization or liquidation ultimately becomes effective. The administrative costs in connection with a bankruptcy proceeding are frequently high and would be paid out of the debtor's estate prior to any return to creditors. Because the standards for classification of claims under bankruptcy law are vague, our influence with respect to the class of securities or other obligations we own may be lost by increases in the number and amount of claims in the same class or by different classification and treatment. In the early stages of the bankruptcy process, it is often difficult to estimate the extent of, or even to identify, any contingent claims that might be made. In addition, certain claims that have priority by law (for example, claims for taxes) may be substantial.

Any unrealized depreciation we experience on our investment portfolio may be an indication of future realized losses, which could reduce our income available for distribution.

As a BDC, we are required to carry our investments at market value or, if no market value is ascertainable, at the fair value as determined in good faith by our board of directors. Decreases in the market values or fair values of our investments will be recorded as unrealized depreciation. Any unrealized depreciation in our investment portfolio could be an indication of a portfolio company's inability to meet its repayment obligations to us with respect to the affected investments. This could result in realized losses in the future and ultimately in reductions of our income available for distribution in future periods.

Defaults by our portfolio companies will harm our operating results.

A portfolio company's failure to satisfy financial or operating covenants imposed by us or other lenders could lead to defaults and, potentially, termination of its loans and foreclosure on its assets. This could trigger cross-defaults under other agreements and jeopardize the portfolio company's ability to meet its obligations under the debt or equity securities that we hold. We may incur expenses to the extent necessary to seek recovery upon default or to negotiate new terms, which may include the waiver of certain financial covenants, reduced interest and/or loss of principal, with a defaulting portfolio company.

To the extent OID and PIK-interest constitute a portion of our income, we will be exposed to typical risks associated with such income being required to be included in taxable and accounting income prior to receipt of cash representing such income.

Our investments may include original-issue-discount instruments and contractual PIK-interest arrangements. To the extent OID or PIK-interest constitutes a portion of our income, we are exposed to typical risks associated with such income being required to be included in taxable and accounting income prior to receipt of cash, including the following:

- The higher interest rates of OID and PIK instruments reflect the payment deferral, which results in a higher principal amount at the maturity of the instrument as compared to the original principal amount of the instrument, and increased credit risk associated with these instruments, and OID and PIK instruments generally represent a significantly higher credit risk than coupon loans.
- Even if the accounting conditions for income accrual are met, the borrower could still default when our actual collection is supposed to occur at the maturity of the obligation.
- OID and PIK instruments may have unreliable valuations because their continuing accruals require continuing judgments about the collectability of the deferred payments and the value of any associated collateral. OID and PIK-income may also create uncertainty about the source of our cash distributions.
- To the extent we provide loans with interest-only payments or moderate loan amortization, the majority of the principal payment or amortization of principal may be deferred until loan maturity. Because this debt generally allows the borrower to make a large lump-sum payment of principal at the end of the loan term, there is a risk of loss if the borrower is unable to pay the lump sum or refinance the amount owed at maturity.
- For accounting purposes, any cash distributions to stockholders representing OID and PIK-income are not treated as coming from paid-in capital, even though the cash to pay them comes from the offering proceeds. As a result, despite the fact that a distribution representing OID and PIK-income could be paid out of amounts invested by our stockholders, the 1940 Act does not require that stockholders be given notice of this fact by reporting it as a return of capital.
- In certain cases, we may recognize taxable income before or without receiving corresponding cash payments and, as a result, we may have difficulty meeting the annual distribution requirement necessary to maintain our qualification as a RIC.

We do not expect to control many of our portfolio companies.

We do not expect to control many of our portfolio companies, even though we may have board representation or board observation rights, and the debt agreements may contain certain restrictive covenants. As a result, we are subject to the risk that a portfolio company in which we invest may make business decisions with which we disagree and the management of such company, as representatives of the holders of the company's common equity, may take risks or otherwise act in ways that do not serve our interests as debt investors. Due to the lack of liquidity for our investments in private companies in the lower middle-market, we may not be able to dispose of our interests in our portfolio companies as readily as we would like or at an appropriate valuation. As a result, a portfolio company may make decisions that could decrease the value of our portfolio holdings.

We are a non-diversified investment company within the meaning of the 1940 Act; therefore we are not limited with respect to the proportion of our assets that may be invested in securities of a single issuer.

We are classified as a non-diversified investment company within the meaning of the 1940 Act, which means that we are not limited by the 1940 Act with respect to the proportion of our assets that we may invest in securities of a single issuer. To the extent that we assume large positions in the securities of a small number of issuers, our net asset value may fluctuate to a greater extent than that of a diversified investment company as a result of changes in the financial condition or the market's assessment of the issuer and the aggregate returns we realize may be significantly adversely affected if a small number of investments perform poorly or if we need to write down the value of any one investment. Additionally, while we are not targeting any specific industries, our investments may be concentrated in relatively few industries. As a result, a downturn in any particular industry in which we are invested could also significantly impact the aggregate returns we realize. We may also be more susceptible to any single economic or regulatory occurrence than a diversified investment company. Beyond the asset diversification requirements applicable to RICs, we do not have fixed guidelines for diversification, and our investments could be concentrated in relatively few portfolio companies.

Prepayments of our debt investments by our portfolio companies could adversely impact our results of operations and reduce our return on equity.

We are subject to the risk that the investments we make in our portfolio companies may be repaid prior to maturity. When this occurs, we will generally reinvest these proceeds in temporary investments, pending future investments in new portfolio companies. These temporary investments will typically have substantially lower yields than the debt being repaid, and we could experience significant delays in reinvesting these amounts. In addition, any future investment of such amounts in a new portfolio company may also be at lower yields than the investment that was repaid. As a result, our results of operations could be materially adversely affected if one or more of our portfolio companies elect to prepay amounts owed to us. Additionally, prepayments could negatively impact our return on equity, which could result in a decline in the market price of our common stock.

We may not realize gains from our equity investments.

Certain investments that we have made in the past and may make in the future include warrants or other equity or equity-related securities. In addition, we may from time to time make non-control, equity investments in portfolio companies. Our goal is to realize gains upon our disposition of such equity interests. However, the equity interests we receive may not appreciate in value and, in fact, may decline in value. We also may be unable to realize any value if a portfolio company does not have a liquidity event, such as a sale of the business, recapitalization or public offering, which would allow us to sell the underlying equity interests. We often seek puts or similar rights to give us the right to sell our equity securities back to the portfolio company issuer. We may be unable to exercise these put rights for the consideration provided in our investment documents if the issuer is in financial distress. Accordingly, we may not be able to realize gains from our equity interests, and any gains that we do realize on the disposition of any equity interests may not be sufficient to offset any other losses we experience.

If our primary investments are deemed not to be qualifying assets, we could be precluded from investing in our desired manner or deemed to be in violation of the 1940 Act.

In order to maintain our status as a BDC, we may not acquire any assets other than "qualifying assets" unless, at the time of and after giving effect to such acquisition, at least 70.0% of our total assets are qualifying assets. We believe that most of the investments that we may acquire in the future will constitute qualifying assets. However, we may be precluded from investing in what we believe are attractive investments if such investments are not qualifying assets for purposes of the 1940 Act. If we do not invest a sufficient portion of our assets in qualifying assets, we could violate the 1940 Act provisions applicable to BDCs and be precluded from making follow-on investments in existing portfolio companies (which could result in the dilution of our position) or required to dispose of investments at inappropriate times in order to come into compliance with the 1940 Act. If we need to dispose of such investments quickly, it could be difficult to dispose of such investments on favorable terms. We may not be able to find a buyer for such investments and, even if we do find a buyer, we may have to sell the investments at a substantial loss. Any such outcomes would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows. Furthermore, any failure to comply with the requirements imposed on BDCs by the 1940 Act could cause the SEC to bring an enforcement action against us and/or expose us to claims of private litigants. If we do not maintain our status as a BDC, we would be subject to regulation as a registered closed-end investment company under the 1940 Act. As a registered closed-end investment company, we would be subject to substantially more regulatory restrictions under the 1940 Act, which would significantly decrease our operating flexibility.

The disposition of our investments may result in contingent liabilities.

A significant portion of our investments involve private securities and we expect that a significant portion of our investments will continue to involve private securities. In connection with the disposition of an investment in private securities, we may be required to make representations about the business and financial affairs of the portfolio company typical of those made in connection with the sale of a business. Additionally, customary terms of such sales agreements generally provide adjustments to the initial purchase price determined on the closing date if the portfolio company's net working capital varies from preliminary amounts utilized in determining the initial purchase price; such adjustments could subsequently result in upward or downward revisions to the initial purchase price and impact our amount of realized gain or loss on sale. We may also be required to indemnify the purchasers of such investment to the extent that any such representations turn out to be inaccurate or with respect to potential liabilities. These arrangements may result in contingent liabilities that ultimately result in funding obligations that we must satisfy through its return of distributions previously made to it.

We may be unable to invest a significant portion of any net proceeds from an offering or from exiting an investment or other capital on acceptable terms, which could harm our financial condition and operating results.

We may be unable to invest the net proceeds of any offering or from exiting an investment or other sources of capital on acceptable terms within the time period that we anticipate or at all. Delays in investing such capital may cause our performance to be worse than that of fully invested BDCs or other lenders or investors pursuing comparable investment strategies.

Depending on market conditions and the amount of the capital involved, it may take us a substantial period of time to invest substantially all the capital in securities meeting our investment objective. During this period, we will invest such capital primarily in short-term securities consistent with our BDC election and our election to be taxed as a RIC, which may produce returns that are significantly lower than the returns which we expect to achieve when our portfolio is fully invested in longer-term investments in pursuit of our investment objective. Any distributions that we pay during such period may be substantially lower than the distributions that we may be able to pay when our portfolio is fully invested. In addition, until such time as the net proceeds of any offering or from exiting an investment or other sources capital are invested in new investments meeting our investment objective, the market price for our common stock may decline.

Our investment advisor's liability is limited under the Investment Advisory Agreement, and we have agreed to indemnify our investment advisor against certain liabilities, which may lead our investment advisor to act in a riskier manner on our behalf than it would when acting for its own account.

Under the Investment Advisory Agreement, our investment advisor does not assume any responsibility to us other than to render the services called for under that agreement, and it is not responsible for any action of our board of directors in following or declining to follow our investment advisor's advice or recommendations. Under the terms of the Investment Advisory Agreement, our investment advisor and its officers, directors, members, managers, partners, stockholders and employees are not liable to us, any subsidiary of ours, our directors, our stockholders or any subsidiary's stockholders or partners for acts or omissions performed in accordance with and pursuant to the Investment Advisory Agreement, except those resulting from acts constituting gross negligence, willful misconduct, bad faith or reckless disregard of our investment advisor's duties under the Investment Advisory Agreement. In addition, we have agreed to indemnify our investment advisor and its officers, directors, members, managers, partners, stockholders and employees from and against any claims or liabilities, including reasonable legal fees and other expenses reasonably incurred, arising out of or in connection with our business and operations or any action taken or omitted on our behalf pursuant to authority granted by the Investment Advisory Agreement, except where attributable to gross negligence, willful misconduct, bad faith or reckless disregard of such person's duties under the Investment Advisory Agreement. These protections may lead our investment advisor to act in a riskier manner when acting on our behalf than it would when acting for its own account.

Risks Relating to an Offering of Our Securities

Shares of closed-end investment companies, including business development companies, frequently trade at a discount to their net asset value.

Shares of closed-end investment companies, including BDCs, frequently trade at a discount from net asset value. This characteristic of closed-end investment companies and BDCs is separate and distinct from the risk that our net asset value per share may decline. We cannot predict whether our common stock will trade at, above or below net asset value. In addition, if our common stock trades below net asset value, we will generally not be able to issue additional common stock at the market price without first obtaining the approval of our stockholders and our Independent Directors. On June 15, 2017 our stockholders voted to allow us to sell or otherwise issue common stock at a price below net asset value per share for a period of one year ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. We expect to present to our stockholders a similar proposal at our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. Selling or otherwise issuing shares of FIC’s common stock below its then current net asset value per share would result in a dilution of FIC’s existing common stockholders. The maximum number of shares issuable below net asset value pursuant to the authority granted by our stockholders that could result in such dilution is limited to 25.0% of FIC’s then outstanding common stock immediately prior to each such sale. We do not intend to sell or otherwise issue shares of our common stock below net asset value unless our board of directors determines that it would be in our stockholders’ best interests to do so. The level of net asset value dilution that could result from such an offering is not limited.

Market conditions may increase the risks associated with our business and an investment in us.

The current worldwide financial market situation may contribute to increased market volatility, may have long-term effects on the U.S. and worldwide financial markets and may cause economic uncertainties or deterioration in the U.S. and worldwide. These conditions raised the level of many of the risks described herein and, if repeated or continued, could have an adverse effect on our portfolio companies and on their results of operations, financial conditions, access to credit and capital. The stress in the credit market and upon banks has led other creditors to tighten credit and the terms of credit. In certain cases, senior lenders to our portfolio companies can block payments by our portfolio companies in respect of our loans to such portfolio companies. In turn, these could have adverse effects on our business, financial condition, results of operations, distributions to our stockholders, access to capital, valuation of our assets and our stock price. Notwithstanding recent gains across both the equity and debt markets, these conditions may continue for a prolonged period of time or worsen in the future.

If, in the future, we sell common stock at a discount to our net asset value per share, stockholders who do not participate in such sale will experience immediate dilution in an amount that may be material.

On June 15, 2017, our stockholders approved our ability to sell or otherwise issue shares of our common stock at a discount from net asset value per share, as long as the cumulative number of shares sold pursuant to such authority does not exceed 25.0% of our then outstanding common stock immediately prior to each such sale, for a period of one year ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. Our stockholders will be asked to vote on a similar proposal at our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. If we sell or otherwise issue shares of our common stock at a discount to net asset value, it will pose a risk of dilution to our stockholders. In particular, stockholders who do not purchase additional shares at or below the discounted price in proportion to their current ownership will experience an immediate decrease in net asset value per share (as well as in the aggregate net asset value of their shares if they do not participate at all). These stockholders will also experience a disproportionately greater decrease in their participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than the increase we experience in our assets, potential earning power and voting interests from such issuances or sale. In addition, such issuances or sales may adversely affect the price at which our common stock trades. For additional information and hypothetical examples of these risks, see “Sales of Common Stock Below Net Asset Value,” and for actual dilution illustrations specific to an offering, see the prospectus supplement pursuant to which such sale is made.

Our net asset value may have changed significantly since our last valuation.

Our board of directors determines the fair value of our portfolio investments on a quarterly basis based on input from our investment advisor, our audit committee and, as to certain of our investments, a third party independent valuation firm. While the board of directors will review our net asset value per share in connection with any offering, it will not always have the benefit of input from the independent valuation firm when it does so. The fair value of various individual investments in our portfolio and/or the aggregate fair value of our investments may change significantly over time. If the fair value of our investment portfolio at December 31, 2017 is less than the fair value at the time of an offering during 2017, then we may record an unrealized loss on our investment portfolio and may report a lower net asset value per share than will be reflected in the Selected Consolidated Financial Data and the financial statements included in the prospectus supplement of that offering. If the fair value of our investment portfolio at December 31, 2017 is greater than the fair value at the time of an offering during 2017, we may record an unrealized gain on our investment portfolio and may report a greater net asset value per share than so reflected in the prospectus supplement of that offering. Upon publication of this information in connection with our announcement of operating results for our fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, the market price of our common stock may fluctuate materially, and may be substantially less than the price per share you pay for our common stock in an offering.

The market price of our securities may fluctuate significantly.

The market price and liquidity of the market for shares of our common stock may be significantly affected by numerous factors, some of which are beyond our control and may not be directly related to our operating performance. These factors include:

- significant volatility in the market price and trading volume of securities of BDCs or other companies in our sector, which is not necessarily related to the operating performance of these companies;
- exclusion of our common stock from certain market indices, such as the Russell 2000 Financial Services Index, could reduce the ability of certain institutional investors to own our common stock and could put short term pressure on our common stock;
- changes in regulatory policies or tax guidelines, particularly with respect to RICs, BDCs or SBICs;
- loss of RIC or BDC status;
- loss of status as an SBIC for the Funds, or any other SBIC subsidiary we may form;
- changes or perceived changes in earnings or variations in operating results;
- changes or perceived changes in the value of our portfolio of investments;
- changes in accounting guidelines governing valuation of our investments;
- any shortfall in revenue or net income or any increase in losses from levels expected by investors or securities analysts;
- departure of our investment advisor’s key personnel;
- operating performance of companies comparable to us;
- general economic trends and other external factors; and
- loss of a major funding source.

Investing in our securities may involve an above average degree of risk.

The investments we make in accordance with our investment objective may result in a higher amount of risk than alternative investment options and a higher risk of volatility or loss of principal. Our investments in portfolio companies may be highly speculative; therefore, an investment in our securities may not be suitable for someone with lower risk tolerance.

Sales of substantial amounts of our common stock may have an adverse effect on the market price of our common stock.

As of February 27, 2018, we had 24,507,940 shares of common stock outstanding. Sales of substantial amounts of our common stock, or the availability of shares for sale, could adversely affect the prevailing market price of our common stock. If this occurs and continues, it could impair our ability to raise additional capital through the sale of equity securities should we desire to do so.

If we issue preferred stock and/or debt securities, the net asset value and market value of our common stock may become more volatile.

We cannot assure you that the issuance of preferred stock and/or debt securities would result in a higher yield or return to the holders of our common stock. The issuance of preferred stock and/or debt securities would likely cause the net asset value and market value of our common stock to become more volatile. If the distribution rate on the preferred stock, or the interest rate on the debt securities, were to approach the net rate of return on our investment portfolio, the benefit of leverage to the holders of our common stock would be reduced. If the distribution rate on the preferred stock, or the interest rate on the debt securities, were to exceed the net rate of return on our portfolio, the use of leverage would result in a lower rate of return to the holders of common stock than if we had not issued the preferred stock and/or debt securities. Any decline in the net asset value of our investment would be borne entirely by the holders of our common stock. Therefore, if the market value of our portfolio were to decline, the leverage would result in a greater decrease in net asset value to the holders of our common stock than if we were not leveraged through the issuance of preferred stock and/or debt securities. This decline in net asset value would also tend to cause a greater decline in the market price for our common stock.

There is also a risk that, in the event of a sharp decline in the value of our net assets, we would be in danger of failing to maintain required asset coverage ratios which may be required by the preferred stock and/or debt securities or of a downgrade in the ratings of the preferred stock and/or debt securities or our current investment income might not be sufficient to meet the distribution requirements on the preferred stock or the interest payments on the debt securities. In order to counteract such an event, we might need to liquidate investments in order to fund redemption of some or all of the preferred stock and/or debt securities. In addition, we would pay (and the holders of our common stock would bear) all costs and expenses relating to the issuance and ongoing maintenance of the preferred stock and/or debt securities. Holders of preferred stock and/or debt securities may have different interests than holders of common stock and may at times have disproportionate influence over our affairs.

If we issue auction rate preferred stock and you purchase such auction rate preferred stock, you may not be able to sell your auction rate preferred stock at an auction if the auction fails.

If we issue auction rate preferred stock and you purchase such auction rate preferred stock, you may not be able to sell your auction rate preferred stock at an auction if the auction fails, i.e., if more shares of auction rate preferred stock are offered for sale than there are buyers for those shares. Also, if you place an order (a hold order) at an auction to retain auction rate preferred stock only at a specified rate that exceeds the rate set at the auction, you will not retain your auction rate preferred stock. Additionally, if you place a hold order without specifying a rate below which you would not wish to continue to hold your shares and the auction sets a below-market rate, you will receive a lower rate of return on your shares than any market rate of those securities. Finally, the distribution period of these securities may be changed, subject to certain conditions and with notice to the holders of the auction rate preferred stock, which could also affect the liquidity of your investment.

If you try to sell your auction rate preferred stock between auctions, you may not receive full value on your investment.

If you try to sell your auction rate preferred stock between auctions, you may not be able to sell them for their liquidation preference per share or such amount per share plus accumulated distributions. If we have designated a special distribution period of more than seven days, changes in interest rates could affect the price you would receive if you sold your shares in the secondary market. Broker-dealers that maintain a secondary trading market for the auction rate preferred stock are not required to maintain this market, and we will not be required to redeem auction rate preferred stock if either an auction or an attempted secondary market sale fails because of a lack of buyers. The auction rate preferred stock will likely not be registered on a stock exchange. If you sell your auction rate preferred stock to a broker-dealer between auctions, you may receive less than the price you paid for them, especially when market interest rates have risen since the last auction or during a special distribution period. Due to recent market disruption most auction-rate preferred stock have been unable to hold successful auctions and holders of such shares have suffered reduced liquidity, including the inability to sell such shares in a secondary market.

The trading market or market value of our debt securities or any convertible debt securities, if issued to the public, may be volatile.

Our debt securities or any convertible debt securities, if issued to the public, may or may not have an established trading market. We cannot assure investors that a trading market for our debt securities or any convertible debt securities, if issued to the public, would develop or be maintained if developed. In addition to our creditworthiness, many factors may materially adversely affect the trading market for, and market value of, our publicly issued debt securities or any convertible debt securities. These factors include, but are not limited to, the following:

- the time remaining to the maturity of these debt securities;

- the outstanding principal amount of debt securities with terms identical to these debt securities;
- the general economic environment;
- the supply of debt securities trading in the secondary market, if any;
- the redemption, repayment or convertible features, if any, of these debt securities;
- the level, direction and volatility of market interest rates generally; and
- market rates of interest higher or lower than rates borne by the debt securities.

There also may be a limited number of buyers for our debt securities. This too may materially adversely affect the market value of the debt securities or the trading market for the debt securities. Our debt securities may include convertible features that cause them to more closely bear risks associated with an investment in our common stock.

Our credit ratings, if any, may not reflect all risks of an investment in our debt securities or any convertible debt securities.

Our credit ratings, if any, will be an assessment by third parties of our ability to pay our obligations. Consequently, real or anticipated changes in our credit ratings will generally affect the market value of any publicly issued debt securities. Our credit ratings, however, may not reflect the potential impact of risks related to market conditions generally or other factors discussed herein about the market value of, or trading market for, any publicly issued debt securities.

Terms relating to redemption may materially adversely affect the return on any debt securities.

If we issue any debt securities or any convertible debt securities that are redeemable at our option, we may choose to redeem the debt securities at times when prevailing interest rates are lower than the interest rate paid on the debt securities. In addition, if the debt securities are subject to mandatory redemption, we may be required to redeem the debt securities at times when prevailing interest rates are lower than the interest rate paid on the debt securities. In this circumstance, a holder of our debt securities may not be able to reinvest the redemption proceeds in a comparable security at an effective interest rate as high as the debt securities being redeemed.

The issuance of subscription rights, warrants or convertible debt that are exchangeable for our common stock, will cause your interest in us to be diluted as a result of any such rights, warrants or convertible debt offering.

Stockholders who do not fully exercise rights, warrants or convertible debt issued to them in any offering of subscription rights, warrants or convertible debt to purchase our common stock should expect that they will, at the completion of the offering, own a smaller proportional interest in us than would otherwise be the case if they fully exercised their rights, warrants or convertible debt. We cannot state precisely the amount of any such dilution in share ownership because we do not know what proportion of the common stock would be purchased as a result of any such offering.

In addition, if the subscription price, warrant price or convertible debt price is less than our net asset value per share of common stock at the time of such offering, then our stockholders would experience an immediate dilution of the aggregate net asset value of their shares as a result of the offering. The amount of any such decrease in net asset value is not predictable because it is not known at this time what the subscription price, warrant price, convertible debt price or net asset value per share will be on the expiration date of such offering or what proportion of our common stock will be purchased as a result of any such offering. The risk of dilution is greater if there are multiple rights offerings. However, our board of directors will make a good faith determination that any offering of subscription rights, warrants or convertible debt would result in a net benefit to existing stockholders.

Future offerings of debt securities, which would be senior to our common stock upon liquidation, or equity securities, which could dilute our existing stockholders and may be senior to our common stock for the purposes of distributions, may harm the value of our common stock.

In the future, we may attempt to increase our capital resources by making additional offerings of debt or equity securities, including commercial paper, medium-term notes, senior or subordinated notes and classes of preferred stock or common stock, subject to the restrictions of the 1940 Act. Upon a liquidation of our company, holders of our debt securities and shares of preferred stock and lenders with respect to other borrowings would receive a distribution of our available assets prior to the holders of our common stock. Additional equity offerings by us may dilute the holdings of our existing stockholders or reduce the value of our common stock, or both. Any preferred stock we may issue would have a preference on distributions that could limit our ability to make distributions to the holders of our common stock. Because our decision to issue securities in any future offering will depend on market conditions and other factors beyond our control, we cannot predict or estimate the amount, timing or nature of our future offerings. Thus, our stockholders bear the risk of our future offerings reducing the market price of our common stock and diluting their stock holdings in us. In addition, proceeds from a sale of common stock will likely be used to increase our total assets or to pay down our borrowings, among other uses. This would increase our asset coverage ratio and permit us to incur additional leverage under rules pertaining to BDCs by increasing our borrowings or issuing senior securities such as preferred stock or additional debt securities.

Provisions of the Maryland General Corporation Law and our charter and bylaws could deter takeover attempts and have an adverse effect on the price of our common stock.

The Maryland General Corporation Law contains provisions that may discourage, delay or make more difficult a change in control of us or the removal of our directors. In addition, our board of directors may, without stockholder action, authorize the issuance of shares of stock in one or more classes or series, including preferred stock. Our charter and bylaws contain provisions that limit liability and provide for indemnification of our directors and officers. These provisions and others also may have the effect of deterring hostile takeovers or delaying changes in control or management. We are generally prohibited from engaging in mergers and other business combinations with stockholders that beneficially own 10.0% or more of the voting power of our outstanding voting stock, or with their affiliates, for five years after the most recent date on which such stockholders became the beneficial owners of 10.0% or more of the voting power of our outstanding voting stock and thereafter unless our directors and stockholders approve the business combination in the prescribed manner. See “Description of Our Capital Stock—Business Combinations.” Maryland law may discourage third parties from trying to acquire control of us and increase the difficulty of consummating such an offer.

We have also adopted measures that may make it difficult for a third party to obtain control of us, including provisions of our charter authorizing our board of directors to classify or reclassify shares of our stock in one or more classes or series and to cause the issuance of additional shares of our stock, including preferred stock. In addition, we have adopted a classified board of directors. A classified board may render a change in control of us or removal of our incumbent management more difficult. These provisions, as well as other provisions of our charter and bylaws, may delay, defer or prevent a transaction or a change in control that might otherwise be in the best interests of our stockholders.

Our business and operation could be negatively affected if we become subject to any securities litigation or shareholder activism, which could cause us to incur significant expense, hinder execution of investment strategy and impact our stock price.

In the past, following periods of volatility in the market price of a company’s securities, securities class action litigation has often been brought against that company. Shareholder activism, which could take many forms or arise in a variety of situations, has been increasing in the BDC space recently. While we are currently not subject to any securities litigation or shareholder activism, due to the potential volatility of our stock price and for a variety of other reasons, we may in the future become the target of securities litigation or shareholder activism. Securities litigation and shareholder activism, including potential proxy contests, could result in substantial costs and divert management’s and our board of directors’ attention and resources from our business. Additionally, such securities litigation and shareholder activism could give rise to perceived uncertainties as to our future, adversely affect our relationships with service providers and make it more difficult to attract and retain qualified personnel. Also, we may be required to incur significant legal fees and other expenses related to any securities litigation and activist shareholder matters. Further, our stock price could be subject to significant fluctuation or otherwise be adversely affected by the events, risks and uncertainties of any securities litigation and shareholder activism.

SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus contains forward-looking statements that involve substantial risks and uncertainties. These forward-looking statements are not historical facts, but rather are based on current expectations, estimates and projections about us, our current and prospective portfolio investments, our industry, our beliefs, and our assumptions. Words such as "anticipates," "expects," "intends," "plans," "will," "may," "continue," "believes," "seeks," "estimates," "would," "should," "targets," "projects" and variations of these words and similar expressions are intended to identify forward-looking statements. The forward-looking statements contained in this report involve risks and uncertainties, including statements as to:

- our future operating results;
- our business prospects and the prospects of our portfolio companies;
- the impact of investments that we expect to make;
- our contractual arrangements and relationships with third parties;
- the dependence of our future success on the general economy and its impact on the industries in which we invest;
- the ability of our portfolio companies to achieve their objectives;
- our expected financing and investments;
- the adequacy of our cash resources and working capital;
- the timing of cash flows, if any, from the operations of our portfolio companies;
- the impact of increased competition;
- the ability of our investment advisor to identify suitable investments for us and to monitor and administer our investments;
- the ability of our investment advisor to attract and retain highly talented professionals;
- our regulatory structure and tax status;
- our ability to operate as a BDC, a SBIC and a RIC;
- the adequacy of our cash resources and working capital;
- the timing of cash flows, if any, from the operations of our portfolio companies;
- the timing, form and amount of any dividend distributions;
- the impact of fluctuations in interest rates on our business;
- the valuation of any investments in portfolio companies, particularly those having no liquid trading market; and
- our ability to recover unrealized losses.

These statements are not guarantees of future performance and are subject to risks, uncertainties and other factors, some of which are beyond our control and difficult to predict and could cause actual results to differ materially from those expressed or forecasted in the forward-looking statements, including without limitation:

- an economic downturn could impair our portfolio companies' ability to continue to operate, which could lead to the loss of value in of some or all of our investments in such portfolio companies;
- a contraction of available credit and/or an inability to access the equity markets could impair our lending and investment activities;
- interest rate volatility could adversely affect our results, particularly because we use leverage as part of our investment strategy;
- currency fluctuations could adversely affect the results of our investments in portfolio companies with foreign operations; and,
- the risks, uncertainties and other factors we identify in Risk Factors contained in this prospectus and in our other filings with the SEC.

Although we believe that the assumptions on which these forward-looking statements are based are reasonable, any of those assumptions could prove to be inaccurate, and as a result, the forward-looking statements based on those assumptions also could be inaccurate. Important assumptions include our ability to originate new loans and investments, certain margins and levels of profitability and the availability of additional capital. In light of these and other uncertainties, the inclusion of a projection or forward-looking statement in this prospectus should not be regarded as a representation by us that our plans and objectives will be achieved. These risks and uncertainties include those described or identified in "Risk Factors" and elsewhere in this prospectus. You should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements, which apply only as of the date of this prospectus. The forward-looking statements and projections contained in this prospectus are excluded from the safe harbor protection provided by Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act.

USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless otherwise specified in any prospectus supplement accompanying this prospectus, we intend to use the net proceeds from the sale of our securities to invest in lower middle-market companies in accordance with our investment objective and strategies, to repay the outstanding indebtedness under our Credit Facility, if any, and for working capital and general corporate purposes. We will also pay operating expenses, including management, incentive and administrative fees, and may pay other expenses, from the net proceeds of any offering. We plan to raise new equity when we have attractive investment opportunities available. Pending such use, we will invest the net proceeds of any offering primarily in short-term securities consistent with our BDC election and our election to be taxed as a RIC. See “Regulation—Temporary Investments” for additional information about temporary investments we may make while waiting to make longer-term investments in pursuit of our investment objective.

Pending such use, we will invest the net proceeds of this offering primarily in cash, cash equivalents, U.S. Government securities and other high-quality debt instruments that mature in one year or less, or “temporary investments,” as appropriate. These securities may have lower yields than our other investments and accordingly result in lower distributions, if any, by us during such period. See “Regulation — Temporary Investments.” Our ability to achieve our investment objective may be limited to the extent that the net proceeds from the offering, pending full investment, are held in interest bearing deposits or other short-term instruments that produce income at a rate less than our cost of capital.

RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES

For the years ended December 31, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016 and 2017, the ratio of earnings to fixed charges of the Company, computed as set forth below, were as follows:

	For the year ended December 31,				
	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
Earnings to Fixed Charges(1)	4.95	3.65	3.79	4.98	5.69

For purposes of computing the ratios of earnings to fixed charges, earnings represent net increase in net assets resulting from operations plus (or minus) tax provision (benefit) including excise tax expense plus fixed charges. Fixed charges include interest and financing expenses.

(1) Earnings include net realized and unrealized gains or losses. Net realized and unrealized gains or losses can vary substantially from period to period.

- Excluding net unrealized gains or losses, the earnings to fixed charges ratio would be 8.08, 1.88, 4.86, 2.25 and 6.24 for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016 and 2017, respectively.
- Excluding net realized and unrealized gains or losses, the earnings to fixed charges ratio would be 3.76, 4.15, 3.85, 3.55 and 4.43 for the years ended December 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

Table of Contents

PRICE RANGE OF COMMON STOCK AND DISTRIBUTIONS

Our common stock began trading on June 21, 2011 on the NASDAQ Global Market under the symbol “FDUS.” Effective January 3, 2012, our common stock was included in the Nasdaq Global Select Market. The following table lists the high and low closing sale price for our common stock, and the closing sale price as a percentage of net asset value, or NAV, and the cash distributions per share that we have declared on our common stock for each fiscal quarter during the last two most recently completed fiscal years.

Period	NAV (1)	High Closing Sales Price	Low Closing Sales Price	Premium / (Discount) of High Sales Price to NAV (2)	Premium / (Discount) of Low Sales Price to NAV (2)	Distributions Per Share (3)
Year ended December 31, 2017						
First Quarter	$15.80	$17.57	$15.88	11.2%	0.5%	$ 0.39
Second Quarter	15.87	18.06	16.37	13.8	3.2	0.39
Third Quarter	15.97	17.04	15.80	6.7	(1.1)	0.39
Fourth Quarter	16.05	16.83	15.18	4.9	(5.4)	0.43
Year ended December 31, 2016						
First Quarter	15.25	15.51	11.91	1.7	(21.9)	0.39
Second Quarter	15.52	15.96	14.70	2.8	(5.3)	0.39
Third Quarter	15.58	16.33	15.22	4.8	(2.3)	0.39
Fourth Quarter	15.76	17.07	14.62	8.3	(7.2)	0.43

(1) Net asset value per share is determined as of the last day in the relevant quarter and therefore may not reflect the net asset value per share on the date of the high and low sales prices. The net asset values shown are based on outstanding shares at the end of each period.

(2) Calculated as the difference between the respective high or low closing sales price and the quarter end net asset value divided by the quarter end net asset value.

(3) Represents the regular and special, if applicable, distribution declared in the specified quarter. We have adopted an “opt out” dividend reinvestment plan for our common stockholders. As a result, if we declare a distribution, stockholders’ cash distributions will be automatically reinvested in additional shares of our common stock, unless they specifically “opt out” of the dividend reinvestment plan so as to receive cash distributions. See “Dividend Reinvestment Plan.”

Shares of BDCs may trade at a market price that is less than the net asset value of those shares. The possibilities that our shares of common stock will trade at a discount from net asset value or at premiums that are unsustainable over the long term are separate and distinct from the risk that our net asset value will decrease. It is not possible to predict whether any common stock offered pursuant to this prospectus supplement will trade at, above, or below net asset value.

We intend to continue to pay quarterly distributions to our stockholders. Our quarterly distributions, if any, are determined by our board of directors. We have elected to be taxed as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code. As long as we qualify for tax treatment as a RIC, we will not be taxed on our investment company taxable income or net capital gain, to the extent that such income or gain is distributed, or deemed to be distributed, to stockholders on a timely basis.

There were no deemed distributions during the years 2017, 2016 or 2015.

We may not be able to achieve operating results that will allow us to make distributions at a specific level or to increase the amount of these distributions from time to time. If we do not distribute a certain percentage of our income annually, we will suffer adverse tax consequences, including possible loss of our tax treatment as a RIC. We cannot assure stockholders that they will receive any distributions at a particular level.

We have adopted a dividend reinvestment plan that provides for reinvestment of our distributions on behalf of our stockholders, unless a stockholder elects to receive cash. As a result, if our board of directors authorizes, and we declare, a cash distribution, then our stockholders who have not "opted out" of our dividend reinvestment plan will have their cash distribution automatically reinvested in additional shares of our common stock, rather than receiving the cash distribution. Under the terms of our dividend reinvestment plan, dividends will primarily be paid in newly issued shares of common stock. However, we reserve the right to purchase shares in the open market in connection with the implementation of the plan. This feature of the plan means that, under certain circumstances, we may issue shares of our common stock at a price below net asset value per share, which could cause our stockholders to experience dilution.

To maintain our qualification as a RIC, we must, among other things, distribute at least 90.0% of our net ordinary income and our net short-term capital gains in excess of our net long-term capital losses, if any. In order to avoid certain excise taxes imposed on RICs, we currently intend to distribute during each calendar year an amount at least equal to the sum of (1) 98.0% of our net ordinary income for the calendar year, (2) 98.2% of our capital gain net income for the calendar year and (3) any net ordinary income and capital gain net income for the preceding calendar year that were not distributed during such year and on which we paid no U.S. federal income tax. We may retain for investment some or all of our net capital gain (i.e., net long-term capital gains in excess of net short-term capital losses) and treat such amounts as deemed distributions to our stockholders. If we do this, you will be treated as if you received an actual distribution of the capital gain we retain and then reinvested the net after-tax proceeds in our common stock. You also may be eligible to claim a tax credit (or, in certain circumstances, a tax refund) equal to your allocable share of the tax we paid on the capital gain deemed distributed to you. Please refer to "Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations" for further information regarding the consequences of our retention of net capital gain. We can offer no assurance that we will achieve results that will permit the payment of any cash distributions and, if we issue senior securities, we will be prohibited from making distributions if doing so causes us to fail to maintain the asset coverage ratios stipulated by the 1940 Act or if distributions are limited by the terms of any of our borrowings. See "Regulation" and "Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations."

We may make distributions that are payable in cash or shares of our common stock at the election of each stockholder. In accordance with Treasury regulations and published guidance issued by the Internal Revenue Service, a publicly offered RIC may treat distributions of its own stock as counting towards its RIC distribution requirements if each stockholder may elect to receive his, her, or its entire distribution in either cash or stock of the RIC. This published guidance applies even if the aggregate amount of cash available to be distributed to all stockholders is no more than 20% of the aggregate declared distribution. Under the published guidance, if too many stockholders elect to receive their distributions in cash, the cash available for distribution must be allocated among the shareholders electing to receive cash (with the balance of the distribution paid in stock). If we decide to make any distributions that are payable in part in shares of our stock, U.S. stockholders receiving such distributions generally will be required to include the full amount of the distribution (whether received in cash, shares of our stock, or a combination thereof) as ordinary income (or as long-term capital gain to the extent such distribution is properly reported as a capital gain dividend) to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits. As a result, a U.S. stockholder may be required to pay tax with respect to such distributions in excess of any cash received. If a U.S. stockholder sells the stock it receives in order to pay this tax, the sales proceeds may be less than the amount included in income with respect to the distribution, depending on the market price of our stock at the time of the sale. Furthermore, with respect to non-U.S. stockholders, we may be required to withhold U.S. federal tax with respect to such distributions, including in respect of all or a portion of such distributions that are payable in stock. In addition, if a significant number of our stockholders determine to sell shares of our stock in order to pay taxes owed on such distributions, it may put downward pressure on the trading price of shares of our stock.

Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated profits and earnings would be treated first as a return of capital to the extent of the stockholder's tax basis, and any remaining distributions would be treated as a capital gain. The determination of the tax attributes of our distributions will be made annually as of the end of our fiscal year based upon our taxable income for the full year and distributions paid for the full year. Therefore, a determination made on a quarterly basis may not be representative of the actual tax attributes of our distributions for a full year. Each year, a statement on Form 1099-DIV identifying the source of the distribution will be sent to our U.S. stockholders of record. Our board of directors presently intends to declare and pay quarterly dividends. Our ability to pay dividends could be affected by future business performance, liquidity, capital needs, alternative investment opportunities and loan covenants.

SELECTED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL DATA

The following selected consolidated financial data of FIC and its subsidiaries, including the Funds, as of and for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014 and 2013, is derived from the consolidated financial statements that have been audited by RSM US LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm. This financial data should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and the notes thereto included elsewhere in this prospectus and with "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations."

	Year Ended December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
	(Dollars in Thousands, Except Per Share Data)				
Statement of operations data:					
Total investment income	$68,615	$ 60,229	$ 54,269	$ 46,116	$ 41,792
Interest and financing expenses	9,893	10,594	9,428	7,507	7,076
Base management fee	9,788	8,254	7,545	5,899	5,261
Incentive fee	10,968	10,369	6,481	4,857	6,792
All other expenses	4,069	3,986	3,932	4,189	3,121
Net investment income before income taxes	33,897	27,026	26,883	23,664	19,542
Income tax provision	220	425	390	383	246
Net investment income	33,677	26,601	26,493	23,281	19,296
Net realized gains (losses) on investments	17,904	(13,835)	9,531	(17,029)	30,588
Net change in unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on investments	(5,426)	29,009	(10,086)	13,250	(22,188)
Income tax (provision) benefit on realized gains on investments	(2,204)	(205)	39	(17)	(493)
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	$43,951	$ 41,570	$ 25,977	$ 19,485	$ 27,203
Per share data:					
Net asset value (at end of period)	$ 16.05	$ 15.76	$ 15.17	$ 15.16	$ 15.35
Net investment income	$ 1.43	$ 1.45	$ 1.64	$ 1.62	$ 1.43
Net gain (loss) on investments	$ 0.44	$ 0.82	$ (0.04)	$ (0.26)	$ 0.58
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	$ 1.87	$ 2.27	$ 1.60	$ 1.36	$ 2.01
Dividends	$ 1.60	$ 1.60	$ 1.60	$ 1.72	$ 1.94
Other data:					
Weighted average annual yield on debt investments (1)	13.0%	13.1%	13.3%	13.4%	14.5%
Number of portfolio companies at year end	63	57	53	42	37
Expense ratios (as percentage of average net assets):					
Operating expenses	6.6%	7.8%	7.3%	6.7%	7.2%
Interest expense	2.6%	3.7%	3.8%	3.4%	3.4%

(1) Weighted average yields are computed using the effective interest rates for debt investments at cost as of the period end date, including accretion of original issue discount and loan origination fees, but excluding debt investments on non-accrual status, if any. The weighted average yield of our debt investments is not the same as a return on investment for our stockholders but, rather, relates to a portion of our investment portfolio and is calculated before the payment of all of our and our subsidiaries' fees and expenses.

	As of December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
	(Dollars in Thousands)				
Statement of assets and liabilities data:					
Total investments, at fair value	$596,308	$524,454	$443,269	$396,355	$306,981
Total assets	646,263	586,742	485,540	435,587	367,262
Borrowings	242,800	224,000	229,000	183,500	144,500
Total net assets	393,273	353,785	247,362	243,263	211,125

SELECTED QUARTERLY FINANCIAL DATA

The following tables set forth certain quarterly financial information for each of the eight quarters ending with the quarter ended December 31, 2017. This information was derived from our unaudited consolidated financial statements. Results for any quarter are not necessarily indicative of results for the past fiscal year or for any future quarter.

	March 31, 2017	June 30, 2017	September 30, 2017	December 31, 2017
Total investment income	$ 16,228	$17,271	$ 18,048	$ 17,068
Net investment income	7,859	8,942	9,189	7,687
Net increase in net assets from operations	9,532	9,957	12,055	12,407
Net investment income per share	0.35	0.39	0.38	0.31
Net increase in net assets from operations per share	0.42	0.44	0.49	0.51
Net asset value per share at end of period	15.80	15.87	15.97	16.05

	March 31, 2016	June 30, 2016	September 30, 2016	December 31, 2016
Total investment income	$ 14,691	$13,832	$ 14,431	$ 17,275
Net investment income	7,082	4,943	6,735	7,841
Net increase in net assets from operations	7,540	12,793	8,594	12,643
Net investment income per share	0.43	0.29	0.35	0.39
Net increase in net assets from operations per share	0.46	0.74	0.45	0.62
Net asset value per share at end of period	15.25	15.52	15.58	15.76

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

The following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations should be read in conjunction with "Selected Consolidated Financial Data," Fidus Investment Corporation's consolidated financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. The information contained in this section contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Please see "Risk Factors" and "Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements" for a discussion of the uncertainties, risks and assumptions associated with these statements.

Overview

We provide customized debt and equity financing solutions to lower middle-market companies, which we define as U.S. based companies having revenues between $10.0 million and $150.0 million. Our investment objective is to provide attractive risk-adjusted returns by generating both current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our equity related investments. Our investment strategy includes partnering with business owners, management teams and financial sponsors by providing customized financing for ownership transactions, recapitalizations, strategic acquisitions, business expansion and other growth initiatives. We seek to maintain a diversified portfolio of investments in order to help mitigate the potential effects of adverse economic events related to particular companies, regions or industries.

FIC was formed as a Maryland corporation on February 14, 2011. We completed our initial public offering, or IPO, in June 2011.

On June 20, 2011, FIC acquired all of the limited partnership interests of Fund I and membership interests of Fidus Mezzanine Capital GP, LLC, its general partner, resulting in Fund I becoming our wholly-owned SBIC subsidiary. Immediately following the acquisition, we and Fund I elected to be treated as business development companies, or BDCs, under the 1940 Act and our investment activities have been managed by Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC, our investment advisor, and supervised by our board of directors, a majority of whom are independent of us. On March 29, 2013, we commenced operations of a second wholly-owned subsidiary, Fund II. Fund I and Fund II are collectively referred to as the "Funds."

Fund I received its SBIC license on October 22, 2007 and Fund II received its SBIC license on May 28, 2013. We plan to continue to operate the Funds as SBICs, subject to SBA approval, and to utilize the proceeds of the sale of SBA-guaranteed debentures to enhance returns to our stockholders. We have also made, and continue to make, investments directly through FIC. We believe that utilizing FIC and the Funds as investment vehicles provides us with access to a broader array of investment opportunities. Based on the current capitalization of the Funds, as of December 31, 2017, we have approximately $27.0 million of remaining borrowing capacity under the SBIC Debenture Program and intend to fully utilize such capacity over the ensuing six months.

Revenues: We generate revenue in the form of interest and fee income on debt investments and capital gains and distributions, if any, on equity investments. Our debt investments, whether in the form of mezzanine, senior secured or unitranche loans, typically have terms of five to seven years and bear interest at a fixed rate but may bear interest at a floating rate. In some instances, we receive payments on our debt investments based on scheduled amortization of the outstanding balances. In addition, we receive repayments of some of our debt investments prior to their scheduled maturity dates, which may include prepayment penalties. The frequency or volume of these repayments fluctuates significantly from period to period. Our portfolio activity may reflect the proceeds of sales of securities. In some cases, our investments provide for deferred interest payments or PIK interest. The principal amount of loans and any accrued but unpaid interest generally become due at the maturity date. In addition, we may generate revenue in the form of commitment, origination, amendment, or structuring fees and fees for providing managerial assistance. Debt investment origination fees, OID and market discount or premium, if any, are capitalized, and we accrete or amortize such amounts into interest income. We record prepayment premiums on loans as fee income. Interest and dividend income is recorded on the accrual basis to the extent that we expect to collect such amounts. Debt investments or preferred equity securities are placed on non-accrual status when principal, interest or dividend payments become materially past due, or when there is reasonable doubt that principal, interest or dividends will be collected. See “Critical Accounting Policies and Use of Estimates – Revenue Recognition.” Interest is accrued daily based on the outstanding principal amount and the contractual terms of the debt. Dividend income is recorded as dividends are declared or at the point an obligation exists for the portfolio company to make a distribution, and is generally recognized when received. Distributions of earnings from portfolio companies are evaluated to determine if the distribution is a distribution of earnings or a return of capital. Distributions of earnings are included in dividend income while a return of capital is recorded as a reduction in the cost basis of the investment. Estimates are adjusted as necessary when the relevant tax forms are received from the portfolio company.

We recognize realized gains or losses on investments based on the difference between the net proceeds from the disposition and the cost basis of the investment, without regard to unrealized gains or losses previously recognized. We record current period changes in fair value of investments that are measured at fair value as a component of the net change in unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on investments in the consolidated statements of operations.

Expenses: All investment professionals of our investment advisor and/or its affiliates, when and to the extent engaged in providing investment advisory and management services to us, and the compensation and routine overhead expenses allocable to personnel who provide these services to us, are provided and paid for by our investment advisor and not by us. We bear all other out-of-pocket costs and expenses of our operations and transactions, including, without limitation, those relating to:

- organization;
- calculating our net asset value (including the cost and expenses of any independent valuation firm);
- fees and expenses incurred by our investment advisor under the Investment Advisory Agreement or payable to third parties, including agents, consultants or other advisors, in monitoring financial and legal affairs for us and in monitoring our investments and performing due diligence on our prospective portfolio companies or otherwise relating to, or associated with, evaluating and making investments, including “dead deal” costs;
- interest payable on debt, if any, incurred to finance our investments;
- offerings of our common stock and other securities;
- investment advisory fees and management fees;
- administration fees and expenses, if any, payable under the Administration Agreement (including payments under the Administration Agreement between us and our investment advisor based upon our allocable portion of our investment advisor’s overhead in performing its obligations under the Administration Agreement, including rent and the allocable portion of the cost of our officers, including our chief compliance officer, our chief financial officer, and their respective staffs);
- transfer agent, dividend agent and custodial fees and expenses;
- federal and state registration fees;
- all costs of registration and listing our shares on any securities exchange;
- U.S. federal, state and local taxes;
- Independent Directors’ fees and expenses;
- costs of preparing and filing reports or other documents required by the SEC or other regulators including printing costs;
- costs of any reports, proxy statements or other notices to stockholders, including printing and mailing costs;
- our allocable portion of any fidelity bond, directors and officers/errors and omissions liability insurance, and any other insurance premiums;
- direct costs and expenses of administration, including printing, mailing, long distance telephone, copying, secretarial and other staff, independent auditors and outside legal costs;
- proxy voting expenses; and
- all other expenses reasonably incurred by us or our investment advisor in connection with administering our business.

Portfolio Composition, Investment Activity and Yield

During the year ended December 31, 2017, we invested $214.7 million in debt and equity investments, including 14 new portfolio companies. These investments consisted of second lien debt ($127.2 million, or 59.2%), subordinated debt ($61.7 million, or 28.8%), first lien debt ($10.9 million, or 5.1%), equity securities ($14.0 million, or 6.5%) and warrant securities ($0.9 million, or 0.4%). During the year ended December 31, 2017 we received proceeds from sales or repayments, including principal, return of capital dividends and net realized gains (losses), of $163.7 million.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, we invested $197.8 million in debt and equity investments, including 13 new portfolio companies. These investments consisted of second lien debt ($99.3 million, or 50.2%), subordinated debt ($55.0 million, or 27.8%), first lien debt ($26.6 million, or 13.4%), equity securities ($16.6 million, or 8.4%) and warrant securities ($0.3 million, or 0.2%). During the year ended December 31, 2016, we received proceeds from sales or repayments, including principal, return of capital dividends and net realized gains (losses), of $137.5 million.

As of December 31, 2017, the fair value of our investment portfolio totaled $596.3 million and consisted of 60 active portfolio companies and three portfolio companies that have sold their underlying operations. As of December 31, 2017, three debt investments bore interest at a variable rate, which represented $26.1 million of our portfolio on a fair value basis, and the remainder of our debt portfolio was comprised of fixed rate investments. Overall, the portfolio had net unrealized appreciation of $18.5 million as of December 31, 2017. As of December 31, 2017, our average active portfolio company investment at amortized cost was $9.6 million, which excludes investments in the three portfolio companies that have sold their underlying operations.

As of December 31, 2016, the fair value of our investment portfolio totaled $524.5 million and consisted of 53 active portfolio companies and four portfolio companies that have sold their underlying operations. As of December 31, 2016, one debt investment bore interest at a variable rate, which represented $8.2 million of our portfolio on a fair value basis, and the remainder of our debt portfolio was comprised of fixed rate investments. Overall, the portfolio had net unrealized appreciation of $23.9 million as of December 31, 2016. As of December 31, 2016, our average active portfolio company investment at amortized cost was $9.4 million, which excludes investments in the four portfolio companies that have sold their underlying operations.

The weighted average yield on debt investments as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 was 13.0% and 13.1%, respectively. The weighted average yield of our debt investments is not the same as a return on investment for our stockholders but, rather, relates to a portion of our investment portfolio and is calculated before the payment of all of our and our subsidiaries' fees and expenses. The weighted average yields were computed using the effective interest rates for debt investments at cost as of both December 31, 2017 and 2016, including the accretion of OID and loan origination fees, but excluding investments on non-accrual status, if any. The following table shows the portfolio composition by investment type at fair value and cost and as a percentage of total investments (dollars in millions):

	Fair Value				Cost			
	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016		December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016	
Second Lien Debt	$341.3	57.3%	$273.0	52.1%	$357.6	62.0%	$276.0	55.2%
Subordinated Debt	126.5	21.2	114.4	21.8	126.5	21.9	114.0	22.8
First Lien Debt	28.8	4.8	56.0	10.7	31.9	5.5	57.9	11.6
Equity	84.6	14.2	70.9	13.5	53.9	9.3	45.2	9.0
Warrants	15.1	2.5	10.2	1.9	7.7	1.3	7.2	1.4
Royalty rights	—	—	—	—	0.2	—	0.2	—
Total	$596.3	100.0%	$524.5	100.0%	$577.8	100.0%	$500.5	100.0%

The following table shows portfolio composition by geographic region at fair value and cost and as a percentage of total investments (dollars in millions). The geographic composition is determined by the location of the corporate headquarters of the portfolio company, which may not be indicative of the primary source of the portfolio company's business.

	Fair Value				Cost			
	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016		December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016	
Midwest	$168.0	28.2%	$166.4	31.6%	$161.8	28.1%	$153.5	30.7%
Southeast	130.2	21.8	122.6	23.4	130.7	22.6	130.1	26.0
Northeast	107.8	18.1	98.5	18.8	105.3	18.2	94.5	18.9
West	63.4	10.6	73.7	14.1	54.0	9.3	63.7	12.7
Southwest	126.9	21.3	63.3	12.1	126.0	21.8	58.7	11.7
Total	$596.3	100.0%	$524.5	100.0%	$577.8	100.0%	$500.5	100.0%

The following table shows the detailed industry composition of our portfolio at fair value and cost as a percentage of total investments:

	Fair Value		Cost	
	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Healthcare Services	10.8%	8.0%	9.9%	8.5%
Information Technology Services	10.7	4.5	11.0	4.8
Healthcare Products	7.3	11.1	7.1	9.3
Transportation Services	7.1	8.9	7.3	8.4
Component Manufacturing	6.6	3.5	7.0	3.7
Business Services	6.5	7.1	7.3	7.9
Specialty Distribution	6.2	5.0	6.2	5.0
Vending Equipment Manufacturing	5.7	3.7	5.9	3.9
Building Products Manufacturing	5.1	5.7	5.4	5.6
Oil & Gas Services	4.7	2.8	2.7	2.9
Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing	4.4	11.7	4.3	11.1
Industrial Cleaning & Coatings	4.3	2.4	4.6	2.7
Capital Equipment Manufacturing	3.4	2.9	3.4	3.0
Consumer Products	3.3	2.6	2.7	2.2
Promotional Products	3.0	2.4	2.9	2.4
Retail	2.8	1.7	2.9	1.5
Utility Equipment Manufacturing	2.6	3.5	2.8	3.7
Utilities: Services	1.6	—	1.7	—
Oil & Gas Distribution	1.0	1.1	1.0	1.2
Apparel Distribution	0.9	1.1	1.0	1.2
Laundry Services	0.7	1.4	0.7	1.3
Electronic Components Supplier	0.6	0.4	0.2	0.3
Restaurants	0.4	1.5	1.7	1.9
Specialty Chemicals	0.2	1.6	0.2	1.8
Packaging	0.1	3.3	0.1	3.5
Printing Services	—	2.1	—	2.2
Safety Products Manufacturing	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Total	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%

Portfolio Asset Quality

In addition to various risk management and monitoring tools, our investment advisor uses an internally developed investment rating system to characterize and monitor the credit profile and our expected level of returns on each investment in our portfolio. We use a five-level numeric rating scale. The following is a description of the conditions associated with each investment rating:

- Investment Rating 1 is used for investments that involve the least amount of risk in our portfolio. The portfolio company is performing above expectations, the debt investment is expected to be paid in the near term and the trends and risk factors are favorable, and may include an expected capital gain.
- Investment Rating 2 is used for investments that involve a level of risk similar to the risk at the time of origination. The portfolio company is performing substantially within our expectations and the risk factors are neutral or favorable. Each new portfolio investment enters our portfolio with Investment Rating 2.
- Investment Rating 3 is used for investments performing below expectations and indicates the investment's risk has increased somewhat since origination. The portfolio company requires closer monitoring, but we expect a full return of principal and collection of all interest and/or dividends.
- Investment Rating 4 is used for investments performing materially below expectations and the risk has increased materially since origination. The portfolio company has the potential for some loss of investment return, but we expect no loss of principal.
- Investment Rating 5 is used for investments performing substantially below our expectations and the risks have increased substantially since origination. We expect some loss of principal.

The following table shows the distribution of our investments on the 1 to 5 investment rating scale at fair value and cost as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 (dollars in millions):

	Fair Value				Cost			
Investment Rating	**December 31, 2017**		**December 31, 2016**		**December 31, 2017**		**December 31, 2016**	
1	$125.7	21.1%	$ 91.7	17.5%	$ 83.2	14.4%	$ 59.0	11.8%
2	398.4	66.8	371.5	70.9	393.6	68.1	366.7	73.3
3	51.8	8.7	38.9	7.4	60.7	10.5	44.5	8.9
4	18.3	3.1	22.1	4.2	28.3	4.9	28.2	5.6
5	2.1	0.3	0.3	—	12.0	2.1	2.1	0.4
Total	$596.3	100.0%	$524.5	100.0%	$577.8	100.0%	$500.5	100.0%

Based on our investment rating system, the weighted average rating of our portfolio as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 was 1.9 and 2.0, respectively, on a fair value basis and 2.1 and 2.1, respectively, on a cost basis.

Non-Accrual

As of December 31, 2017, we had investments in two portfolio companies on non-accrual status, which had an aggregate cost and fair value of $18.7 million and $7.1 million, respectively. As of December 31, 2016, we had no investments on non-accrual status.

Discussion and Analysis of Results of Operations

Comparison of fiscal years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015

Investment Income

Total investment income was $68.6 million, $60.2 million, and $54.3 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively.

Total investment income increased by $8.4 million, or 14.0%, during fiscal 2017 as compared to fiscal 2016. The increase was attributable to a $9.4 million increase in interest income resulting from higher average debt investment balances outstanding during 2017 as compared to 2016, $0.8 million increase in fee income resulting from a higher level of investment activity and amendments during 2017 as compared to 2016, partially offset by a $(1.8) million decrease in dividend income due to decreased levels of distributions received from equity investments during 2017 as compared to 2016.

Total investment income increased by $5.9 million, or 10.9%, during fiscal 2016 as compared to fiscal 2015. The increase was attributable to a $2.1 million increase in interest income resulting from higher average debt investment balances outstanding during 2016 as compared to 2015, $1.0 million increase in fee income resulting from a higher level of investment activity during 2016 as compared to 2015, and a $2.7 million increase in dividend income due to increased levels of distributions received from equity investments during 2016 as compared to 2015.

Expenses

Total expenses, including income tax provision, were $34.9 million, $33.6 million, and $27.8 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively.

Total expenses, including income tax provision, increased by $1.3 million, or 3.9%, during fiscal 2017 as compared to fiscal 2016. Interest and financing expenses for the year ended December 31, 2017 were $9.9 million, a decrease of $(0.7) million or 6.6%, compared to $10.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 as a result of lower average balances of debt outstanding and lower weighted average interest rates during 2017 as compared to 2016. The base management fee increased $1.5 million, or 18.1%, to $9.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 due to higher average total assets during 2017 as compared to 2016. The incentive fee for the year ended December 31, 2017 was $11.0 million, a $0.6 million, or 5.8%, increase from the $10.4 million incentive fee for the year ended December 31, 2016, which was the result of an increase in the income incentive fee of $1.5 million, partially offset by a decrease in the accrual of the capital gains incentive fee of $(0.9) million during 2017 as compared to 2016. The administrative service fee, professional fees and other general and administrative expenses totaled $4.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2017, an increase of $0.1 million, or 2.6% as compared to 2016, attributable to an increase in professional fees.

Total expenses, including income tax provision, increased by $5.8 million, or 20.9%, during fiscal 2016 as compared to fiscal 2015. Interest and financing expenses for the year ended December 31, 2016 were $10.6 million, an increase of $1.2 million or 12.8%, compared to $9.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2015 as a result of higher average balances of debt outstanding during 2016 as compared to 2015. The base management fee increased $0.8 million, or 10.7%, to $8.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 due to higher average total assets during 2016 as compared to 2015. The incentive fee for the year ended December 31, 2016 was $10.4 million, a $3.9 million, or 60.0%, increase from the $6.5 million incentive fee for the year ended December 31, 2015, which was primarily the result of accruing $3.0 million of capital gains incentive fee during 2016, as compared to reversal of $(0.1) million of capital gains incentive fee during 2015. The administrative service fee, professional fees and other general and administrative expenses totaled $3.9 million for both the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015.

Net Investment Income

Net investment income was $33.7 million, $26.6 million, and $26.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively.

Net investment income increased by $7.1 million, or 26.7%, during fiscal 2017 as compared to fiscal 2016, as a result of the $8.4 million increase in total investment income compared to only a $1.3 million increase in total expenses, including income tax provision.

Net investment income increased by $0.1 million, or 0.4%, during fiscal 2016 as compared to fiscal 2015, as a result of the $5.9 million increase in total investment income compared to only a $5.8 million increase in total expenses, including income tax provision.

Net Gain (Loss) on Investments

For the year ended December 31, 2017, the total net realized gain on investments was $18.0 million, excluding income tax provision from realized gains on investments. Significant realized gains and (losses) for the year ended December 31, 2017 are summarized below:

Portfolio Company	Realization Event	Net Realized Gains (Losses) (in millions)
Malabar International	Exit of portfolio company	$ 6.8
Worldwide Express Operations, LLC	Sale of portfolio company	6.4
Lightning Diversion Systems, LLC	Exit of portfolio company	4.1
EBL, LLC (EbLens)	Sale of portfolio company	2.2
Brook & Whittle Limited	Exit of portfolio company	1.0
Anatrace Products, LLC	Sale of portfolio company	0.9
Other		0.2
Carlson Systems Holdings, Inc.	Escrow distribution	0.1
FTH Acquisition Corp. VII	Exit of portfolio company	(1.3)
FDS Avionics Corp. (dba Flight Display Systems)	Restructuring	(2.4)
Total		$ 18.0

For the year ended December 31, 2016, the total net realized (loss) on investments was $(13.8) million, excluding income tax provision from realized gains on investments. Significant realized gains and (losses) for the year ended December 31, 2016 are summarized below:

Portfolio Company	Realization Event	Net Realized Gains (Losses) (in millions)
Carlson Systems Holdings, Inc.	Distribution related to sale of operations	$ 4.1
Lightning Diversion Systems, LLC	Distribution	1.1
Premium Franchise Brands, LLC	Exit of portfolio company	1.1
National Truck Protection Co., Inc.	Exit of portfolio company	1.0
Safety Products Group, LLC	Distribution related to sale of operations	0.5
Westminster Cracker Company, Inc.	Distribution related to sale of operations	0.2
Connect-Air International, Inc.	Escrow distribution	0.2
Continental Anesthesia Management, LLC	Exit of portfolio company	(0.3)
Channel Technologies Group, LLC	Exit of portfolio company	(0.9)
Pinnergy, Ltd.	Restructuring	(8.9)
Paramount Building Solutions, LLC	Exit of portfolio company	(12.0)
Other		0.1
Total		$ (13.8)

For the year ended December 31, 2015, the total net realized gain on investments was $9.5 million. Significant realized gains (losses) for the year ended December 31, 2015 are summarized below:

Portfolio Company	Realization Event	Net Realized Gains (Losses) (in millions)
Connect-Air International, Inc.	Exit of portfolio company	$ 5.5
ACFP Acquisition Company, Inc.	Distribution related to sale of operations	2.3
Westminster Cracker Company, Inc.	Distribution related to sale of operations	1.5
Acentia, LLC	Exit of portfolio company	<(0.1)
Other		0.2
Total		$ 9.5

During the year ended December 31, 2017, we recorded a net change in unrealized depreciation on investments of $(5.5) million attributable to (i) the reversal of net unrealized appreciation of $(14.4) million related to the exit, sale or restructuring of investments, resulting in unrealized depreciation, (ii) net unrealized depreciation of $(14.2) million on debt investments and (iii) net unrealized appreciation of $23.1 million on equity investments.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, we recorded a net change in unrealized appreciation on investments of $29.0 million attributable to (i) the reversal of net unrealized depreciation of $21.5 million related to the exit, sale or restructuring of investments, resulting in unrealized appreciation, (ii) net unrealized depreciation of $(10.3) million on debt investments and (iii) net unrealized appreciation of $17.8 million on equity investments.

During the year ended December 31, 2015, we recorded a net change in unrealized depreciation on investments of $(10.1) million attributable to (i) the reversal of net unrealized appreciation on investments of $(4.7) million related to the exit or sale of investments, resulting in unrealized depreciation, (ii) net unrealized depreciation of $(9.3) million on debt investments and (iii) net unrealized appreciation of $3.9 million on equity investments.

During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, we recorded $2.2 million and $0.2 million of income tax provision for realized gains on investments, respectively. During the year ended December 31, 2015, no income tax provision for realized gains on investments was recorded.

Net Increase in Net Assets Resulting From Operations

Net increase in net assets resulting from operations was $44.0 million, $41.6 million, and $26.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively, as a result of the events described above.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

As of December 31, 2017, we had $41.6 million in cash and cash equivalents and our net assets totaled $393.3 million. We believe that our current cash and cash equivalents on hand, our availability of SBA-guaranteed debentures, our Credit Facility and our anticipated cash flows from operations will provide adequate capital resources with which to operate and finance our investment business and make distributions to our stockholders for at least the next 12 months. We intend to generate additional cash primarily from the future offerings of securities (including the ATM Program) and future borrowings, as well as cash flows from operations, including income earned from investments in our portfolio companies. On both a short-term and long-term basis, our primary use of funds will be investments in portfolio companies and cash distributions to our stockholders. During the year ended December 31, 2017, we repaid $41.7 million of SBA debentures which would have matured during the period March 1, 2018 through March 1, 2019. Our remaining outstanding SBA debentures continue to mature in 2019 and subsequent years through 2028, which will require repayment on or before the respective maturity dates.

Cash Flows

For the year ended December 31, 2017, we experienced a net decrease in cash and cash equivalents of $15.5 million. During that period, we used $28.2 million of cash for operating activities, which included $214.7 million used for purchases of investments, which is partially offset by proceeds of $163.7 million from sales and repayments of investments. During the same period, we received net proceeds from secondary offerings of shares of our common stock off of our effective shelf registration statement of $32.3 million, proceeds from the issuances of SBA debentures of $49.0 million, and proceeds from net borrowings under the Credit Facility of $11.5 million, which were partially offset by repayment of SBA debentures of $41.7 million, cash dividends paid to stockholders of $36.8 million and the payment of deferred financing costs of $1.6 million.

For the year ended December 31, 2016, we experienced a net increase in cash and cash equivalents of $25.4 million. During that period, we used $33.6 million of cash for operating activities, which included $197.8 million used for purchases of investments, which is partially offset by proceeds of $137.5 million from sales and repayments of investments. During the same period, we received net proceeds from secondary offerings of shares of our common stock off of our effective shelf registration statement of $94.7 million and proceeds from the issuances of SBA debenture of $10.5 million, which were partially offset by net repayment of borrowings under the Credit Facility of $15.5 million, cash dividends paid to stockholders of $29.9 million and the payment of deferred financing costs of $0.8 million.

For the year ended December 31, 2015, we experienced a net increase in cash and cash equivalents in the amount of $2.3 million. During that period, we used $19.5 million of cash for operating activities, primarily for the funding of $136.4 million of investments, which was partially offset by the proceeds from sales and repayments of investments of $94.7 million. During the same period, we received $21.8 million for financing activities resulting from proceeds received from stock offerings, net of expenses, of $3.2 million, proceeds from the issuance of SBA debentures of $40.0 million and net borrowings under the Credit Facility of $5.5 million, which were partially offset by cash dividends paid to stockholders of $25.0 million and the payment of deferred financing costs of $1.8 million.

Capital Resources

We anticipate that we will continue to fund our investment activities on a long-term basis through a combination of additional debt and equity capital.

The Funds are licensed SBICs, and have the ability to issue debentures guaranteed by the SBA at favorable interest rates. Under the Small Business Investment Act and the SBA rules applicable to SBICs, an SBIC can have outstanding at any time debentures guaranteed by the SBA in an amount up to twice its regulatory capital. The SBA regulations currently limit the amount that is available to be borrowed by any SBIC and guaranteed by the SBA to 300.0% of an SBIC's regulatory capital or $150.0 million, whichever is less. For three or more SBICs under common control, the maximum amount of outstanding SBA debentures cannot exceed $350.0 million. SBA debentures have fixed interest rates that approximate prevailing 10-year Treasury Note rates plus a spread and have a maturity of ten years with interest payable semi-annually. The principal amount of the SBA debentures is not required to be paid before maturity but may be pre-paid at any time. As of December 31, 2017, Fund I had $108.3 million of outstanding SBA debentures and cannot issue additional SBA debentures. As of December 31, 2017, Fund II had $123.0 million of outstanding SBA debentures. Fund II has the current capacity to issue up to an additional $27.0 million of SBA debentures. Subject to SBA regulatory requirements and approval, we may access up to $91.7 million of additional SBA debentures under the SBIC Debenture Program. For more information on the SBA debentures, please see Note 6 to our consolidated financial statements.

In June 2014, we entered into the Credit Facility to provide additional funding for our investment and operational activities. On December 29, 2017, we entered into an amendment to the Credit Facility to, among other things, extend the maturity date from June 16, 2018 to June 16, 2019. The Credit Facility has a commitment of $50.0 million and an accordion feature that allows for an increase in the total commitments up to $75.0 million, subject to certain customary conditions. The Credit Facility is secured by substantially all of our assets, excluding the assets of the Funds.

Amounts available to borrow under the Credit Facility are subject to a minimum borrowing/collateral base that applies an advance rate to certain portfolio investments. We are subject to limitations with respect to the investments securing the Credit Facility, including, but not limited to, restrictions on sector concentrations, loan size, transferability, payment frequency and status and collateral interests, as well as restrictions on portfolio company leverage, which may also affect the borrowing base and therefore amounts available to borrow.

Borrowings under the Credit Facility bear interest, subject to our election, on a per annum basis equal to (i) the alternate base rate plus 2.5% or (ii) the applicable LIBOR, which varies depending on the period of the borrowing under the Credit Facility, plus 3.5%. The alternate base rate is equal to the greater of (i) prime rate, (ii) the federal funds rate plus 0.5% or (iii) the three-month LIBOR plus 1.0%. We pay a commitment fee ranging from 0.5% to 1.0% per annum based on the size of the unused portion of the Credit Facility.

We have made customary representations and warranties and are required to comply with various covenants, reporting requirements and other customary requirements for similar credit facilities. These covenants are subject to important limitations and exceptions that are described in the documents governing the Credit Facility. As of December 31, 2017, we had $11.5 million of outstanding borrowings under the Credit Facility and we were in compliance with all covenants of the Credit Facility.

As of December 31, 2017, the weighted average interest rate for all SBA debentures and borrowings outstanding under the Credit Facility was 3.6%.

As a BDC, we are generally required to meet a coverage ratio of total assets to total senior securities, which include borrowings and any preferred stock we may issue in the future, of at least 200.0%. This requirement limits the amount that we may borrow. We have received exemptive relief from the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"), to allow us to exclude any indebtedness guaranteed by the SBA and issued by the Funds from the 200.0% asset coverage requirements, which, in turn, will enable us to fund more investments with debt capital.

As a BDC, we are generally not permitted to issue and sell our common stock at a price below net asset value per share. We may, however, sell our common stock, or warrants, options or rights to acquire our common stock, at a price below the then-current net asset value per share of our common stock if our board of directors, including Independent Directors, determines that such sale is in the best interests of us and our stockholders, and if our stockholders approve such sale. On June 15, 2017, our stockholders voted to allow us to sell or otherwise issue common stock at a price below net asset value per share for a period of one year ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. We expect to present to our stockholders a similar proposal at our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. Our stockholders specified that the cumulative number of shares sold in each offering during the one-year period ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders may not exceed 25.0% of our outstanding common stock immediately prior to each such sale.

Stock repurchase plan

We have an open market stock repurchase program (the "Program") under which we may acquire up to $5.0 million of our outstanding common stock. Under the Program, we may, but are not obligated to, repurchase outstanding common stock in the open market from time to time provided that we comply with the prohibitions under our insider trading policies and the requirements of Rule 10b-18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, including certain price, market value and timing constraints. The timing, manner, price and amount of any share repurchases will be determined by our management, in its discretion, based upon the evaluation of economic and market conditions, stock price, capital availability, applicable legal and regulatory requirements and other corporate considerations. On October 30, 2017, the Board extended the Program through December 31, 2018, or until the approved dollar amount has been used to repurchase shares. The Program does not require us to repurchase any specific number of shares and the Company cannot assure that any shares will be repurchased under the Program. The Program may be suspended, extended, modified or discontinued at any time. We did not make any repurchases of common stock during the years ended December 31, 2017 or 2016.

Critical Accounting Policies and Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP requires management to make certain estimates and assumptions affecting amounts reported in the financial statements. We have identified investment valuation and revenue recognition as our most critical accounting estimates. We continuously evaluate our estimates, including those related to the matters described below. These estimates are based on the information that is currently available to us and on various other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ materially from those estimates under different assumptions or conditions. A discussion of our critical accounting policies follows.

Valuation of Portfolio Investments

As a BDC, we report our assets and liabilities at fair value at all times consistent with GAAP and the 1940 Act. Accordingly, we are required to periodically determine the fair value of all of our portfolio investments.

Our investments generally consist of illiquid securities including debt and equity investments in lower middle-market companies. Investments for which market quotations are readily available are valued at such market quotations. Because we expect that there will not be a readily available market for substantially all of the investments in our portfolio, we value substantially all of our portfolio investments at fair value as determined in good faith by our board of directors using a documented valuation policy and consistently applied valuation process. Due to the inherent uncertainty of determining the fair value of investments that do not have a readily available market value, the fair value of our investments may differ significantly from the values that would have been used had a readily available market value existed for such investments, and the difference could be material.

With respect to investments for which market quotations are not readily available, our board of directors undertakes a multi-step valuation process each quarter, as described below:

- our quarterly valuation process begins with each portfolio company or investment being initially evaluated and rated by the investment professionals of our investment advisor responsible for the portfolio investment;
- preliminary valuation conclusions are then documented and discussed with the investment committee of our investment advisor;
- our board of directors engages one or more independent valuation firm(s) to conduct independent appraisals of a selection of our portfolio investments for which market quotations are not readily available. Each portfolio company investment is generally appraised by the valuation firm(s) at least once every calendar year and each new portfolio company investment is appraised at least once in the twelve-month period following the initial investment. In certain instances, we may determine that it is not cost-effective, and as a result it is not in our stockholders' best interest, to request the independent appraisal of certain portfolio company investments. Such instances include, but are not limited to, situations where we determine that the fair value of the portfolio company investment is relatively insignificant to the fair value of the total portfolio. Our board of directors consulted with the independent valuation firm(s) in arriving at our determination of fair value for 18 and 13 of our portfolio company investments representing 32.0% and 30.5% of the total portfolio investments at fair value (exclusive of new portfolio company investments made during the three months ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively) as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively;
- the audit committee of our board of directors reviews the preliminary valuations of our investment advisor and of the independent valuation firm(s) and responds and supplements the valuation recommendations to reflect any comments; and
- our board of directors discusses the valuations and determines the fair value of each investment in our portfolio in good faith, based on the input of our investment advisor, the independent valuation firm(s) and the audit committee.

In making the good faith determination of the value of portfolio investments, we start with the cost basis of the security. The transaction price is typically the best estimate of fair value at inception. When evidence supports a subsequent change to the carrying value from the original transaction price, adjustments are made to reflect the expected exit values.

Consistent with the policies and methodologies adopted by our board of directors, we perform detailed valuations of our debt and equity investments, including an analysis of the Company's unfunded loan commitments, using both the market and income approaches as appropriate. Under the market approach, we typically use the enterprise value methodology to determine the fair value of an investment. There is no one methodology to estimate enterprise value and, in fact, for any one portfolio company, enterprise value is generally best expressed as a range of values, from which we derive a single estimate of enterprise value. Under the income approach, we typically prepare and analyze discounted cash flow models to estimate the present value of future cash flows of either an individual debt investment or of the underlying portfolio company itself.

We evaluate investments in portfolio companies using the most recent portfolio company financial statements and forecasts. We also consult with the portfolio company's senior management to obtain further updates on the portfolio company's performance, including information such as industry trends, new product development and other operational issues.

For our debt investments the primary valuation technique used to estimate the fair value is the discounted cash flow method. However, if there is deterioration in credit quality or a debt investment is in workout status, we may consider other methods in determining the fair value, including the value attributable to the debt investment from the enterprise value of the portfolio company or the proceeds that would be received in a liquidation analysis. Our discounted cash flow models estimate a range of fair values by applying an appropriate discount rate to the future cash flow streams of our debt investments, based on future interest and principal payments as set forth in the associated loan agreements. We prepare a weighted average cost of capital for use in the discounted cash flow model for each investment, based on factors including, but not limited to: current pricing and credit metrics for similar proposed or executed investment transactions of private companies; the portfolio company's historical financial results and outlook; and the portfolio company's current leverage and credit quality as compared to leverage and credit quality as of the date the investment was made. We may also consider the following factors when determining the fair value of debt investments: the portfolio company's ability to make future scheduled payments; prepayment penalties and other fees; estimated remaining life; the nature and realizable value of any collateral securing such debt investment; and changes in the interest rate environment and the credit markets that generally may affect the price at which similar investments may be made. We estimate the remaining life of our debt investments to generally be the legal maturity date of the instrument, as we generally intend to hold loans to maturity. However, if we have information available to us that the loan is expected to be repaid in the near term, we would use an estimated remaining life based on the expected repayment date.

For our equity investments, including equity securities and warrants, we generally use a market approach, including valuation methodologies consistent with industry practice, to estimate the enterprise value of portfolio companies. Typically, the enterprise value of a private company is based on multiples of EBITDA, net income, revenues, or in limited cases, book value. In estimating the enterprise value of a portfolio company, we analyze various factors consistent with industry practice, including but not limited to original transaction multiples, the portfolio company's historical and projected financial results, applicable market trading and transaction comparables, applicable market yields and leverage levels, the nature and realizable value of any collateral, the markets in which the portfolio company does business, and comparisons of financial ratios of peer companies that are public. Where applicable, we consider our ability to influence the capital structure of the portfolio company, as well as the timing of a potential exit.

We may also utilize an income approach when estimating the fair value of our equity securities, either as a primary methodology if consistent with industry practice or if the market approach is otherwise not applicable, or as a supporting methodology to corroborate the fair value ranges determined by the market approach. We typically prepare and analyze discounted cash flow models based on projections of the future free cash flows (or earnings) of the portfolio company. We consider various factors, including but not limited to the portfolio company's projected financial results, applicable market trading and transaction comparables, applicable market yields and leverage levels, the markets in which the portfolio company does business, and comparisons of financial ratios of peer companies that are public.

The fair value of our royalty rights are calculated based on projected future cash flows and the specific provisions contained in the pertinent royalty agreement. The determination of the fair value of such royalty rights is not a significant component of our valuation process.

Determination of fair value involves subjective judgments and estimates. Accordingly, the notes to our consolidated financial statements express the uncertainties with respect to the possible effect of such valuations, and any changes in such valuations, on the consolidated financial statements.

Revenue Recognition

Investments and related investment income. Realized gains or losses on investments are recorded upon the sale or disposition of a portfolio investment and are calculated as the difference between the net proceeds from the sale or disposition and the cost basis of the investment, without regard to unrealized appreciation or depreciation previously recognized. Net change in unrealized appreciation or depreciation on the consolidated statements of operations includes changes in the fair value of investments from the prior period, as determined by our board of directors through the application of our valuation policy, as well as reclassifications of any prior period unrealized appreciation or depreciation on exited investments to realized gains or losses on investments.

Interest and dividend income. Interest and dividend income is recorded on the accrual basis to the extent that we expect to collect such amounts. Interest is accrued daily based on the outstanding principal amount and the contractual terms of the debt. Dividend income is recorded as dividends are declared or at the point an obligation exists for the portfolio company to make a distribution, and is generally recognized when received. Distributions from portfolio companies are evaluated to determine if the distribution is a distribution of earnings or a return of capital. Distributions of earnings are included in dividend income while a return of capital is recorded as a reduction in the cost basis of the investment. Estimates are adjusted as necessary when the relevant tax forms are received from the portfolio company.

Payment-in-kind income. Certain of our investments contain a PIK income provision. The PIK income, computed at the contractual rate specified in the applicable investment agreement, is added to the principal balance of the investment, rather than being paid in cash, and recorded as interest or dividend income, as applicable, on the consolidated statements of operations. Generally, PIK can be paid-in-kind or all in cash. We stop accruing PIK income when there is reasonable doubt that PIK income will be collected. PIK income is included in our taxable income and, therefore, affects the amount we are required to pay to our stockholders in the form of dividends in order to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC and to avoid paying corporate federal income tax, even though we have not yet collected the cash.

Non-accrual. When there is reasonable doubt that principal, interest or dividends will be collected, loans or preferred equity investments are placed on non-accrual status and we will generally cease recognizing interest or dividend income. Interest and dividend payments received on non-accrual investments may be recognized as interest or dividend income or applied to the investment principal balance based on management's judgment. Non-accrual investments are restored to accrual status when past due principal, interest or dividends are paid and, in management's judgment, are likely to remain current.

Warrants. In connection with our debt investments, we will sometimes receive warrants or other equity-related securities (Warrants). We determine the cost basis of Warrants based upon their respective fair values on the date of receipt in proportion to the total fair value of the debt and Warrants received. Any resulting difference between the face amount of the debt and its recorded fair value resulting from the assignment of value to the Warrants is treated as original issue discount, or OID, and accreted into interest income using the effective interest method over the term of the debt investment.

Fee income. All transaction fees earned in connection with our investments are recognized as fee income. Such fees typically include fees for services, including structuring and advisory services, provided to portfolio companies. We recognize income from fees for providing such structuring and advisory services when the services are rendered or the transactions are completed. Upon the prepayment of a loan or debt security, any prepayment penalties are recorded as fee income when earned.

We also typically receive loan origination or closing fees in connection with investments. Such loan origination and closing fees are capitalized as unearned income and offset against investment cost basis on our consolidated statements of assets and liabilities and accreted into interest income over the term of the investment.

Recently Issued Accounting Standards

In May 2014, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)*, which supersedes the revenue recognition requirements in *Revenue Recognition (Topic 605)*. Under the new guidance, an entity should recognize revenue to depict the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. The guidance is effective for annual and interim reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017. We completed our evaluation of the impact of this ASU and concluded that the majority of our income streams are specifically excluded from the scope of the ASU as they relate to financial instruments that are within the scope of other topics, and in general the impact of the ASU is not material to our consolidated financial position or disclosures.

In October 2016, the SEC adopted new rules and amended rules to Regulation S-X (collectively, the "Reporting Rules") intended to modernize the reporting and disclosures of information by BDCs. The adopted amendments to Regulation S-X include an update to the disclosures for investments in and advances to affiliates, presentation changes to the statement of operations and schedule of investments, and the requirement to include a standardized schedule containing detailed information about derivative investments (among other changes). The amendments to Regulation S-X are effective for reporting periods ending after August 1, 2017. We adopted the Reporting Rules effective August 1, 2017. The amendments do not have a material effect on our consolidated financial position or disclosures.

In December 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-19, *Technical Corrections and Improvements*, which includes minor corrections and clarifications that affect a wide variety of topics in the Accounting Standards Codification, including an amendment to Topic 820, *Fair Value Measurement*, which clarifies the difference between a valuation approach and a valuation technique when applying the guidance of that Topic. The amendment also requires an entity to disclose when there has been a change in either or both a valuation approach and/or a valuation technique. The transition guidance for the Topic 820 amendment must be applied prospectively because it could potentially involve the use of hindsight that includes fair value measurements. The guidance is effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those fiscal years, for all entities beginning after December 15, 2016. We adopted this ASU effective January 1, 2017, and the amendments do not have a material effect on our consolidated financial position or disclosures.

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

We may be a party to financial instruments with off-balance sheet risk in the normal course of business to meet the financial needs of our portfolio companies. We had off-balance sheet arrangements consisting of outstanding commitments to fund various undrawn revolving loans and other credit facilities totaling $8.4 million and $6.6 million as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Such outstanding commitments are summarized in the following table (dollars in millions):

	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016	
Portfolio Company - Investment	Total Commitment	Unfunded Commitment	Total Commitment	Unfunded Commitment
FAR Research Inc. - Revolving Loan	$ —	$ —	$ 1.8	$ 1.6
Inflexxion, Inc. - Revolving Loan	0.2	—	0.5	0.4
inthinc Technology Solutions, Inc. - Second Lien Debt	—	—	5.0	1.0
Lightning Diversion Systems, LLC - Revolving Loan	—	—	0.2	0.2
Mesa Line Services, LLC - Delayed Draw Commitment	4.0	4.0	—	—
Oaktree Medical Centre, P.C. - Revolving Loan	2.5	—	2.5	—
Rhino Assembly Company, LLC - Delayed Draw Commitment	1.5	1.5	—	—
Safety Products Group, LLC - Common Equity	2.9	2.9	2.9	2.9
SES Investors, LLC (dba SES Foam) - Revolving Loan	—	—	1.5	0.5
Total	$ 11.1	$ 8.4	$ 14.4	$ 6.6

Additional detail for each of the commitments above is provided in our consolidated schedules of investments.

Contractual Obligations

As of December 31, 2017 our future fixed commitments for cash payments are as follows:

	Total	Less Than 1 Year	1 – 3 Years	3 – 5 Years	More than 5 Years
	(Dollars in millions)				
SBA debentures	$231.3	$ —	$50.2	$49.6	$ 131.5
Interest due on SBA debentures	50.6	8.2	14.8	11.1	16.5
Credit Facility borrowings	11.5	—	11.5	—	—
Interest and fees due on Credit Facility(1)	1.5	1.0	0.5	—	—
Total	$294.9	$ 9.2	$77.0	$60.7	$ 148.0

(1) Amounts represent (i) commitment fees on the unused portion of the Credit Facility calculated at a rate of 1.0% of the unused amount as of December 31, 2017, which was $38.5 million, (ii) interest expense calculated at a weighted average interest rate of 5.1% of outstanding borrowings under the Credit Facility as of December 31, 2017, which were $11.5 million, and (iii) an annual agency fees due to the Credit Facility administrative agent. The stated maturity date of the Credit Facility is June 16, 2019, which may be extended by mutual agreement.

We have certain contracts under which we have material future commitments. We entered into the Investment Advisory Agreement with our investment advisor in accordance with the 1940 Act. Under the Investment Advisory Agreement, our investment advisor provides us with investment advisory and management services. We pay the following amounts for these services (a) a management fee equal to a percentage of the average of our total assets (excluding cash and cash equivalents) and (b) an incentive fee based on our performance. See "Business — Management and Other Agreements — Investment Advisory Agreement — Management Fee."

Under the Administration Agreement, our investment advisor furnishes us with office facilities and equipment, provides us clerical, bookkeeping and record keeping services at such facilities and provides us with other administrative services necessary to conduct our day-to-day operations. See "Business — Management and Other Agreements — Administration Agreement."

If any of our contractual obligations discussed above are terminated, our costs under any new agreements that we enter into may increase. In addition, we would likely incur significant time and expense in locating alternative parties to provide the services we expect to receive under our Investment Advisory Agreement and our Administration Agreement. Any new investment advisory agreement would also be subject to approval by our Independent Directors and our stockholders.

Related Party Transactions

We have entered into a number of business relationships with affiliated or related parties, including the following:

- We have entered into the Investment Advisory Agreement with Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC, as our investment advisor. Pursuant to the agreement our investment advisor manages our day-to-day operating and investing activities. We pay our investment advisor a fee for its services under the Investment Advisory Agreement consisting of two components — a base management fee and an incentive fee. See Note 5 to our consolidated financial statements.
- Edward H. Ross, our Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, and Thomas C. Lauer, our President, are managers of Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC. In May 2015, Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC entered into a combination with Fidus Partners, LLC (the "Combination"), by which members of Fidus Investment Advisors LLC and Fidus Partners, LLC ("Partners") contributed all of their respective membership interest in Fidus Investment Advisors LLC and Partners to a newly formed limited liability company, Fidus Group Holdings, LLC ("Holdings"). As a result, Fidus Investment Advisors LLC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Holdings, which is a limited liability company organized under the laws of Delaware.
- We entered into the Administration Agreement with Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC to provide us with the office facilities and administrative services necessary to conduct day-to-day operations. See Note 5 to our consolidated financial statements.
- We entered into a license agreement with Fidus Partners, LLC, pursuant to which Fidus Partners, LLC has granted us a non-exclusive, royalty-free license to use the name "Fidus."

In connection with the IPO and our election to be regulated as a BDC, we applied for and received exemptive relief from the SEC on March 27, 2012 to allow us to take certain actions that would otherwise be prohibited by the 1940 Act, as applicable to BDCs. The relief permits FIC and Fund I, each of which has elected to be treated as a BDC, to operate effectively as one company, specifically allowing them to: (1) engage in certain transactions with each other; (2) invest in securities in which the other is or proposes to be an investor; (3) file consolidated reports with the Commission; and (4) be subject to modified consolidated asset coverage requirements for senior securities issued by a BDC and its SBIC subsidiary. Fund II has not elected to be treated as a BDC and is not party to this exemptive relief. The fourth exemption described above allows us to exclude any indebtedness guaranteed by the SBA and issued by Fund I from the 200.0% asset coverage requirements applicable to us. Effective September 30, 2014, any SBA debentures issued by Fund II are not considered senior securities for purposes of the 200.0% asset coverage requirements.

While we may co-invest with investment entities managed by our investment advisor or its affiliates, to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, the 1940 Act imposes significant limits on co-investment. The SEC staff has granted us relief sought in an exemptive application that expands our ability to co-invest in portfolio companies with other funds managed by our investment advisor or its affiliates ("Affiliated Funds") in a manner consistent with our investment objective, positions, policies, strategies and restrictions as well as regulatory requirements and other pertinent factors, subject to compliance with certain conditions (the “Order”). Pursuant to the Order, we are permitted to co-invest with our affiliates if a “required majority” (as defined in Section 57(o) of the 1940 Act) or our independent directors make certain conclusions in connection with a co-investment transaction, including that (1) the terms of the transactions, including the consideration to be paid, are reasonable and fair to us and our stockholders and do not involve overreaching by us or our stockholders on the part of any person concerned, and (2) the transaction is consistent with the interests of our stockholders and is consistent with our investment objective and strategies.

In addition, we, Fund I and our investment advisor have each adopted a joint code of ethics pursuant to Rule 17j-1 under the 1940 Act that governs the conduct of our and our investment advisor’s officers, directors and employees. Additionally, our investment advisor has adopted a code of ethics pursuant to rule 240A-1 under the 1940 Act and in accordance with Rule 17j-1(c). We, and Fund I, have also adopted a code of business conduct that is applicable to all officers, directors and employees of Fidus and our investment advisor. Our officers and directors also remain subject to the duties imposed by both the 1940 Act and the Maryland General Corporation Law.

Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosure about Market Risk

We are subject to financial market risks, including changes in interest rates. Changes in interest rates affect both our cost of funding and the valuation of our investment portfolio. Our risk management systems and procedures are designed to identify and analyze our risk, to set appropriate policies and limits and to continually monitor these risks and limits by means of reliable administrative and information systems and other policies and programs. In the future, our investment income may also be affected by changes in various interest rates, including LIBOR and prime rates, to the extent of any debt investments that include floating interest rates. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, three and one debt investments, respectively, bore interest at a variable rate, which represented $26.1 million and $8.2 million of our portfolio on a fair value basis, respectively, and the remainder of our debt portfolio was comprised entirely of fixed rate investments. Assuming that the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 were to remain constant, a hypothetical 100 basis point change in interest rates would not have a material effect on our level of interest income from debt investments. Our pooled SBA debentures bear interest at fixed rates. Our Credit Facility bears interest, subject to our election, on a per annum basis equal to (i) the alternate base rate plus 2.5% or (ii) the applicable LIBOR, which varies depending on the period of the borrowing under the Credit Facility, plus 3.5%. The alternate base rate is equal to the greater of (i) prime rate, (ii) the federal funds rate plus 0.5% or (iii) the three-month LIBOR plus 1.0%.

Because we currently borrow, and plan to borrow in the future, money to make investments, our net investment income is dependent upon the difference between the rate at which we borrow funds and the rate at which we invest the funds borrowed. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that a significant change in market interest rates will not have a material adverse effect on our net investment income. In periods of rising interest rates, our cost of funds would increase, which could reduce our net investment income if there is not a corresponding increase in interest income generated by our investment portfolio.

Recent Developments

On January 3, 2018, we invested $19.5 million in subordinated debt and common equity of AVC Investors, LLC (dba Auveco), a provider of fasteners and autobody hardware to the automotive aftermarket and general industrial markets.

On January 5, 2018, we exited our debt investment in United Biologics, LLC. We received payment in full of $8.9 million on our second lien debt.

On January 8, 2018, we invested $11.0 million in second lien debt and common equity of SpendMend LLC, a leading provider of spend visibility and audit recovery services to the healthcare industry.

On January 25, 2018, we exited our debt investment in Comprehensive Logistics Co., Inc. We received payment in full of $16.4 million on our subordinated debt, which includes a prepayment penalty.

On February 2, 2018, we closed the public offering of approximately $43.5 million in aggregate principal amount of our 5.875% notes due 2023, or the “Notes.” On February 22, 2018, the underwriters exercised their option to purchase an additional $6.5 million in aggregate principal of the Notes. The total net proceeds to us from the Notes, including the exercise of the underwriters’ option, after deducting underwriting discounts of approximately $1.5 million and estimated offering expenses of $0.4 million, were approximately $48.1 million.

The Notes will mature on February 1, 2023 and bear interest at a rate of 5.875%. The Notes are unsecured obligations and rank pari passu with our future unsecured indebtedness; effectively subordinated to all of our existing and future secured indebtedness; and structurally subordinated to all existing and future indebtedness and other obligations of any of our subsidiaries, financing vehicles, or similar facilities we may form in the future, with respect to claims on the assets of any such subsidiaries, financing vehicles, or similar facilities. The Notes may be redeemed in whole or in part at any time or from time to time at our option on or after February 1, 2020. Interest on the Notes is payable quarterly on February 1, May 1, August 1 and November 1 of each year. The Notes are listed on the NASDAQ Global Select Market under the trading symbol “FDUSL.” We may from time to time repurchase Notes in accordance with the 1940 Act and the rules promulgated thereunder. As of February 27, 2018, the outstanding principal balance of the Notes was approximately $50.0 million.

The indenture governing the Notes, or the “Indenture,” contains certain covenants, including covenants (i) requiring our compliance with the asset coverage requirements set forth in Section 18(a)(1)(A) as modified by Section 61(a)(1) of the 1940 Act, whether or not we continue to be subject to such provisions of the 1940 Act; (ii) requiring our compliance, under certain circumstances, with a modified version of the requirements set forth in Section 18(a)(1)(B) as modified by Section 61(a)(1) of the 1940 Act, whether or not we continue to be subject to such provisions of the 1940 Act, prohibiting the declaration of any cash dividend or distribution upon any class of our capital stock (except to the extent necessary for us to maintain its treatment as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code), or purchasing any such capital stock, if our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, were below 200% at the time of the declaration of the dividend or distribution or the purchase and after deducting the amount of such dividend, distribution, or purchase; and (iii) requiring us to provide financial information to the holders of the Notes and the Trustee if we cease to be subject to the reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. These covenants are subject to limitations and exceptions that are described in the Indenture.

On February 13, 2018, the Board declared a regular quarterly dividend of $0.39 per share payable on March 23, 2018 to stockholders of record as of March 9, 2018.

On February 27, 2018, we invested $10.5 million in second lien debt and common equity of B&B Roadway and Security Solutions, LLC, a leading manufacturer of traffic control and perimeter security solutions.

On February 28, 2018, we repaid $43.8 million of SBA debentures with a weighted average interest rate of 4.9% which would have matured on dates ranging from March 1, 2019 to September 1, 2021.

SENIOR SECURITIES

Information about our senior securities is shown in the following table for the years indicated in the table, unless otherwise noted. RSM US LLP's report on the senior securities table as of December 31, 2017, is attached as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

Class and Year(6)	Total Amount Outstanding Exclusive of Treasury Securities (1) *(dollars in thousands)*	Asset Coverage per Unit (2)(5)	Involuntary liquidation Preference per Unit (3)	Average Market Value per Unit (4)
SBA debentures				
2007	$ —	$ —	—	N/A
2008	46,450	1,701	—	N/A
2009	79,450	1,610	—	N/A
2010	93,500	1,556	—	N/A
2011	104,000	2,351	—	N/A
2012	144,500	—	—	N/A
2013	144,500	—	—	N/A
2014	173,500	—	—	N/A
2015	213,500	—	—	N/A
2016	224,000	—	—	N/A
2017	231,300	—	—	N/A
Credit Facility				
2007	$ 15,520	$ 2,285	—	N/A
2008	—	—	—	N/A
2009	—	—	—	N/A
2010	—	—	—	N/A
2011	—	—	—	N/A
2012	—	—	—	N/A
2013	—	—	—	N/A
2014	10,000	42,676	—	N/A
2015	15,500	30,733	—	N/A
2016	—	—	—	N/A
2017	11,500	55,311	—	N/A

(1) Total amount of each class of senior securities outstanding at the end of the period presented.

(2) Asset coverage per unit is the ratio of the carrying value of our total consolidated assets, less all liabilities and indebtedness not represented by senior securities, to the aggregate amount of senior securities representing indebtedness. Asset coverage per unit is expressed in terms of dollar amounts per $1,000 of indebtedness.

(3) The amount to which such class of senior security would be entitled upon the involuntary liquidation of the issuer in preference to any security junior to it. The "—" indicates information which the SEC expressly does not require to be disclosed for certain types of senior securities.

(4) Not applicable because senior securities are not registered for public trading.

(5) We have excluded our SBA-guaranteed debentures with respect to Fund I from the asset coverage calculation with respect to Fund I as of December 31, 2012 pursuant to the exemptive relief granted by the SEC in March 2012 that permits us to exclude such debentures from the definition of senior securities in the 200% asset coverage ratio we are required to maintain under the 1940 Act. We have excluded our SBA-guaranteed debentures with respect to Fund II from the asset coverage calculation as of December 31, 2014 pursuant to the exemptive relief granted by the SEC in June 2014 that permits us to exclude such debentures from the definition of senior securities in the 200% asset coverage ratio we are required to maintain under the 1940 Act.

(6) On February 2, 2018, we closed the public offering of $43.5 million in aggregate principal amount of our Notes. The ticker symbol for the Notes is "FDUSL."

THE COMPANY

General

We provide customized debt and equity financing solutions to lower middle-market companies, which we define as U.S. based companies having revenues between $10.0 million and $150.0 million. Our investment objective is to provide attractive risk-adjusted returns by generating both current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our equity related investments. Our investment strategy includes partnering with business owners, management teams and financial sponsors by providing customized financing for ownership transactions, recapitalizations, strategic acquisitions, business expansion and other growth initiatives. We seek to maintain a diversified portfolio of investments in order to help mitigate the potential effects of adverse economic events related to particular companies, regions or industries.

We invest in companies that possess some or all of the following attributes: predictable revenues; positive cash flows; defensible and/or leading market positions; diversified customer and supplier bases; and proven management teams with strong operating discipline. We target companies in the lower middle-market with annual earnings, before interest, taxes, depreciation and amortization, or EBITDA, between $3.0 million and $20.0 million; however, we may from time to time opportunistically make investments in larger or smaller companies. Our investments typically range between $5.0 million and $30.0 million per portfolio company.

As of December 31, 2017, we had debt and equity investments in 63 portfolio companies with an aggregate fair value of $596.3 million. The weighted average yield on our debt investments as of December 31, 2017 was 13.0%. The weighted average yield of our debt investments is not the same as a return on investment for our stockholders but, rather, relates to a portion of our investment portfolio and is calculated before the payment of all of our fees and expenses. The weighted average yield was computed using the effective interest rates as of December 31, 2017, including accretion of OID and loan origination fees, but excluding investments on non-accrual status, if any. There can be no assurance that the weighted average yield will remain at its current level.

Market Opportunity

We believe that the limited amount of capital available to lower middle-market companies, coupled with the desire of these companies for flexible and partnership-oriented sources of capital, creates an attractive investment environment for us. We believe the following factors will continue to provide us with opportunities to grow and deliver attractive returns to stockholders.

The lower middle-market represents a large, underserved market. We believe that lower middle-market companies, most of which are privately-held, are relatively underserved by traditional capital providers such as commercial banks, finance companies, hedge funds and collateralized loan obligation funds. Further, we believe that companies of this size generally possess conservative capital structures with significant enterprise value cushions, as compared to larger companies with more financing options.

Current credit market dislocation for lower middle-market companies has created an opportunity for attractive risk-adjusted returns. In this market, we believe traditional capital sources, such as commercial banks, finance companies, hedge funds and collateralized loan obligation funds have reduced lending and investing in the lower middle-market, which has resulted in increased opportunities for alternative funding sources. In addition, we believe that there continues to be less competition in the lower middle-market and an increased opportunity for attractive risk-adjusted returns. The remaining lenders and investors in the current environment are requiring lower amounts of senior and total leverage, increased equity commitments and more comprehensive covenant packages than was customary in the years leading up to the credit crisis.

Large pools of uninvested private equity capital should drive future transaction velocity. We believe there is a large pool of uninvested private equity capital, and we expect that private equity firms will remain active investors in lower middle-market companies. Private equity funds generally seek to leverage their investments by combining their equity capital with senior secured loans and/or mezzanine debt provided by other sources, and our relationships with private equity firms position us to partner with private equity investors.

Future refinancing activity is expected to create additional investment opportunities. A high volume of financings completed will mature in the coming years. Additionally, we believe that demand for debt financing from lower middle-market companies will remain strong because these companies will continue to require credit to refinance existing debt, to support growth initiatives and to finance acquisitions. We believe this supply of opportunities coupled with limited financing providers focused on lower middle-market companies will continue to offer investment opportunities with attractive risk-adjusted returns.

Our Advisor

Our investment activities are managed by Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC, our investment advisor, and supervised by our board of directors, a majority of whom are not “interested persons” of FIC as defined in section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act, and who we refer to hereafter as the Independent Directors. Pursuant to the terms of the investment advisory and management agreement, which we refer to as the Investment Advisory Agreement, between us and our investment advisor, our investment advisor is responsible for determining the composition of our portfolio, including sourcing potential investments, conducting research and diligence on potential investments and equity sponsors, analyzing investment opportunities, structuring our investments and monitoring our investments and portfolio companies on an ongoing basis. Our investment advisor’s investment professionals seek to capitalize on their significant deal origination and sourcing, underwriting, due diligence, investment structuring, execution, portfolio management and monitoring experience. These professionals have developed a broad network of contacts within the investment community, have gained extensive experience investing in assets that constitute our primary focus and have expertise in investing across all levels of the capital structure of lower middle-market companies.

Our relationship with our investment advisor is governed by and dependent on the Investment Advisory Agreement and may be subject to conflicts of interest. We pay our investment advisor a fee for its services under the Investment Advisory Agreement consisting of two components—a base management fee and an incentive fee. The base management fee is calculated at an annual rate of 1.75% of the average value of our total assets (other than cash or cash equivalents but including assets purchased with borrowed amounts). The incentive fee consists of two parts. The first part is calculated and payable quarterly in arrears and equals 20.0% of our “pre-incentive fee net investment income” for the immediately preceding quarter, subject to a 2.0% preferred return, or “hurdle,” and a “catch up” feature. The second part is determined and payable in arrears as of the end of each fiscal year in an amount equal to 20.0% of our realized capital gains, if any, on a cumulative basis from inception through the end of each fiscal year, computed net of all realized capital losses and unrealized capital depreciation on a cumulative basis, less the aggregate amount of any capital gain incentive fees paid in prior years. We accrue, but do not pay, a capital gains incentive fee in connection with any unrealized capital appreciation, as appropriate. For more information about how we compensate our investment advisor, see “Management and Other Agreements—Investment Advisory Agreement.”

Among other things, our board of directors is charged with protecting our interests by monitoring how our investment advisor addresses conflicts of interest associated with its management services and compensation. Our board of directors is not expected to review or approve each borrowing or incurrence of leverage. However, our board of directors periodically reviews our investment advisor’s portfolio management decisions and portfolio performance. In addition, our board of directors at least annually reviews the services provided by and fees paid to our investment advisor. In connection with these reviews, our board of directors, including a majority of our Independent Directors, considers whether the fees and expenses (including those related to leverage) that we pay to our investment advisor are fair and reasonable in relation to the services provided. Renewal of our Investment Advisory Agreement must be approved each year by our board of directors, including a majority of our Independent Directors.

Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC is a Delaware limited liability company that is registered as an investment advisor under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, as amended, or the Advisers Act. In addition, Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC serves as our administrator and provides us with office space, equipment and clerical, book-keeping and record-keeping services pursuant to an administration agreement, which we refer to as the Administration Agreement.

Business Strategy

We intend to accomplish our goal of becoming the premier provider of capital to and value-added partner of lower middle-market companies by:

Leveraging the Experience of Our Investment Advisor. Our investment advisor's investment professionals have significant experience investing in, lending to and advising companies across multiple industries and changing market cycles. These professionals have diverse backgrounds with prior experience in senior management positions at investment banks, specialty finance companies, commercial banks and privately and publicly held companies and have extensive experience investing across all levels of the capital structure of lower middle-market companies. We believe these professionals possess an in-depth understanding of the strategic, financial and operational challenges and opportunities of lower middle-market companies, enabling our investment advisor to effectively identify, assess, structure and monitor our investments.

Capitalizing on Our Strong Transaction Sourcing Network. Our investment advisor's investment professionals possess an extensive network of long-standing relationships with private equity firms, middle-market senior lenders, junior capital partners, financial intermediaries and management teams of privately owned businesses. We believe that the combination of our investment advisor's relationships and our reputation as a reliable, responsive and value-added financing partner helps us generate a steady stream of new investment opportunities and proprietary deal flow.

Serving as a Value-Added Partner with Customized Financing Solutions. We follow a partnership-oriented investment approach and focus on opportunities where we believe we can add value to a portfolio company. We primarily concentrate on industries or market niches in which the investment professionals of our investment advisor have prior experience. These professionals also have expertise in structuring securities at all levels of the capital structure, which we believe positions us well to meet the unique financing needs of our portfolio companies. We invest primarily in mezzanine debt securities, typically coupled with an equity interest; however, on a selective basis we may invest in senior secured or unitranche loans. Further, as a publicly-traded BDC, we have a longer investment horizon without the capital return requirements of traditional private investment vehicles. We believe this flexibility enables us to generate attractive risk-adjusted returns on invested capital and enables us to be a better long-term partner for our portfolio companies. We believe that by leveraging the industry and structuring expertise of our investment advisor coupled with our long-term investment horizon, we are well positioned to be a value-added partner for our portfolio companies.

Employing Rigorous Due Diligence and Underwriting Processes Focused on Capital Preservation. Our investment advisor follows a disciplined and credit-oriented approach to evaluating and investing in companies. We focus on companies with proven business models, significant free cash flow, defensible market positions and significant enterprise value cushion for our debt investments. In making investment decisions, we seek to minimize the risk of capital loss without foregoing the opportunity for capital appreciation. Our investment advisor's investment professionals have developed extensive due diligence and underwriting processes designed to better assess a portfolio company's prospects and to determine the appropriate investment structure. Our investment advisor thoroughly analyzes each potential portfolio company's competitive position, financial performance, management team, growth potential and industry attractiveness. As part of this process, our investment advisor also participates in meetings with management, tours of facilities, discussions with industry professionals and third-party reviews. We believe this approach enables us to build and maintain an attractive investment portfolio that meets our return and value criteria over the long term.

Actively Managing our Portfolio. We believe that our investment advisor's initial and ongoing portfolio review process allows us to effectively monitor the performance and prospects of our portfolio companies. We seek to obtain board observation rights or board seats with respect to our portfolio companies, and we conduct monthly financial reviews and have regular discussions with portfolio company management. We structure our investments with a comprehensive set of financial maintenance, affirmative and negative covenants. We believe that active monitoring of our portfolio companies' compliance with covenants provides us with an early warning of any financial difficulty and enhances our ability to protect our invested capital.

Maintaining Portfolio Diversification. We seek to maintain a portfolio of investments that is appropriately diversified among companies, industries, geographic regions and end markets. We have made investments in portfolio companies in the following industries: business services, industrial products and services, value-added distribution, healthcare products and services, consumer products and services (including retail, food and beverage), energy services, defense and aerospace, transportation and logistics, information technology services and niche manufacturing. We believe that investing across various industries helps mitigate the potential effects of negative economic events for particular companies, regions and industries.

Benefiting from Lower Cost of Capital. The Funds' SBIC licenses allow us to issue SBA-guaranteed debentures. These SBA debentures carry long-term fixed rates that are generally lower than rates on comparable bank and public debt. Because lower-cost SBA leverage is, and will continue to be, a significant part of our funding strategy, our relative cost of debt capital should be lower than many of our competitors. For three or more SBICs under common control, the maximum amount of outstanding SBA debentures cannot exceed $350.0 million.

Investments

We seek to create a diversified investment portfolio that primarily includes mezzanine loans and, to a lesser extent, equity securities. Our investments typically range between $5.0 million to $30.0 million per portfolio company, although this investment size may vary proportionately with the size of our capital base. Our investment objective is to provide attractive risk-adjusted returns by generating both current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our equity related investments. We may invest in the equity securities of our portfolio companies, such as preferred stock, common stock, warrants and other equity interests, either directly or in conjunction with our debt investments.

Second Lien Debt. The majority of our debt investments take the form of second lien debt, which includes senior subordinated notes. Second lien debt investments obtain security interests in the assets of the portfolio company as collateral in support of the repayment of such loans. Second lien debt typically is senior on a lien basis to other liabilities in the issuer's capital structure and has the benefit of a security interest over assets of the issuer, though ranking junior to first lien debt secured by those assets. First lien lenders and second lien lenders typically have separate liens on the collateral, and an intercreditor agreement provides the first lien lenders with priority over the second lien lenders' liens on the collateral. These loans typically provide for no contractual loan amortization, with all amortization deferred until loan maturity, and may include payment-in-kind ("PIK") interest, which increases the principal balance over the term and, coupled with the deferred principal payment provision, increases credit risk exposure over the life of the loan.

Subordinated ("Mezzanine") Debt. These investments are typically structured as unsecured, subordinated notes. Structurally, mezzanine debt usually ranks subordinate in priority of payment to first lien and second lien debt and may not have the benefit of financial covenants common in first lien and second lien debt. Unsecured debt may rank junior as it relates to proceeds in certain liquidations where it does not have the benefit of a lien in specific collateral held by creditors (typically first lien and/or second lien) who have a perfected security interest in such collateral. However, both mezzanine and unsecured debt ranks senior to common and preferred equity in an issuer's capital structure. These loans typically have relatively higher fixed interest rates (often representing a combination of cash pay and PIK interest) and amortization of principal deferred to maturity. The PIK feature (meaning a feature allowing for the payment of interest in the form of additional principal amount of the loan instead of in cash), which effectively operates as negative amortization of loan principal, coupled with the deferred principal payment provision, increases credit risk exposure over the life of the loan.

First Lien Debt. To a lesser extent, we also structure some of our debt investments as senior secured or first lien debt investments. First lien debt investments are secured by a first priority lien on existing and future assets of the borrower and may take the form of term loans or revolving lines of credit. First lien debt is typically senior on a lien basis to other liabilities in the issuer's capital structure and has the benefit of a first-priority security interest in assets of the issuer. The security interest ranks above the security interest of any second lien lenders in those assets. Our first lien debt may include stand-alone first lien loans, "last out" first lien loans, or "unitranche" loans. Stand-alone first lien loans are traditional first lien loans. All lenders in the facility have equal rights to the collateral that is subject to the first-priority security interest. "Last out" first lien loans have a secondary priority behind super-senior "first out" first lien loans in the collateral securing the loans in certain circumstances. The arrangements for a "last out" first lien loan are set forth in an "agreement among lenders," which provides lenders with "first out" and "last out" payment streams based on a single lien on the collateral. Since the "first out" lenders generally have priority over the "last out" lenders for receiving payment under certain specified events of default, or upon the occurrence of other triggering events under intercreditor agreements or agreements among lenders, the "last out" lenders bear a greater risk and, in exchange, receive a higher effective interest rate, through arrangements among the lenders, than the "first out" lenders or lenders in stand-alone first lien loans. Agreements among lenders also typically provide greater voting rights to the "last out" lenders than the intercreditor agreements to which second lien lenders often are subject.

Many of our debt investments also include excess cash flow sweep features, whereby principal repayment may be required before maturity if the portfolio company achieves certain defined operating targets. Additionally, our debt investments typically have principal prepayment penalties in the early years of the loan. Substantially all of our debt investments provide for a fixed interest rate.

Equity Securities. Our equity securities typically consist of either a direct minority equity investment in common or preferred stock or membership/partnership interests of a portfolio company, or we may receive warrants to buy a minority equity interest in a portfolio company in connection with a debt investment. Warrants we receive with our debt investments typically require only a nominal cost to exercise, and thus, as a portfolio company appreciates in value, we may achieve additional investment return from this equity interest. Our equity investments are typically not control-oriented investments, and in many cases, we acquire equity securities as part of a group of private equity investors in which we are not the lead investor. We may structure such equity investments to include provisions protecting our rights as a minority-interest holder, as well as a “put,” or right to sell such securities back to the issuer, upon the occurrence of specified events. In many cases, we may also seek to obtain registration rights in connection with these equity interests, which may include demand and “piggyback” registration rights. Our equity investments typically are made in connection with debt investments to the same portfolio companies.

Our Consolidated Portfolio

We generally seek to invest in companies from the broad range of industries in which our investment advisor has direct experience. The following is a representative list of the broad industry segments in which we have invested; however, we may invest in other industries if we are presented with attractive opportunities.

- business services;
- industrial products and services;
- value-added distribution;
- healthcare products and services;
- consumer products and services (including retail, food and beverage);
- niche manufacturing;
- defense and aerospace;
- transportation and logistics;
- information technology services; and
- energy services.

As of December 31, 2017, we had investments in 63 portfolio companies with an aggregate fair value of $596.3 million. As of December 31, 2016, we had investments in 57 portfolio companies with an aggregate fair value of $524.5 million.

The following table shows the portfolio composition by geographic region at fair value and cost and as a percentage of total investments (dollars in millions). The geographic composition is determined by the location of the corporate headquarters of the portfolio company, which may not be indicative of the primary source of the portfolio company’s business.

	Fair Value				Cost			
	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016		December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016	
Midwest	$168.0	28.2%	$166.4	31.6%	$161.8	28.1%	$153.5	30.7%
Southeast	130.2	21.8	122.6	23.4	130.7	22.6	130.1	26.0
Northeast	107.8	18.1	98.5	18.8	105.3	18.2	94.5	18.9
West	63.4	10.6	73.7	14.1	54.0	9.3	63.7	12.7
Southwest	126.9	21.3	63.3	12.1	126.0	21.8	58.7	11.7
Total	$596.3	100.0%	$524.5	100.0%	$577.8	100.0%	$500.5	100.0%

The following table shows the detailed industry segment composition of our portfolio at fair value and cost as a percentage of total investments.

	Fair Value		Cost	
	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Healthcare Services	10.8%	8.0%	9.9%	8.5%
Information Technology Services	10.7	4.5	11.0	4.8
Healthcare Products	7.3	11.1	7.1	9.3
Transportation Services	7.1	8.9	7.3	8.4
Component Manufacturing	6.6	3.5	7.0	3.7
Business Services	6.5	7.1	7.3	7.9
Specialty Distribution	6.2	5.0	6.2	5.0
Vending Equipment Manufacturing	5.7	3.7	5.9	3.9
Building Products Manufacturing	5.1	5.7	5.4	5.6
Oil & Gas Services	4.7	2.8	2.7	2.9
Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing	4.4	11.7	4.3	11.1
Industrial Cleaning & Coatings	4.3	2.4	4.6	2.7
Capital Equipment Manufacturing	3.4	2.9	3.4	3.0
Consumer Products	3.3	2.6	2.7	2.2
Promotional Products	3.0	2.4	2.9	2.4
Retail	2.8	1.7	2.9	1.5
Utility Equipment Manufacturing	2.6	3.5	2.8	3.7
Utilities: Services	1.6	—	1.7	—
Oil & Gas Distribution	1.0	1.1	1.0	1.2
Apparel Distribution	0.9	1.1	1.0	1.2
Laundry Services	0.7	1.4	0.7	1.3
Electronic Components Supplier	0.6	0.4	0.2	0.3
Restaurants	0.4	1.5	1.7	1.9
Specialty Chemicals	0.2	1.6	0.2	1.8
Packaging	0.1	3.3	0.1	3.5
Printing Services	—	2.1	—	2.2
Safety Products Manufacturing	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Total	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%

Investment Criteria/Guidelines

We use the following criteria and guidelines in evaluating investment opportunities and constructing our portfolio. However, not all of these criteria and guidelines have been, or will be, met in connection with each of our investments.

Value Orientation / Positive Cash Flow. Our investment advisor places a premium on analysis of business fundamentals from an investor’s perspective and has a distinct value orientation. We focus on companies with proven business models in which we can invest at relatively low multiples of operating cash flow. We also typically invest in portfolio companies with a history of profitability and minimum trailing twelve month EBITDA of $3.0 million. We do not invest in start-up companies, “turn-around” situations or companies that we believe have unproven business plans.

Experienced Management Teams with Meaningful Equity Ownership. We target portfolio companies that have management teams with significant experience and/or relevant industry experience coupled with meaningful equity ownership. We believe management teams with these attributes are more likely to manage the companies in a manner that protects our debt investment and enhances the value of our equity investment.

Niche Market Leaders with Defensible Market Positions. We seek to invest in portfolio companies that have developed defensible and/or leading positions within their respective markets or market niches and are well positioned to capitalize on growth opportunities. We favor companies that demonstrate significant competitive advantages, which we believe helps to protect their market position and profitability.

Diversified Customer and Supplier Base. We prefer to invest in portfolio companies that have a diversified customer and supplier base. Companies with a diversified customer and supplier base are generally better able to endure economic downturns, industry consolidation and shifting customer preferences.

Significant Equity Value. We believe the existence of significant underlying equity value provides important support to our debt investments. With respect to our debt investments, we look for portfolio companies where management/sponsors have provided significant equity funding and where we believe aggregate enterprise value significantly exceeds aggregate indebtedness, after consideration of our investment.

Viable Exit Strategy. We invest in portfolio companies that we believe will provide steady cash flows to service our debt, ultimately repay our loans and provide working capital for their respective businesses. In addition, we seek to invest in portfolio companies whose business models and expected future cash flows offer attractive exit possibilities for our portfolio equity investments. We expect to exit our investments typically through one of three scenarios: (a) the sale of the portfolio company resulting in repayment of all outstanding debt and monetization of equity; (b) the recapitalization of the portfolio company through which our investments are replaced with debt or equity from a third party or parties; or (c) the repayment of the initial or remaining principal amount of our debt investment from cash flow generated by the portfolio company. In some investments, there may be scheduled amortization of some portion of our debt investment that would result in a partial exit of our investment prior to the maturity of the debt investment.

Investment Committee

Our investment advisor has formed an investment committee to evaluate and approve all of our investments. The investment committee process is intended to bring the diverse experience and perspectives of the committee’s members to the analysis and consideration of each investment. The investment committee also serves to provide investment consistency and adherence to our investment advisor’s core investment philosophy and policies. The investment committee also determines appropriate investment sizing and suggests ongoing monitoring requirements.

The members of the investment committee that evaluate and approve all of our investments are Edward H. Ross, Thomas C. Lauer, John H. Grigg, Robert G. Lesley, Jr., John J. Ross, II, and W. Andrew Worth.

Investment Process Overview

Our investment advisor has developed the following investment process based on the experience of its investment professionals to identify investment opportunities and to structure investments quickly and effectively. Furthermore, our investment advisor seeks to identify those companies exhibiting superior fundamental risk-reward profiles and strong defensible business franchises while focusing on the relative value of the security in the portfolio company’s capital structure. The investment process consists of five distinct phases:

- Investment Generation/Origination;
- Initial Evaluation;
- Due Diligence and Underwriting;
- Documentation and Closing; and
- Active Portfolio Management.

Each of the phases is described in more detail below.

Investment Generation/Origination. Our investment origination efforts are focused on leveraging our investment advisor's extensive network of long-standing relationships with private equity firms, middle-market senior lenders, junior-capital partners, financial intermediaries, service providers and management teams of privately owned businesses. We believe that our investment advisor's investment professionals have reputations as reliable, responsive and value-added partners for lower middle-market companies. Our investment advisor's focus and reputation as a valued-added partner generates a balanced mix of proprietary deal flow and a steady stream of new deal opportunities.

Initial Evaluation. After a potential transaction is received by our investment advisor, it will conduct an initial review of the transaction materials to determine whether it meets our investment criteria and complies with SBA and other regulatory compliance requirements.

If the potential transaction initially meets our investment criteria, at least two members of the investment committee, referred to as the deal team, will conduct a preliminary due diligence review, taking into consideration some or all of the following factors:

- A comprehensive financial model based on quantitative analysis of historical financial performance, projections and pro forma adjustments to determine a range of estimated internal rates of return.
- An initial call or meeting with the portfolio company management team, owner, private equity sponsor or other deal partner.
- A brief industry and market analysis, leveraging direct industry expertise from other investment professionals of our investment advisor.
- Preliminary qualitative analysis of the portfolio company management team's competencies and backgrounds.
- Potential investment structures and pricing terms.

Upon successful completion of the screening process, the deal team prepares a screening memorandum and makes a recommendation to the investment committee. At this time, the investment committee will also consider whether the investment would be made by FIC or through the Funds. If the investment committee supports the deal team's recommendation, the deal team issues a non-binding term sheet to the potential portfolio company. Such a term sheet will typically include the key economic terms based on our analysis conducted during the screening process. Upon agreement on a term sheet with the potential portfolio company, our investment advisor will begin a formal diligence and underwriting process.

Due Diligence and Underwriting. Our investment advisor has developed a rigorous and disciplined due diligence process that includes a comprehensive understanding of a borrower's industry, market, operational, financial, organizational and legal positions and prospects. The due diligence review will take into account information that the deal team deems necessary to make an informed decision about the creditworthiness of the borrower and the risks of the investment, which includes some or all of the following:

- Initial or additional site visits and facility tours with management and key personnel.
- Review of the business history, operations and strategy.
- In depth review of industry and competition.
- Analysis of key customers and suppliers, including review of any concentrations and key contracts.
- Detailed review of historical and projected financial statements, including a review of at least three years of performance (annual and monthly), key financial ratios, revenue, expense and profitability drivers and sensitivities to management's financial projections.
- Detailed evaluation of company management, including background checks.
- Third party reviews of accounting, environmental, legal, insurance, material contracts, competition, industry and market studies and interviews with customers and suppliers, (each as appropriate).
- Financial sponsor diligence, if applicable, including portfolio company and other reference checks.

During the due diligence process, significant attention is given to sensitivity analyses and how the portfolio company might be expected to perform given various scenarios, including downside, "base case" and upside. Upon satisfactory completion of the due diligence review process, the deal team will present their findings and a recommendation to the investment committee. If the investment committee supports the deal team's recommendation, the deal team will proceed with negotiating and documenting the investment.

Documentation and Closing. Our investment advisor works with the management of a potential portfolio company and its other capital providers, including, as applicable, senior, junior and equity capital providers to structure an investment. Our investment advisor structures each investment with an acute focus on capital preservation and will tailor the terms of each investment to the facts and circumstances of the transaction and the prospective portfolio company. We seek to limit the downside of our investments by:

- Targeting an optimal total return on our investments (including a combination of current and deferred interest, prepayment penalties and equity participation) that compensates us for credit risk.
- Negotiating covenants in connection with our investments that afford our portfolio companies as much flexibility in managing their businesses as possible, yet consistent with preservation of our capital. Such restrictions may include affirmative and negative covenants, default penalties, lien protection, change of control provisions and board rights, including either board observation or rights to a seat on the board under some circumstances.
- Structuring financial covenants and terms in our debt investments that require a portfolio company to reduce leverage over time, thereby mitigating the risk of loss and increasing the likelihood of achieving targeted returns on investment. These methods may include, among others: leverage covenants requiring a decreasing ratio of debt to cash flow; cash flow covenants requiring an increasing ratio of cash flow to interest expense and possibly other cash expenses such as capital expenditures, cash taxes and mandatory principal payments; and debt incurrence prohibitions, or limiting a company's ability to relever its balance sheet. In addition, limitations on asset sales and capital expenditures prevent a company from changing the nature of its business or capitalization without our consent.

We expect to hold most of our investments to maturity or repayment, but may exit our investments earlier if a liquidity event takes place, such as a sale or recapitalization of a portfolio company, or if we determine that a sale of one or more of our investments is in our best interest.

Active Portfolio Management. Active portfolio monitoring is a vital part of our investment process and we continuously monitor the status and progress of the portfolio companies. The same deal team that was involved in the investment process will continue its involvement in the portfolio company post-investment. This provides for continuity of knowledge and allows the deal team to maintain a strong business relationship with key management of its portfolio companies for post-investment assistance and monitoring purposes.

As part of the monitoring process, the deal team conducts a comprehensive review of the financial and operating results of each portfolio company that includes a review of the monthly/quarterly financials relative to prior year and budget, a review of the financial projections including cash flow and liquidity needs, meeting with management, attending board meetings and reviewing compliance certificates and covenants. We maintain an ongoing dialogue with the management and any controlling equity holders of a portfolio company that will include discussions about the company's business plans and growth opportunities and any changes in industry and competitive dynamics. While we maintain limited involvement in the ordinary course operations of our portfolio companies, we may maintain a higher level of involvement in non-ordinary course financing or strategic activities and any non-performing scenarios. Our investment advisor's portfolio management will also include quarterly portfolio reviews with all investment professionals and investment committee members.

Investment Rating System

In addition to various risk management and monitoring tools, our investment advisor uses an internally developed investment rating system to characterize and monitor the credit profile and our expected level of returns on each investment in our portfolio. We use a five-level numeric rating scale. The following is a description of the conditions associated with each investment rating:

- Investment Rating 1 is used for investments that involve the least amount of risk in our portfolio. The portfolio company is performing above expectations, the debt investment is expected to be paid in the near term and the trends and risk factors are favorable, and may include an expected capital gain.
- Investment Rating 2 is used for investments that involve a level of risk similar to the risk at the time of origination. The portfolio company is performing substantially within our expectations and the risks factors are neutral or favorable. Each new portfolio investment enters our portfolio with Investment Rating 2.
- Investment Rating 3 is used for investments performing below expectations and indicates the investment's risk has increased somewhat since origination. The portfolio company requires closer monitoring, but we expect a full return of principal and collection of all interest and/or dividends.
- Investment Rating 4 is used for investments performing materially below our expectations and the risk has increased materially since origination. The portfolio company has the potential for some loss of investment return, but we expect no loss of principal.

- Investment Rating 5 is used for investments performing substantially below our expectations and the risks have increased substantially since origination. We expect some loss of principal.

The following table shows the distribution of our investments on the 1 to 5 investment rating scale at fair value and cost as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 (dollars in millions).

	Fair Value				Cost			
Investment Rating	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016		December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016	
1	$125.7	21.1%	$ 91.7	17.5%	$ 83.2	14.4%	$ 59.0	11.8%
2	398.4	66.8	371.5	70.9	393.6	68.1	366.7	73.3
3	51.8	8.7	38.9	7.4	60.7	10.5	44.5	8.9
4	18.3	3.1	22.1	4.2	28.3	4.9	28.2	5.6
5	2.1	0.3	0.3	—	12.0	2.1	2.1	0.4
Total	$596.3	100.0%	$524.5	100.0%	$577.8	100.0%	$500.5	100.0%

Based on our investment rating system, the weighted average rating of our portfolio as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 was 1.9 and 2.0, respectively, on a fair value basis and 2.1 and 2.1, respectively, on a cost basis.

Determination of Net Asset Value and Valuation Process

We determine the net asset value per share of our common stock on at least a quarterly basis, and more frequently if we are required to do so in connection with the issuance of shares of our common stock or pursuant to applicable federal laws and regulations. The net asset value per share of common stock is equal to the carrying value of our total assets minus liabilities and any preferred stock outstanding divided by the total number of shares of common stock outstanding. Our business plan calls for us to invest primarily in illiquid securities issued by private companies. These portfolio investments may be subject to restrictions on resale and will generally have no established trading market. Because there is not a readily available market for substantially all of the investments in our portfolio, we value substantially all of our portfolio investments at fair value as determined in good faith by our board of directors using a documented valuation policy and consistently applied valuation process in accordance with authoritative accounting guidelines. See "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations – Critical Accounting Policies and Use of Estimates – Valuation of Portfolio Investments."

Competition

Our primary competitors in providing financing to lower middle-market companies include public and private funds, other BDCs, SBICs, commercial and investment banks, commercial financing companies and, to the extent they provide an alternative form of financing, private equity and hedge funds. Many of our competitors are substantially larger and have considerably greater financial, technical and marketing resources than we do. For example, we believe some competitors may have access to funding sources that are not available to us. In addition, some of our competitors may have higher risk tolerances or different risk assessments, which could allow them to consider a wider variety of investments and establish more relationships than us. Furthermore, many of our competitors are not subject to the regulatory restrictions that the 1940 Act imposes on us as a BDC or to the distribution and other requirements we must satisfy to maintain our RIC status.

We use the expertise of the investment professionals of our investment advisor to assess investment risks and determine appropriate pricing for our investments in portfolio companies. In addition, the relationships of the investment professionals of our investment advisor enable us to learn about, and compete effectively for, financing opportunities with attractive lower middle-market companies in the industries in which we seek to invest. For additional information concerning the competitive risks we face, see "Risk Factors — Risks Relating to Our Business and Structure — We operate in a highly competitive market for investment opportunities, which could reduce returns and result in losses."

Employees

We do not have any direct employees, and our day-to-day investment operations are managed by our investment advisor, which is also acting as our administrator. We have a chief executive officer, president, chief financial officer and chief compliance officer and, to the extent necessary, our board of directors may elect to hire additional personnel going forward. Our officers are employees of, and are compensated by, our investment advisor, and our allocable portion of the cost of our chief financial officer and chief compliance officer and their respective staffs are paid by us pursuant to the Administration Agreement. Some of our executive officers are also officers of our investment advisor. See “Management and Other Agreements — Administration Agreement.”

Properties

We do not own any real estate or other physical properties materially important to our operation. Our headquarters are located at 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201, and are provided by our investment advisor pursuant to the Administration Agreement. Our investment advisor also maintains additional office space at 227 West Trade Street, Suite 1910, Charlotte, North Carolina 28202, 1140 Avenue of the Americas, Suite 1500, New York, New York 10036, and 170 Meeting Street, Suite 226, Charleston, South Carolina 29401. We believe that our office facilities are suitable and adequate to our business as we contemplate conducting it.

Legal Proceedings

We may, from time to time, be involved in litigation arising out of our operations in the normal course of business or otherwise. Furthermore, third parties may try to seek to impose liability on us in connection with the activities of our portfolio companies. While the outcome of any current legal proceedings cannot at this time be predicted with certainty, we do not expect any current matters will materially affect our financial condition or results of operations; however, there can be no assurance whether any pending legal proceedings will have a material adverse effect on our financial condition or results of operations in any future reporting period.

[Table of Contents](#)

PORTFOLIO COMPANIES

The following table sets forth certain audited information as of December 31, 2017, for the portfolio companies in which we had a debt or equity investment. Other than these investments, our only formal relationships with our portfolio companies are the managerial assistance ancillary to our investments and the board observer or participation rights we may receive.

Portfolio Company Address of Portfolio Company	Investment Type	Industry	Percentage of Class Held (a)	Rate Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value
Control Investments (c)								
FDS Avionics Corp.		Aerospace &						
(dba Flight Display Systems)		Defense Manufacturing						
6435 Shiloh Road, Suite D	Second Lien Debt			4.00%/11.00%	4/1/2020	$ 5,556	$ 5,546	$ 4,348
Alpharetta, GA 30005	Common Equity (7,478 shares)		93.5%				748	375
							6,294	4,723
Total Control Investments							$ 6,294	$ 4,723
Affiliate Investments (b)								
Apex Microtechnology, Inc.		Electronic Components Supplier						
5980 N. Shannon Road	Warrant (2,293 shares)		2.6%				$ 220	$ 543
Tucson, AZ 85741	Common Equity (11,690 shares)		13.5%				1,169	2,857
							1,389	3,400
FAR Research Inc.		Specialty Chemicals						
2210 Wilhelmina Ct, NE	Common Equity (1,396 units)		13.9%				1,396	1,447
Palm Bay, FL 32905								
Fiber Materials, Inc.		Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
5 Morin Street	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/1.00%	5/30/2022	$ 4,044	4,028	4,044
Biddeford, ME 04005	Common Equity (10 units)		10.5%				1,000	1,838
							5,028	5,882
Inflexxion, Inc.		Business Services						
320 Needham Street, Suite 100	First Lien Debt			5.00%/5.00%	12/16/2019	4,478	4,468	2,647
Newton, MA 02464	Revolving Loan ($275 commitment)			5.00%/5.00%	12/16/2019	275	273	163
	Preferred Equity (252,046 units)		0.0%				252	—
	Preferred Equity (308,987 units)		0.0%				309	—
	Preferred Equity (1,400 units)		20.8%				1,400	—
	Preferred Equity (550,000 units)		0.0%				200	—
							6,902	2,810
Medsurant Holdings, LLC		Healthcare Services						
1660 S. Albion Street, Suite 425	Second Lien Debt			12.25%/0.75%	6/30/2020	8,824	8,776	8,824
Denver, CO 80222	Preferred Equity (126,662 units)		3.4%				1,346	2,753
	Warrant (505,176 units)		13.7%				4,516	10,048
							14,638	21,625
Microbiology Research Associates, Inc.		Healthcare Services						
33 Nagog Park	Subordinated Debt			11.00%/1.50%	3/13/2022	8,667	8,649	8,667
Acton, MA 01720	Common Equity (1,625,731 units)		7.7%				1,939	3,788
							10,588	12,455
Mirage Trailers LLC		Utility Equipment Manufacturing						
2212 Industrial Road	Second Lien Debt			12.88%/1.50%	11/25/2020	6,017	5,964	6,017
Nampa, ID 83687	Common Equity (2,500,000 shares)		21.4%				2,340	2,939
							8,304	8,956
Pfanstiehl, Inc.		Healthcare Products						
1219 Glen Rock Avenue	Subordinated Debt			10.50%/0.00%	9/29/2021	6,208	6,193	6,208
Waukegan, IL 60085	Common Equity (8,500 units)		18.0%				850	9,070
							7,043	15,278
Pinnergy, Ltd.		Oil & Gas Services						
111 Congress Avenue, Suite 2020	Second Lien Debt			0.00%/10.00%	1/24/2020	9,300	9,286	9,300
Austin, TX 78701	Common Equity - Class A-2 (42,500 units)		42.5%				3,000	15,621
	Common Equity Class (1,000 units)		0.0%				3,000	3,000
							15,286	27,921
Rhino Assembly Company, LLC		Specialty Distribution						
7575 Westwinds Blvd., Suite A	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/1.00%	2/11/2023	3,514	3,498	3,498
Concord, NC 28027	Delayed Draw Commitment ($1,500 commitment)			12.00%/1.00%	5/17/2022	—	—	—
	Preferred Equity (7,500 units)		5.9%				750	750
							4,248	4,248
Safety Products Group, LLC		Safety Products Manufacturing						
2002 Karbach	Preferred Equity (749 units)		0.0%				—	12
Houston, TX 77092	Common Equity (676 units) ($2,852 commitment)		6.2%				—	—
							—	12
Steward Holding LLC								
(dba Steward Advanced Materials)		Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
1245 E 38th Street	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/3.25%	5/12/2021	7,382	7,360	7,382
Chattanooga, TN 37407	Common Equity (1,000,000 units)		5.8%				1,000	500
							8,360	7,882
Trantech Radiator Products, Inc.		Utility Equipment Manufacturing						
1 Tranter Drive, P.O. Box 570	Second Lien Debt			14.25%/0.00%	5/31/2018	6,994	6,992	6,694
Edgefield, SC 29824	Common Equity (6,875 shares)		6.8%				688	13
							7,680	6,707
World Wide Packaging, LLC		Consumer Products						
15 Vreeland Road, Suite #4	Common Equity (1,517,573 units)		4.4%				499	4,388
Florham Park, NJ 07932								
Total Affiliate Investments							$91,361	$123,011

Portfolio Company Address of Portfolio Company	Investment Type	Industry	Percentage of Class Held (a)	Rate Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value
Non-control/Non-affiliate Investments								
Accent Food Services, LLC		Vending Equipment Manufacturing						
16209 Central Commerce Parkway	Second Lien Debt			10.00%/3.00%	5/30/2022	$ 28,983	$ 28,846	$ 28,984
Pflugerville, TX 68660	Common Equity (7,885 units)		0.8%				800	635
							29,646	29,619
Allied 100 Group, Inc.		Healthcare Products						
1800 U.S. Highway 51 North	Subordinated Debt			11.50%/0.00%	5/26/2020	13,000	12,973	13,000
Woodruff, WI 54568	Common Equity (1,250,000 units)		2.2%				1,249	1,425
							14,222	14,425
Caldwell & Gregory, LLC		Laundry Services						
129 Broad Street Road	Subordinated Debt			0.00%/12.00%	5/31/2022	3,035	3,035	3,035
Manakin-Sabot, VA 23103	Common Equity (500,000 units)		1.3%				500	625
	Warrant (242,121 units)		0.6%				242	268
							3,777	3,928
Cardboard Box LLC *(dba Anthony's Coal Fired Pizza)*		Restaurants						
200 W. Cypress Creek Road	Common Equity (521,021 units)		0.5%				520	85
Fort Lauderdale, FL 33309								
Cavallo Bus Lines Holdings, LLC		Transportation Services						
509 Illinois Avenue	Second Lien Debt			12.75%/0.00%	4/26/2021	7,395	7,370	6,572
Gillespie, IL 62033								
Comprehensive Logistics Co., Inc.		Business Services						
4944 Belmont Avenue	Subordinated Debt			11.50%/4.50%	11/22/2021	15,775	15,716	15,775
Youngstown, OH 44505								
Consolidated Infrastructure Group Holdings, LP		Business Services						
11620 Arbor Street, Suite 101	Second Lien Debt			11.25%/1.50%	11/30/2022	2,002	1,993	1,993
Omaha, NE 68144	Common Equity (298 shares)		1.2%				500	500
							2,493	2,493
ControlScan, Inc.		Information Technology Services						
11475 Great Oaks Way, Suite 300	Subordinated Debt			11.00%/0.00%	1/28/2023	6,750	6,719	6,719
Alpharetta, GA 30022	Common Equity (3,704 shares)		1.8%				4	4
	Preferred Equity (100 shares)		0.0%				996	996
							7,719	7,719
EBL, LLC (EbLens)		Retail						
299 Industrial Avenue	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/1.00%	1/13/2023	9,294	9,210	9,210
Torrington, CT 06790	Common Equity (75,000 units)		1.0%				750	750
							9,960	9,960
Gurobi Optimization, LLC		Information Technology Services						
3733-1 Westheimer Road #1001	Subordinated Debt			11.00%/0.00%	6/19/2023	20,000	19,901	19,901
Houston, TX 77027	Common Equity (5 shares)		1.4%				1,500	1,500
							21,401	21,401
Hilco Plastics Holdings, LLC *(dba Hilco Technologies)*		Component Manufacturing						
4172 Danvers Court SE	Subordinated Debt			11.50%/4.00%	7/15/2022	8,228	8,198	7,207
Grand Rapids, MI 49512	Common Equity (72,507 units)		2.7%				500	163
							8,698	7,370
Hub Acquisition Sub, LLC *(dba Hub Pen)*		Promotional products						
4172 Danvers Court SE	Second Lien Debt			12.25%/0.00%	9/23/2021	16,750	16,685	16,750
Grand Rapids, MI 49512	Common Equity (7,500 units)		1.5%				276	902
							16,961	17,652
Ice House America, LLC		Vending Equipment Manufacturing						
13901 Sutton Park Drive South, Building A	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/3.00%	1/1/2020	4,367	4,269	4,367
Suite 100	Warrant (1,957,895 units)		5.0%				215	234
Jacksonville, FL 32224							4,484	4,601
inthinc Technology Solutions, Inc.		Information Technology Services						
341 South Main Street, Suite 300	Royalty Rights		0.0%		4/24/2020		185	—
Salt Lake City, UT 84111								
IOS Acquisitions, Inc.		Oil & Gas Services						
8909 Youngsville Highway 89, P.O. Box 397	Common Equity (2,152 units)		0.6%				103	17
Youngsville, LA 70592								
Jacob Ash Holdings, Inc.		Apparel Distribution						
301 Munson Ave.	Second Lien Debt			17.00%/0.00%	6/30/2018	4,000	3,999	4,000
McKees Rocks, PA 15136	Subordinated Debt			13.00%/0.00%	6/30/2018	510	509	510
	Preferred Equity (66,138 shares)		2.5%	0.00%/15.00%	6/30/2018		1,238	1,152
	Warrant (63,492 shares)		2.4%				67	—
							5,813	5,662
K2 Industrial Services, Inc.		Industrial Cleaning & Coatings						
4527 S. Columbia Ave., Building 12, 2nd Floor	Tranche A Loan			11.75%/2.50%	4/25/2022	10,304	10,270	10,304
Hammond, IN 46327	Tranche B Loan			11.75%/7.25%	4/25/2022	2,181	2,174	2,181
	Common Equity (1,673 shares)		3.0%				1,268	457
							13,712	12,942
The Kyjen Company, LLC *(dba Outward Hound)*		Consumer Products						
15514 East Hinsdale Circle	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/0.00%	6/8/2024	14,500	14,428	14,428
Centennial, CO 80112	Common Equity (750 shares)		1.3%				750	750
							15,178	15,178
LNG Indy, LLC *(dba Kinetrex Energy)*		Oil & Gas Distribution						
129 E. Market St., Suite 100	Second Lien Debt			11.50%/0.00%	9/28/2021	5,000	4,980	5,000
Indianapolis, IN 46204	Common Equity (1,000 units)		4.5%				1,000	1,137
							5,980	6,137
Marco Group International OpCo, LLC		Industrial Cleaning & Coatings						
19 Grand Regency Circle	Second Lien Debt			10.50%/0.75%	1/21/2023	12,041	11,986	11,986
The Woodlands, TX 77832	Common Equity (750,000 shares)		1.7%				750	750
							12,736	12,736

Table of Contents

Portfolio Company Address of Portfolio Company	Investment Type	Industry	Percentage of Class Held (a)	Rate Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value
Mesa Line Services, LLC		Utilities: Services						
2505 FM 1462	Second Lien Debt			10.50%/1.00%	5/31/2023	$ 9,108	$ 9,048	$ 9,048
Alvin, TX 77511	Delayed Draw Commitment ($4,000 commitment)			10.50%/1.00%	5/31/2019	—	(13)	—
	Common Equity (500 shares)		1.1%				500	500
							9,535	9,548
Midwest Transit Equipment, Inc.		Transportation Services						
146 W. Issert Drive	Subordinated Debt			13.00%/0.00%	6/23/2022	12,005	11,286	12,005
Kankakee, IL 60901	Warrant (14,384 shares)		7.4%				361	80
	Warrant (9.59% of Junior Subordinated Notes)		0.0%				381	405
							12,028	12,490
New Era Technology, Inc.		Information Technology Services						
1325 Avenue of the Americas, suite 2737	Second Lien Debt			11.00%/1.50%	9/3/2022	11,646	11,598	11,646
New York, NY 10019	Common Equity (197,369 shares)		2.6%				750	828
							12,348	12,474
NGT Acquisition Holdings, LLC (dba Techniks Industries)		Component Manufacturing						
9930 E 56th Street	Subordinated Debt			12.50%/0.00%	3/21/2022	11,000	10,952	11,000
Indianapolis, IN 46236	Common Equity (378 units)		0.6%				500	470
							11,452	11,470
Oaktree Medical Centre, P.C. (dba Pain Management Associates)		Healthcare Services						
25 Airpark Court	First Lien Debt			11.50%/0.00%	1/1/2018	571	648	631
Greenville, SC 29607	First Lien Debt			7.00%/12.00%	1/1/2018	6,849	7,437	6,438
	Revolving Loan ($2,500 commitment)			11.50%/0.00%	1/1/2018	2,500	2,835	2,743
							10,920	9,812
OMC Investors, LLC (dba Ohio Medical Corporation)		Healthcare Products						
1111 Lakeside Drive	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/0.00%	7/15/2021	10,000	9,936	8,438
Gurnee, IL 60031	Common Equity (5,000 shares)		1.3%				500	214
							10,436	8,652
Palmetto Moon, LLC		Retail						
2070 Sam Rittenberg Blvd.	First Lien Debt			11.50%/1.00%	10/31/2021	6,187	6,158	6,187
Charleston , SC 29407	Common Equity (499 units)		1.9%				499	286
							6,657	6,473
Plymouth Rock Energy, LLC		Business Services						
287 Bowman Avenue, 2nd Floor	Second Lien Debt			11.00%/0.00%	6/30/2019	5,545	5,545	5,545
Purchase, NY 10577								
Pugh Lubricants, LLC		Specialty Distribution						
701 McDowell Rd.	Second Lien Debt			12.25%/0.00%	5/10/2022	18,581	18,505	18,581
Asheboro, NC 27205	Common Equity (6,125 units)		1.1%				612	931
							19,117	19,512
Restaurant Finance Co, LLC		Restaurants						
6300 Carmel Road, Suite 110B	Second Lien Debt (d)			15.00%/4.00%	7/31/2020	9,342	9,314	2,046
Charlotte, NC 28226								
Revenue Management Solutions, LLC		Information Technology Services						
9020 North May Avenue, Suite 140	Subordinated Debt			11.50%/1.00%	7/4/2022	8,838	8,766	8,838
Oklahoma City, OK 73120	Subordinated Debt			7.00%/6.50%	7/4/2022	817	806	817
	Common Equity (2,250,000 units)		3.4%				2,250	2,571
							11,822	12,226
Rohrer Corporation		Packaging						
717 Seville Road, P.O. Box 1009	Common Equity (389 shares)		1.1%				750	878
Wadsworth, OH 44282								
SES Investors, LLC (dba SES Foam)		Building Products Manufacturing						
403 Century Plaza Dr #420	Second Lien Debt			13.00%/0.00%	12/29/2020	4,095	4,056	3,229
Houston, TX 77073	Common Equity (6,000 units)		4.8%				600	—
							4,656	3,229
Simplex Manufacturing Co.		Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
13340 NE Whitaker Way	Subordinated Debt			14.00%/0.00%	11/1/2018	4,050	4,050	4,050
Portland, OR 97230	Warrant (29 shares)		26.8%				1,155	3,240
							5,205	7,290
SimplyWell, Inc.		Healthcare Services						
10670 N Central Expressway, Suite 700	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/1.25%	2/23/2021	10,046	10,001	10,001
Dallas, TX 75231	Preferred Equity (309,142 shares)		0.9%				500	500
							10,501	10,501
Six Month Smiles Holdings, Inc.		Healthcare Products						
6270 Morning Star Drive, Suite 120	Second Lien Debt (d)			0.00%/14.50%	7/31/2020	9,395	9,377	5,041
The Colony, TX 75056								
Software Technology, LLC		Information Technology Services						
1621 Cushman Drive	Subordinated Debt			11.00%/0.00%	6/23/2023	8,750	8,712	8,749
Lincoln, NE 68512	Common Equity (11 units)		2.1%				1,125	1,183
							9,837	9,932
The Wolf Organization, LLC		Building Products Manufacturing						
20 West Market Street	Common Equity (175 shares)		2.6%				1,445	4,223
York, PA 17401								
Thermoforming Technology Group LLC (dba Brown Machine Group)		Capital Equipment Manufacturing						
330 North Ross Street	Second Lien Debt			12.50%/0.00%	9/14/2021	19,700	19,626	19,700
Beaverton, MI 48612	Common Equity (3,500 units)		1.3%				169	360
							19,795	20,060

Portfolio Company Address of Portfolio Company	Investment Type	Industry	Percentage of Class Held (a)	Rate Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value
Tile Redi, LLC		Building Products Manufacturing						
4450 NW 126th Avenue, Suite 101	First Lien Debt			11.34%/0.00%	6/16/2022	$ 10,194	$ 10,102	$ 10,102
Coral Springs, FL 33065								
Toledo Molding & Die, Inc.		Component Manufacturing						
1429 Coining Drive	Second Lien Debt			10.50%/0.00%	12/18/2018	10,000	9,964	10,000
Toledo, OH 43612								
TransGo, LLC		Component Manufacturing						
2621 Merced Ave.	Second Lien Debt			13.25%/0.00%	8/28/2022	9,500	9,460	9,500
El Monte, CA 91733	Common Equity (1,000 units)		3.6%				1,000	847
							10,460	10,347
United Biologics, LLC		Healthcare Services						
70 NE Loop 410, Suite 600	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/2.00%	4/30/2018	8,876	8,866	8,876
San Antonio, TX 78216	Preferred Equity (98,377 units)		1.1%				1,069	879
	Warrant (57,469 units)		0.6%				566	234
							10,501	9,989
US GreenFiber, LLC		Building Products Manufacturing						
5500 77 Center Drive, Suite 100	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/2.00%	3/1/2019	14,147	14,131	13,014
Charlotte, NC 28217	Common Equity (2,522 units)		1.9%				586	—
							14,717	13,014
US Pack Logistics LLC		Transportation Services						
9435 Washington Blvd. Suite A	Second Lien Debt			12.00%/1.75%	3/28/2023	7,282	7,257	7,282
Laurel, MD 20723	Common Equity (5,833 units)		2.3%				583	1,078
	Preferred Equity (9,458 units)		0.0%				945	966
							8,785	9,326
Vanguard Dealer Services, L.L.C.		Business Services						
30 Two Bridges Road, Suite 350	Second Lien Debt			12.25%/0.00%	1/30/2021	11,450	11,416	11,450
Fairfield, NJ 07004	Common Equity (6,000 shares)		2.2%				600	946
							12,016	12,396
Virginia Tile Company, LLC		Specialty Distribution						
28320 Plymouth Road	Second Lien Debt			12.25%/0.00%	4/7/2022	12,000	11,971	12,000
Livonia, MI 48150	Common Equity (17 units)		1.4%				342	1,493
							12,313	13,493
Worldwide Express Operations, LLC		Transportation Services						
2828 Routh Street, Suite 400	Second Lien Debt			10.20%/0.00%	2/3/2025	10,000	9,867	10,000
Dallas, TX 75201	Common Equity (4,000 units)		0.6%				4,000	4,233
							13,867	14,233
Total Non-control/Non-affiliate Investments							$480,139	$468,574
Total Investments							$577,794	$596,308

(a) Percentage of class held refers only to equity held, if any, calculated on a fully diluted basis.
(b) As defined in the 1940 Act, the Company is deemed to be an "Affiliated Person" of this portfolio company because it owns 5% or more of the portfolio company's outstanding voting securities or it has the power to exercise control over the management or policies of such portfolio company. Transactions in which the issuer was an Affiliated Person are detailed in Note 3 to the consolidated financial statements.
(c) As defined in the 1940 Act, the Company is deemed to be both an "Affiliated Person" of and "Control" this portfolio company because it owns 25% or more of the portfolio company's outstanding voting securities or it has the power to exercise control over the management or policies of such portfolio company. Transactions in which the issuer was both an Affiliated Person and a portfolio company that the Company is deemed to Control are detailed in Note 3 to the consolidated financial statements.
(d) Investment was on non-accrual status as of , meaning the Company has ceased recognizing interest income on the investment.

As of December 31, 2017, there were no portfolio companies where our investment represented greater than 5.0% of our total assets.

MANAGEMENT

Board of Directors

Under our charter, our directors are divided into three classes. Each class of directors will hold office for a three-year term. However, the initial members of the three classes will have initial terms of one, two and three years, respectively. At each annual meeting of our stockholders, the successors to the class of directors whose terms expire at such meeting will be elected to hold office for a term expiring at the annual meeting of stockholders held in the third year following the year of their election. This classification of our board of directors may have the effect of delaying or preventing a change in control of our management. Each director will hold office for the term to which he or she is elected and until his or her successor is duly elected and qualifies. Our charter permits the board of directors to elect directors to fill vacancies that are created either through an increase in the number of directors or due to the resignation, removal or death of any director.

The following individuals currently serve on our board of directors:

Name	Age	Position	Director Since	Expiration of Term
Interested Directors:				
Edward H. Ross	52	Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer	2011	2020
Thomas C. Lauer	50	Director, President	2011	2019
Independent Directors:				
Raymond L. Anstiss, Jr.	51	Director	2011	2020
Charles D. Hyman	59	Director	2011	2018
John A. Mazzarino	65	Director	2012	2019

The address for each of our directors is c/o Fidus Investment Corporation, 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201.

Executive Officers Who Are Not Directors

Information regarding our executive officers who are not directors is as follows:

Name	Age	Position
Shelby E. Sherard	47	Chief Financial Officer, Chief Compliance Officer and Corporate Secretary

The address for each of our executive officers is c/o Fidus Investment Corporation, 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201.

Biographical Information

For purposes of this presentation, our directors have been divided into two groups—independent directors and interested directors. Interested directors are "interested persons" as defined in the 1940 Act.

Independent Directors

Raymond L. Anstiss, Jr. has served on our Board of Directors since September 2011 and is the chairman of our Audit and Compensation Committee ("Audit Committee") and a member of our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee ("Nominating Committee"). Mr. Anstiss is the President of Anstiss & Co., an accounting, audit, tax and financial consulting firm headquartered in Lowell, Massachusetts. Prior to joining Anstiss & Co. in 1993, Mr. Anstiss served on the audit staff of KPMG Peat Marwick from 1988 to 1992. Mr. Anstiss has served on the board of directors for several not-for-profit companies in the past five years.

Charles D. Hyman has served on our Board of Directors since our initial public offering in June 2011 and is the chairman of our Nominating Committee and a member of our Audit Committee. Mr. Hyman is the founder and chief executive officer of Charles D. Hyman & Co., a private, registered investment management firm located in Ponte Vedra Beach, Florida. Prior to forming Charles D. Hyman & Co. in 1994, Mr. Hyman served as a senior vice president of St. Johns Investment Management Company. Mr. Hyman has served on the board of directors for several not-for-profit companies in the past five years and currently serves on the board of Patriot Transportation Holding, Inc. (NASDAQ: PATI).

John A. Mazzarino has served on our Board of Directors since November, 2012 and is a member of our Audit Committee and our Nominating Committee. Mr. Mazzarino is a Co-Founder and Managing Director of Cherokee Investment Partners, a private equity real estate investment management firm focused on the acquisition, remediation, management and development of brownfields in North America and Europe. Prior to co-founding

Cherokee's predecessor firm in 1988, Mr. Mazzarino worked at Bain & Company from 1982 to 1988, where he specialized in mergers and acquisitions and corporate strategy. From 1977 to 1982 he worked at Peat, Marwick, Mitchell & Co., consulting on policy issues with the Environmental Protection Agency, the Department of Housing and Urban Development, the Department of Energy and other federal agencies. Mr. Mazzarino currently serves as a member of the board of advisors of the MIT Sloan School of Management and is a director of Cherokee Gives Back, Cherokee's philanthropic arm. In addition, Mr. Mazzarino is a member of five other private and not-for-profit company boards.

Interested Directors

Edward H. Ross has served as chairman of our board of directors and our chief executive officer, and as chairman of our Investment Advisor's investment committee, since our initial public offering in June 2011. Additionally, Mr. Ross is the chief executive officer and a manager of our Investment Advisor. Mr. Ross is an interested director due to his positions with the Company and our Investment Advisor. Mr. Ross has more than 25 years of debt and equity capital investing experience with lower middle-market companies. Mr. Ross co-founded Fidus Capital, LLC, the predecessor firm to our Investment Advisor, in 2005. From February 2007 to June 2011, Mr. Ross served as a member of the investment committee of Fidus Mezzanine Capital GP, LLC, Fund I's former general partner. From 2002 to 2005, Mr. Ross was a managing director and the head of the Chicago office for Allied Capital Corporation, a publicly-traded business development company, where he focused on making debt and equity investments in middle-market companies. Prior to joining Allied Capital Corporation, Mr. Ross co-founded Middle Market Capital, a merchant banking group of Wachovia Securities and its predecessor, First Union Securities, Inc., a retail brokerage and institutional capital markets and investment banking firm. Mr. Ross earned a bachelor of arts from Southern Methodist University and a master of business administration from the University of Notre Dame's Mendoza College of Business. Mr. Ross is the brother of John J. Ross, II, a manager of our Investment Advisor and a member of its investment committee.

Thomas C. Lauer has served as our director and as a member of our Investment Advisor's investment committee since our initial public offering in June 2011 and as our President since September 2016. Additionally, Mr. Lauer is a manager of our Investment Advisor. Mr. Lauer is an interested director due to his position with the Investment Advisor. Mr. Lauer has more than 25 years of experience investing debt and equity capital in lower middle-market companies. Mr. Lauer was a managing partner of Fidus Partners, LLC, an investment banking firm, from 2008 to June 2011. From 2004 to 2008, Mr. Lauer was a managing director of Allied Capital Corporation, a publicly-traded business development company, and member of that firm's Management Committee from 2006 to 2008, Private Finance Investment Committee from 2005 to 2008, and Senior Debt Fund Investment Committee from 2007 to 2008. Prior to joining Allied Capital Corporation, Mr. Lauer worked with the Global Sponsor Finance Group of GE Capital, the financial services unit of General Electric, the Leveraged Capital Group at Wachovia Securities and its predecessor, First Union Securities, Inc., a retail brokerage and institutional capital markets and investment banking firm, and the Platform Components Division of Intel Corporation. Mr. Lauer earned a bachelor of business administration from the University of Notre Dame and master of business administration from the University of Notre Dame's Mendoza College of Business.

Qualifications of Directors

When considering whether our directors have the experience, qualifications, attributes and skills, taken as a whole, to enable our board of directors to satisfy its oversight responsibilities effectively in light of our operational and organizational structure, the nominating and corporate governance committee and the board of directors focused primarily on the information discussed in each of the director's individual biographies set forth above and on the following particular attributes:

Interested Directors

- *Mr. Ross*: The Nominating Committee and the Board of Directors considered his familiarity with the Fidus investment platform, his significant experience with investing debt and equity capital in middle-market companies, and his broad experience with the day-to-day management and operation of other investment funds, which provides our Board of Directors with valuable investment and management experience, insight and perspective.

- *Mr. Lauer*: The Nominating Committee and the Board of Directors considered his experience with investing debt and equity capital in middle-market companies, which provides our Board of Directors with valuable investment knowledge, experience and insight.

Independent Directors

- *Mr. Anstiss*: The Nominating Committee and the Board of Directors considered his extensive experience in the accounting industry. In addition, Mr. Anstiss' accounting background was instrumental in his appointment to the chairmanship of our audit committee.
- *Mr. Hyman*: The Nominating Committee and the Board of Directors considered his extensive experience in the investment analysis, management, and advisory industries.
- *Mr. Mazzarino*: The Nominating Committee and the Board of Directors considered his extensive experience in the investing and capital management industry, as well as merger and acquisition and corporate strategy expertise.

Executive Officers Who Are Not Directors

Shelby E. Sherard has served as our chief financial officer and secretary since joining the Company on June 2, 2014 and chief compliance officer since August 11, 2014. Ms. Sherard has more than 20 years of finance experience most recently as a financial officer at Prologis, Inc., a leading owner, operator and developer of industrial real estate, first serving as Chief Financial Officer, Americas, and then overseeing the U.S. tax department. Previously, she served as the Finance Director for Chicago Union Station Development Company, LLC, a real estate development company. From 2005 through 2006, Ms. Sherard served as Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of Grubb & Ellis Company, a publicly-traded real estate services company. From 2002 through 2005, Ms. Sherard was the Chief Financial Officer and Senior Vice President of SiteStuff, Inc., a procurement solutions provider for the commercial real estate industry. Previously, Ms. Sherard held positions at Morgan Stanley, LaSalle Partners Inc. and Hewitt Associates, Inc. Ms. Sherard is a CPA and earned a bachelor's degree from Northwestern University, a master of business administration from the University of Pennsylvania's Wharton School and a master's degree in tax from the University of Illinois.

Organization of the Board of Directors

Our board of directors has established an audit and compensation committee, or audit committee, and a nominating and corporate governance committee. We do not have a separate compensation committee because our executive officers do not receive any direct compensation from us. During 2017, our board of directors held 19 meetings.

We encourage, but do not require, the directors to attend our annual meeting of stockholders. In 2017, all of our current directors attended all of the meetings of the board of directors and of the respective committees on which they served. All of our directors attended our 2017 Annual Meeting of Shareholders on June 15, 2017.

Board Leadership Structure

Our board of directors monitors and performs an oversight role with respect to our business and affairs. Among other things, our board of directors approves the appointment of our investment advisor, administrator and officers, reviews and monitors the services and activities performed by our investment advisor, administrator and officers and approves the engagement, and reviews the performance of, our independent registered public accounting firm.

Under our bylaws, our board of directors may designate a chairman to preside over the meetings of the board of directors and meetings of our stockholders and to perform such other duties as may be assigned to him by the board of directors. We do not have a fixed policy as to whether the chairman of our board of directors should be an independent director and believes that board of directors' flexibility to select its chairman and reorganize its leadership structure from time to time is in the best interests of the Company and our stockholders.

Presently, Mr. Ross serves as the chairman of our board of directors. Mr. Ross is an interested director because he is the chief executive officer of the Company, serves on our Investment Advisor's investment committee and is a manager of our Investment Advisor. We believe that Mr. Ross's history with the Company, familiarity with the Fidus investment platform and extensive experience in the management of private equity and debt investments qualifies him to serve as chairman of our board of directors. Moreover, our board of directors believes that it is in the best interests of our stockholders for Mr. Ross to lead our board of directors because of his broad experience with the day-to-day management and operation of other investment funds and his significant background in the financial services industry, as described above.

Our board of directors does not have a lead independent director. However, Mr. Anstiss, the chairman of the audit committee, is an independent director and acts as a liaison between the independent directors and management between meetings of our board of directors and is involved in the preparation of agendas for board and committee meetings. Our board of directors believes that its leadership structure is appropriate in light of the Company's characteristics and circumstances because the structure allocates areas of responsibility among the individual directors and the committees in a manner that encourages effective oversight. The members of our board of directors also believe that its small size creates a highly efficient governance structure that provides ample opportunity for direct communication and interaction between both the members of management and our investment advisor and our board of directors.

Board Role in Risk Oversight

Our board of directors performs its risk oversight function primarily through (a) its two standing committees, which report to the entire board of directors and are comprised solely of independent directors and (b) monitoring by our Chief Compliance Officer in accordance with its compliance policies and procedures.

As described below in more detail under "Audit Committee" and "Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee," the audit committee and the nominating and corporate governance committee assist the board of directors in fulfilling its risk oversight responsibilities. The audit committee's risk oversight responsibilities include overseeing our accounting and financial reporting processes, our systems of internal controls regarding finance and accounting and audits of our financial statements and discussing with management our major financial risk exposures and the steps management has taken to monitor and control such exposures, including our risk assessment and risk management policies. The nominating and corporate governance committee's risk oversight responsibilities include selecting, researching and nominating directors for election by our stockholders, developing and recommending to our board of directors a set of corporate governance principles and overseeing the evaluation of our board of directors and its committees. Both the audit committee and the nominating and corporate governance committee consist solely of independent directors.

Our board of directors also performs its risk oversight responsibilities with the assistance of the Chief Compliance Officer. Our Chief Compliance Officer prepares a written report annually discussing the adequacy and effectiveness of the compliance policies and procedures of the Company and certain of its service providers. The Chief Compliance Officer's report, which is reviewed by the board of directors, addresses at a minimum (a) the operation of the compliance policies and procedures of the Company and certain of its service providers since the last report; (b) any material changes to such policies and procedures since the last report; (c) any recommendations for material changes to such policies and procedures as a result of the Chief Compliance Officer's annual review; and (d) any compliance matter that has occurred since the date of the last report about which the board of directors would reasonably need to know to oversee the Company's compliance activities and risks. In addition, the Chief Compliance Officer meets separately in executive session with the independent directors periodically, but in no event less than once each year.

We believe that the board of directors' role in risk oversight is effective and appropriate given the extensive regulation to which it is already subject as a BDC. Specifically, as a BDC, we must comply with certain regulatory requirements that control the levels of risk in its business and operations. For example, our ability to incur indebtedness is limited such that our asset coverage must equal at least 200.0% immediately after each time we incurs indebtedness and we generally have to invest at least 70.0% of our total assets in "qualifying assets." In addition, we intend to maintain our status as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code. As a RIC we must, among other things, meet certain income source and asset diversification requirements.

We believe that the board of directors' existing role in risk oversight is appropriate. However, we re-examine the manners in which the board of directors administers its oversight function on an ongoing basis to ensure that it continues to meet our needs.

Board Committees

Audit and Compensation Committee

The members of the audit committee are Messrs. Anstiss, Hyman and Mazzarino, each of whom is not an interested person and is otherwise independent for purposes of the 1940 Act and NASDAQ's corporate governance regulations. Since September 2011, Mr. Anstiss has served as chairman of the audit committee. Our board of directors has adopted a charter for the audit committee, which is available on our website at *http://investor.fdus.com/governance.cfm*.

The audit committee is responsible for approving our independent accountants and recommending them to the board of directors (including a majority of the independent directors) for approval and submission to the board of directors for ratification, reviewing with our independent accountants the plans and results of the audit engagement, approving professional services provided by our accountants, reviewing the independence of our independent accountants and reviewing the adequacy of our internal accounting controls.

The audit committee is also responsible for aiding the board of directors in determining the fair value of debt and equity securities that are not publicly traded or for which current market values are not readily available. The audit committee also currently receives input from independent valuation firms that have been engaged at the direction of the board of directors to value certain portfolio investments. In addition, the audit committee is responsible for discussing with management our major financial risk exposures and the steps management has taken to monitor and control such exposures, including our risk assessment and risk management policies.

Because the Audit committee is charged with approving our related-party transactions, the board of directors has determined not to create a separate compensation committee and instead has charged the Audit Committee with overseeing amounts payable to our advisor pursuant to the Advisory Agreement and the Administration Agreement, and making a recommendation to the board of directors with respect to the board's approval (including the approval of a majority of the directors who are not "interested persons" of the Company within the meaning of Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act, as amended) of the renewal of the Advisory Agreement and the Administration Agreement.

The board of directors has determined that Mr. Anstiss is an "audit committee financial expert" within the meaning of the rules of the SEC. Mr. Anstiss acquired his financial expertise from his education and experience as a public accountant, his experience actively supervising financial officers of public companies and in his supervisory role at a public accounting firm and from his experience overseeing and assessing the performance of public accountants with respect to the preparation, auditing and evaluation of financial statements.

Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee

The members of the nominating and corporate governance committee are Messrs. Anstiss, Hyman and Mazzarino, each of whom is not an interested person and is otherwise independent for purposes of the 1940 Act and NASDAQ's corporate governance regulations. Mr. Hyman currently serves as chairman of the nominating and corporate governance committee. Our board of directors has adopted a charter for the nominating and corporate governance committee, which is available on our website at *http://investor.fdus.com/governance.cfm.*

The nominating and corporate governance committee is responsible for selecting, researching and nominating directors for election by our stockholders, selecting nominees to fill vacancies on the board of directors or a committee of the board of directors, developing and recommending to the board of directors a set of corporate governance principles and overseeing the evaluation of the board of directors and its committees.

The nominating and corporate governance committee identifies potential nominees based on suggestions from members of the nominating and corporate governance committee, other members of the board of directors, other executive officers and by other means, and evaluates such persons as a committee. The nominating and corporate governance committee will also consider nominees to the board of directors recommended by a stockholder, if such stockholder complies with the advance notice provisions of our bylaws. From time to time, the board of directors may determine that it requires a director with a particular expertise or qualification and will actively recruit such a candidate.

In considering which persons to nominate as directors for election by stockholders, the board of directors and its nominating and corporate governance committee consider the experience, qualifications, attributes and skills of candidates, in light of the Company's then existing business and structure. Additionally, the committee generally will hire an outside firm to perform a background check on potential nominees. On an annual basis, the nominating and corporate governance committee evaluates the qualifications and diversity of the board of directors who are available for reelection in light of the characteristics of independence, age, skills, experience, availability of service to the Company and tenure of its members, and the board of directors' anticipated needs. The nominating and corporate governance committee has adopted a policy that it will seek to enhance the perspectives and experiences of the members of the board of directors through diversity in gender, ethnic background, geographic origin and professional experience. The nominating and corporate governance committee recommends to the board of directors for its approval the slate of directors to be nominated for election at the annual meeting of our stockholders. The board of directors and its nominating and corporate governance committee periodically review board composition and the policies with respect thereto and as part of this review, the nominating and corporate governance committee evaluates the effectiveness of its policies, including the provisions with respect to diversity.

In considering possible candidates for nomination as a director, the nominating and corporate governance committee takes into account, in addition to such other factors as it deems relevant, the desirability of selecting directors who:

- have strength of character;
- have mature judgment;
- have industry knowledge or experience; and
- have an ability to work collegially with the other members of the board of directors.

The nominating and corporate governance committee also considers all applicable legal and regulatory requirements that govern the composition of the board of directors.

All nominees properly submitted to the Company (or which the nominating and corporate governance committee otherwise elects to consider) will be evaluated and considered by the members of the nominating and corporate governance committee using the same criteria as nominees identified by the nominating and corporate governance committee itself.

Executive Sessions and Communication with the Board of Directors

The independent directors serving on our board of directors intend to meet in executive sessions at the conclusion of each regularly scheduled meeting of the board of directors, and additionally as needed, without the presence of any directors or other persons who are part of the Company's management. These executive sessions of our board of directors will be presided over by Mr. Anstiss or one of the other independent directors serving on the board of directors selected on an ad-hoc basis.

Communications Between Stockholders and the Board of Directors

Stockholders with questions about us are encouraged to contact Shelby E. Sherard at Fidus Investment Corporation, 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201. However, if stockholders feel their questions have not been addressed, they may communicate with our board of directors by sending their communications to: Fidus Investment Corporation, board of directors, c/o Shelby E. Sherard at the address listed above. In addition, stockholders may communicate with the board of directors by clicking "Contact the Board" on the Investor Relations section of our website at the following URL: *http://investor.fdus.com/contactBoard.com*. Communications are distributed to the board of directors as appropriate, depending on the facts and circumstances outlined in the communication. In that regard, the board of directors has requested that certain items that are unrelated to the duties and responsibilities of the board of directors should be excluded, such as: product complaints, product inquiries, new product suggestions, resumes and other forms of job inquiries, surveys and business solicitations or advertisements. In addition, material that is unduly hostile, threatening, illegal or similarly unsuitable will be excluded, with the provision that any communication that is filtered out must be available to any non-management director upon request.

Code of Business Conduct

We have adopted a code of ethics (which we refer to as our Code of Business Conduct) which all officers, directors and employees of the Company and our investment advisor are expected to observe. Our Code of Business Conduct can be accessed via the Company's website at *http://investor.fdus.com/governance.cfm*. We intend to disclose any amendments to or waivers of required provisions of the Code of Business Conduct on our website. We will provide any person, without charge, upon request, a copy of our Code of Business Conduct. To receive a copy, please provide a written request to: Fidus Investment Corporation, Attn: Chief Compliance Officer, 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201.

Compensation of Directors

The following table shows information regarding the compensation received by our directors, none of whom is an employee of the Company, for the year ended December 31, 2017. No compensation is paid by us to interested directors. No information has been provided with respect to our executive officers who are not directors since our executive officers do not receive any direct compensation from us.

Name	Fees Earned or Paid in Cash(1)	Total
Independent Directors		
Raymond L. Anstiss, Jr.	$ 91,000	$91,000
Charles D. Hyman	$ 86,000	$86,000
John A. Mazzarino	$ 81,000	$81,000
Interested Directors		
Edward H. Ross	None	None
Thomas C. Lauer	None	None

(1) For a discussion of the independent directors' compensation, see below.

The independent directors receive an annual fee of $50,000. They receive $5,000 plus reimbursement of reasonable and authorized business expenses incurred in connection with attending each quarterly meeting and the annual meeting. In addition, the chairperson of the audit committee receives an additional annual fee of $10,000 and the chairperson of the nominating and corporate governance committee receives an additional annual fee of $5,000 for his or her additional services in these capacities. They also receive $1,500 per each additional Audit Committee meeting to review quarterly investment valuations.

Compensation of Executive Officers

None of our executive officers receive direct compensation from us. The compensation of our chief financial officer and chief compliance officer, is paid by our investment advisor. Compensation paid to our chief financial officer and chief compliance officer is set by our investment advisor and subject to reimbursement by us of an allocable portion of such compensation for services rendered to us.

Investment Committee

Our Investment Advisor has formed an investment committee to evaluate and approve all of our investments and those made by the Funds. The investment committee process is intended to bring the diverse experience and perspectives of the committees' members to the analysis and consideration of each investment. The investment committee also serves to provide investment consistency and adherence to our Investment Advisor's core investment philosophy and policies. The investment committee meets regularly to consider our investments, direct our strategic initiatives and supervise the actions taken by our Investment Advisor on our behalf. The investment committee determines appropriate investment sizing and suggest ongoing monitoring requirements. In addition, the investment committee reviews and determines whether to make prospective investments identified by our Investment Advisor and monitors the performance of our investment portfolio.

The members of the investment committee that evaluate and approve all of our investments are Edward H. Ross, Thomas C. Lauer, John H. Grigg, Robert G. Lesley, Jr., John J. Ross, II, and W. Andrew Worth.

Information regarding members of the investment committee is as follows:

John J. Ross, II has served as a member of our Investment Advisor's investment committee since our initial public offering in June 2011. Additionally, Mr. Ross has served as a manager of our Investment Advisor since June 2011. Mr. Ross has over 25 years of experience advising clients on mergers and acquisitions. From February 2007 to June 2011, Mr. Ross served as a member of the investment committee of Fidus Mezzanine Capital GP, LLC, the Fund's former general partner. In 2004, Mr. Ross co-founded Fidus Partners, LLC, an investment banking firm. Prior to co-founding Fidus Partners, LLC, Mr. Ross served as a managing director at Wachovia Securities and its predecessors, First Union Securities, Inc. and Bowles Hollowell Conner & Co, from 1999 to 2002. Mr. Ross earned a bachelor of science from Southern Methodist University and a master of business administration from the Harvard Business School. Mr. Ross is the brother of Edward H. Ross, our chairman of the board and chief executive officer, and chairman of the investment committee.

John H. Grigg has served as a member of our Investment Advisor's investment committee since our initial public offering in June 2011and as a senior origination professional of our Investment Advisor since June 2011. Mr. Grigg has over 25 years of experience advising clients on mergers and acquisitions. From February 2007 to June 2011, Mr. Grigg served as a member of the investment committee of Fidus Mezzanine Capital GP, LLC, the Fund's former general partner. In 2004, Mr. Grigg co-founded Fidus Partners, LLC, an investment banking firm. Prior to co-founding Fidus Partners, LLC, Mr. Grigg served as managing director and partner at First Union Securities, Inc. and its predecessor, Bowles Hollowell Conner & Co., from 1989 to 2000. Prior to joining Bowles Hollowell Conner & Co., Mr. Grigg worked in the investment banking group of Merrill Lynch & Co. Mr. Grigg earned a bachelor of arts from the University of North Carolina and a master of business administration from the University of Virginia's Darden School of Business.

W. Andrew Worth has served as a member of our Investment Advisor's investment committee since our initial public offering in June 2011. Additionally, Mr. Worth has served as a manager of our Investment Advisor since June 2011. Mr. Worth has over 20 years of experience investing in debt and equity securities of lower middle-market companies. In 2008, Mr. Worth joined Fidus Capital, LLC, the predecessor firm to our investment advisor. Prior to joining Fidus Capital, LLC in 2008, Mr. Worth served as a principal with Allied Capital Corporation from 2002 to 2008, where he was responsible for all aspects of the investment process including origination, execution and portfolio management. From 1996 to 2002, Mr. Worth was an associate in Credit Suisse First Boston's Global Industrials and Services investment banking practice and an analyst in the Leveraged Finance Group of First Union Securities, Inc. Mr. Worth earned a bachelor of arts from the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill and a master of business administration from the University of Chicago Graduate School of Business.

Robert G. Lesley has served as a member of the investment committee since January 2015. Prior to joining Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC in 2013, Mr. Lesley was a partner at Chapter IV Investors, a middle-market hybrid investment firm with approximately a $270 million fund. Chapter IV's flexible investment charter allowed for investment in both the private (control and minority equity) and public markets. From 2003 to 2007, Mr. Lesley was a vice president with Blue Point Capital Partners, a private equity firm focused on lower middle-market companies. From 2000 to 2003, Robert was an associate in the Mergers & Acquisitions Group of Wachovia Securities and its predecessor, First Union Securities, Inc. Mr. Lesley earned a bachelor of arts in economics from the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill and a masters of business administration from the Kellogg Graduate School of Management at Northwestern University.

Senior Origination Professionals

The following individuals are the senior origination professionals of our investment advisor. Brief summaries of the backgrounds of these individuals, who are not also members of the investment committee, are provided below:

Edward P. Imbrogno has served as a senior origination professional of our investment advisor since June 2011. Mr. Imbrogno has over 30 years of experience advising clients on mergers and acquisitions. In 2006, Mr. Imbrogno joined Fidus Capital, LLC, the predecessor firm to our investment advisor, as a senior investment professional. In 2004, Mr. Imbrogno co-founded Fidus Partners, LLC, an investment banking firm. Prior to co-founding Fidus Partners, LLC, Mr. Imbrogno served as a managing director and partner at Wachovia Securities and its predecessors, First Union Securities, Inc. and Bowles Hollowell Conner & Co, from 1985 to 2004. Mr. Imbrogno also served as the head of Wachovia Securities' private equity group coverage effort from 1998 to 2002. Mr. Imbrogno earned a bachelor of arts from Davidson College and a master of business administration from the University of Virginia's Darden School of Business.

J. Stephen Dockery has served as a senior origination professional of our investment advisor since June 2011. Mr. Dockery has over 20 years of experience advising clients on mergers and acquisitions and corporate finance transactions. In 2006, Mr. Dockery joined Fidus Capital, LLC, the predecessor firm to our investment advisor, as a senior investment professional and joined Fidus Partners, LLC, an investment banking firm. Prior to joining Fidus Capital and Fidus Partners, Mr. Dockery served in various capacities at Wachovia Securities and its predecessors, First Union Securities, Inc. and Bowles Hollowell Conner & Co., including managing director and officer from 1997 to 2006. Prior to joining Bowles Hollowell Conner & Co., Mr. Dockery worked as a corporate attorney for Robinson Bradshaw & Hinson, P.A. Mr. Dockery earned a bachelor of arts from Davidson College and a juris doctor from Yale Law School.

Michael J. Miller has served as a senior origination professional of our investment advisor since June 2011. Mr. Miller has over 25 years of leveraged finance and corporate lending and origination experience. In 2010, Mr. Miller joined Fidus Capital, LLC, the predecessor firm to our investment advisor, as a senior investment professional and joined Fidus Partners, LLC, an investment banking firm. Prior to joining Fidus Capital and Fidus Partners, Mr. Miller served in various capacities, including managing director and head of business development, at Allied Capital Corporation from 2005 until 2010. Prior to joining Allied Capital Corporation, Mr. Miller spent more than 16 years with JPMorgan Chase and its predecessors where he worked in their middle-market leveraged finance, asset based and corporate lending groups. Mr. Miller earned his bachelor of science in industrial and labor relations from Cornell University and his master of business administration from The Stern School at New York University.

Portfolio Management

We will only invest in an opportunity with the approval of four of the six members of the investment committee responsible for advising the Company and the Funds. Generally, an investment opportunity will receive the unanimous approval of the respective investment committee. Follow-on investments in existing portfolio companies require the relevant investment committee's approval in addition to what was obtained when the initial investment in the company was made. In addition, temporary investments, such as those in cash equivalents, U.S. government securities and other high quality debt investments that mature in one year or less, may require approval by the relevant investment committee. The day-to-day management of investments approved by the investment committee will be overseen by the members of the relevant investment committee. Biographical information with respect to the members of the investment committee is set out under "—Investment Committee."

Each of our advisor's investment committee members has ownership and financial interests in, and may receive compensation and/or profit distributions from, our investment advisor. Each of the members of the investment committee will receive compensation and/or profit distributions from our investment advisor. None of the members of the investment committee receives any direct compensation from us. The following table shows the dollar range of our common stock beneficially owned by each member of our investment advisor's investment committees as of February 27, 2018:

Members of our Investment Advisor's Investment Committee	Dollar Range of Equity Securities in Fidus Investment Corporation (1)
Edward H. Ross	Over $1,000,000
Thomas C. Lauer	$500,001-$1,000,000
John J. Ross, II	Over $1,000,000
W. Andrew Worth	$500,001-$1,000,000
John H. Grigg	$100,001-$500,000
Robert G. Lesley	$50,001-$100,000

(1) Dollar ranges are as follows: None, $1-$10,000, $10,001-$50,000, $50,001-$100,000, $100,001-$500,000; $500,001-$1,000,000 or Over $1,000,000.

MANAGEMENT AND OTHER AGREEMENTS

Our investment advisor is located at 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201. Our investment advisor is registered as an investment adviser under the Advisers Act. Subject to the overall supervision of our board of directors and in accordance with the 1940 Act, our investment advisor manages our day-to-day operations and provides investment advisory services to us. Under the terms of the Investment Advisory Agreement, our investment advisor:

- determines the composition of our portfolio, the nature and timing of the changes to our portfolio and the manner of implementing such changes;
- assists us in determining what securities we purchase, retain or sell;
- identifies, evaluates and negotiates the structure of the investments we make (including performing due diligence on our prospective portfolio companies); and
- executes, closes, services and monitors the investments we make.

Investment Advisory Agreement

Management Fee

Pursuant to the Investment Advisory Agreement, we pay our investment advisor a fee for investment advisory and management services consisting of two components — a base management fee and an incentive fee.

Base Management Fee

The base management fee is calculated at an annual rate of 1.75% based on the average value of our total assets (other than cash or cash equivalents but including assets purchased with borrowed amounts) at the end of the two most recently completed calendar quarters, and appropriately adjusted for any share issuances or repurchases during the current calendar quarter. Base management fees for any partial quarter are appropriately prorated. The base management fee is payable quarterly in arrears.

Incentive Fee

The incentive fee consists of two parts. The first part is calculated and payable quarterly in arrears based on our pre-incentive fee net investment income for the immediately preceding calendar quarter. Pre-incentive fee net investment income means interest income, dividend income and any other income (including any other fees such as commitment, origination, structuring, diligence and consulting fees or other fees that we receive from portfolio companies but excluding fees for providing managerial assistance) accrued during the calendar quarter, minus operating expenses for the quarter (including the base management fee, any expenses payable under the Administration Agreement and any interest expense and dividends paid on any outstanding preferred stock, but excluding the incentive fee and excise taxes on realized gains). Pre-incentive fee net investment income includes, in the case of investments with a deferred interest feature (such as market discount, debt instruments with payment-in-kind interest, preferred stock with payment-in-kind dividends and zero-coupon securities), accrued income that we have not yet received in cash. Our investment advisor is not under any obligation to reimburse us for any part of the incentive fee it receives that was based on accrued interest that we never actually receive.

Pre-incentive fee net investment income does not include any realized capital gains, realized capital losses or unrealized capital appreciation or depreciation. Because of the structure of the incentive fee, it is possible that we may pay an incentive fee for a quarter where we incur a loss. For example, if we receive pre-incentive fee net investment income in excess of the hurdle rate (as defined below) for a quarter, we will pay the applicable incentive fee even if we have incurred a loss in that quarter due to realized and unrealized capital losses.

Pre-incentive fee net investment income, expressed as a rate of return on the value of our weighted average net assets (defined as total assets less indebtedness and before taking into account any incentive fees payable during the period) at the end of the immediately preceding calendar quarter, is compared to a fixed "hurdle rate" of 2.0% per quarter. If market interest rates rise, we may be able to invest our funds in debt instruments that provide for a higher return, which would increase our pre-incentive fee net investment income and make it easier for our investment advisor to surpass the fixed hurdle rate and receive an incentive fee based on such net investment income.

We pay our investment advisor an incentive fee with respect to our pre-incentive fee net investment income earned in each calendar quarter as follows:

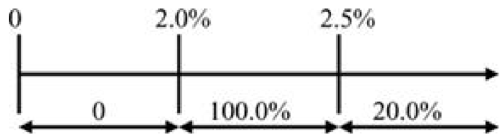
- no incentive fee in any calendar quarter in which the pre-incentive fee net investment income does not exceed the hurdle rate of 2.0%;
- 100.0% of our pre-incentive fee net investment income with respect to that portion of such pre-incentive fee net investment income, if any, that exceeds the hurdle rate but is less than 2.5% in any calendar quarter. We refer to this portion of our pre-incentive fee net investment income (that exceeds the hurdle rate but is less than 2.5%) as the "catch-up" provision. The catch-up is meant to provide our investment advisor with 20.0% of the pre-incentive fee net investment income as if a hurdle rate did not apply if net investment income exceeds 2.5% in any calendar quarter; and
- 20.0% of the amount of our pre-incentive fee net investment income, if any, that exceeds 2.5% in any calendar quarter.

These calculations are appropriately prorated for any period of less than three months and adjusted for any share issuances or repurchases during the current quarter.

The following is a graphical representation of the calculation of the quarterly income-related portion of the incentive fee:

<u>Quarterly Incentive Fee Based on Pre-Incentive Fee Net Investment Income</u>

Pre-incentive fee net investment income
(expressed as a percentage of the value of net assets)



Percentage of pre-incentive fee net investment income
allocated to income-related portion of incentive fee

The second part of the incentive fee is a capital gains incentive fee that is determined and paid in arrears as of the end of each fiscal year (or, upon termination of the Investment Advisory Agreement, as of the termination date), and equals 20.0% of our net capital gains as of the end of the fiscal year. In determining the capital gains incentive fee to be paid to our investment advisor, we calculate the cumulative aggregate realized capital gains and cumulative aggregate realized capital losses since the IPO, and the aggregate unrealized capital depreciation as of the date of the calculation, as applicable, with respect to each of the investments in our portfolio. At the end of the applicable year, the amount of capital gains that serves as the basis for our calculation of the capital gains incentive fee equals the cumulative aggregate realized capital gains less cumulative aggregate realized capital losses, less aggregate unrealized capital depreciation, with respect to our portfolio of investments. If this number is positive at the end of such year, then the capital gains incentive fee for such year equals 20.0% of such amount, less the aggregate amount of any capital gains incentive fees paid in respect of our portfolio in all prior years. We accrue, but do not pay, a capital gains incentive fee in connection with any unrealized capital appreciation, as appropriate.

Examples of Quarterly Incentive Fee Calculation

Example 1: Income Related Portion of Incentive Fee

Alternative 1

Assumptions

Investment income (including interest, dividends, fees, etc.) = 1.25%

Hurdle rate (1) = 2.0%

Management fee (2) = 0.4375%

Other expenses (administrative service expenses, legal, accounting, custodian, transfer agent, etc.) (3) = 0.2%

Pre-incentive fee net investment income
(investment income – (management fee + other expenses)) = 0.6125%

Pre-incentive fee net investment income does not exceed hurdle rate, therefore there is no income-related incentive fee.

Alternative 2

Assumptions

Investment income (including interest, dividends, fees, etc.) = 2.9%

Hurdle rate (1) = 2.0%

Management fee (2) = 0.4375%

Other expenses (administrative service expenses, legal, accounting, custodian, transfer agent, etc.) (3) = 0.2%

Pre-incentive fee net investment income
(investment income – (management fee + other expenses)) = 2.2625%

Incentive fee	= 100.0% × pre-incentive fee net investment income (subject to “catch-up”) (4) = 100.0% × (2.2625% – 2.0%) = 0.2625%

Pre-incentive fee net investment income exceeds the hurdle rate, but does not fully satisfy the “catch-up” provision, therefore the income related portion of the incentive fee is 0.2625%.

Alternative 3

Assumptions

Investment income (including interest, dividends, fees, etc.) = 3.5%

Hurdle rate (1) = 2.0%

Management fee (2) = 0.4375%

Other expenses (administrative service expenses, legal, accounting, custodian, transfer agent, etc.) (3) = 0.2%

Pre-incentive fee net investment income
(investment income – (management fee + other expenses)) = 2.8625%
Incentive fee = 100.0% × pre-incentive fee net investment income (subject to “catch-up”) (4)
Incentive fee = 100.0% × “catch-up” + (20.0% × (pre-incentive fee net investment income – 2.5%))

“Catch-up”	= 2.5% – 2.0% = 0.5%
Incentive fee	= (100.0% × 0.5%) + (20.0% × (2.8625% – 2.5%)) = 0.5% + (20.0% × 0.3625%) = 0.5% + 0.0725% = 0.5725%

Pre-incentive fee net investment income exceeds the hurdle rate and fully satisfies the “catch-up” provision, therefore the income related portion of the incentive fee is 0.5725%.

---

(1) Represents 8.0% annualized hurdle rate.
(2) Represents 1.75% annualized base management fee.
(3) Excludes organizational and offering expenses.
(4) The “catch-up” provision is intended to provide our investment advisor with an incentive fee of 20.0% on all pre-incentive fee net investment income as if a hurdle rate did not apply when our net investment income exceeds 2.5% in any fiscal quarter.

Example 2: Capital Gains Portion of Incentive Fee(*):

Alternative 1

Assumptions

Year 1 : $5.0 million investment made in Company A (“Investment A”), and $7.5 million investment made in Company B (“Investment B”)

Year 2 : Investment A sold for $12.5 million and fair market value (“FMV”) of Investment B determined to be $8.0 million

Year 3 : FMV of Investment B determined to be $6.25 million

Year 4 : Investment B sold for $7.75 million

The capital gains portion of the incentive fee would be:

Year 1 : None

Year 2 : Capital gains incentive fee of $1.5 million — ($7.5 million realized capital gains on sale of Investment A multiplied by 20.0%)

Year 3 : None — $1.25 million (20.0% multiplied by ($7.5 million cumulative capital gains less $1.25 million cumulative capital depreciation)) less $1.5 million (previous capital gains fee paid in Year 2)

Year 4 : Capital gains incentive fee of $50,000 — $1.55 million ($7.75 million cumulative realized capital gains multiplied by 20.0%) less $1.5 million (capital gains incentive fee taken in Year 2)

Alternative 2

Assumptions

Year 1 : $4.0 million investment made in Company A (“Investment A”), $7.5 million investment made in Company B (“Investment B”) and $6.25 million investment made in Company C (“Investment C”)

Year 2 : Investment A sold for $12.5 million, FMV of Investment B determined to be $6.25 million and FMV of Investment C determined to be $6.25 million

Year 3 : FMV of Investment B determined to be $6.75 million and Investment C sold for $7.5 million

Year 4 : FMV of Investment B determined to be $8.75 million

Year 5 : Investment B sold for $5.0 million

The capital gains incentive fee, if any, would be:

Year 1 : None

Year 2 : $1.45 million capital gains incentive fee — 20.0% multiplied by $7.25 million ($8.5 million realized capital gains on Investment A less $1.25 million unrealized capital depreciation on Investment B)

Year 3 : $0.35 million capital gains incentive fee (1) — $1.8 million (20.0% multiplied by $9.0 million ($9.75 million cumulative realized capital gains less $0.75 million unrealized capital depreciation)) less $1.45 million capital gains incentive fee received in Year 2

Year 4 : None

Year 5 : None — $1.45 million (20.0% multiplied by $7.25 million (cumulative realized capital gains of $9.75 million less realized capital losses of $2.5 million)) is less than $1.8 million cumulative capital gains incentive fee paid in Year 2 and Year 3 (2)

---

* The hypothetical amounts of returns shown are based on a percentage of our total net assets and assume no leverage. There is no guarantee that positive returns will be realized and actual returns may vary from those shown in this example. The examples shown pertain to the capital gains portion of the incentive fee payable at the end of the fiscal year. We accrue, but do not pay, a capital gains incentive fee in connection with any unrealized capital appreciation, as appropriate.

(1) As illustrated in Year 3 of Alternative 2 above, if we were to be dissolved on a date other than our fiscal year end of any year, we may have paid aggregate capital gains incentive fees that are more than the amount of such fees that would be payable if we had been dissolved on our fiscal year end of such year.

(2) As noted above, it is possible that the cumulative aggregate capital gains fee received by our investment advisor ($1.8 million) is effectively greater than $1.45 million (20.0% of cumulative aggregate realized capital gains less net realized capital losses or net unrealized depreciation ($7.25 million)).

Payment of Our Expenses

All investment professionals of our investment advisor and/or its affiliates, when and to the extent engaged in providing investment advisory and management services to us, and the compensation and routine overhead expenses of personnel allocable to these services to us, are provided and paid for by our investment advisor and not by us. We bear all other out-of-pocket costs and expenses of our operations and transactions. See “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations – Overview – Expenses.”

Duration and Termination

At an in-person meeting of our board of directors on June 1, 2017, our board of directors, including a majority of the Independent Directors, unanimously voted to approve the continuation of the Investment Advisory Agreement to June 20, 2018. Unless terminated earlier, the Investment Advisory Agreement will automatically renew for successive annual periods if approved annually by our board of directors or by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of our outstanding voting securities (as that term is defined in the 1940 Act), including, in either case, approval by a majority of the Independent Directors.

In reaching a decision to approve the current Investment Advisory Agreement, our board of directors reviewed information comparing our investment performance to other externally managed BDCs with similar investment objectives and to appropriate market indices. The board also reviewed other information and considered, among other things:

- the nature, extent and quality of the advisory and other services (including administrative services provided under the Administrative Agreement as discussed below) provided to us by our investment advisor;
- the fee structure of comparative externally managed BDCs with similar investment objectives;
- our projected operating expenses and expense ratio compared to BDCs with similar investment objectives;
- our investment advisor’s pro forma profitability with respect to managing us and providing administrative services under the Administrative Agreement;
- the limited potential for our investment advisor and its affiliates to derive additional “fall-out” benefits as a result of our relationship with our investment advisor; and
- various other matters.

Our board of directors did not rank or otherwise assign relative weights to the specific factors it considered in connection with its evaluation of the Investment Advisory Agreement, nor did it undertake to make any specific determination as to whether any particular factor, or any aspect of any particular factor, was favorable or unfavorable to the ultimate decision made by our board of directors. Rather, our board of directors based its approval of the Investment Advisory Agreement on the totality of information presented to it. In considering the factors discussed above, individual directors may have given different weights to different factors.

Based on the information reviewed and the factors discussed above, our board of directors (including the Independent Directors) concluded that the terms of the Investment Advisory Agreement, including the fee rates thereunder, are fair and reasonable in relation to the services provided and approved the continuation of the Investment Advisory Agreement as being in the best interests of FIC and our stockholders.

Conflicts of interest may arise if our investment advisor seeks to change the terms of the Investment Advisory Agreement, including, for example, the amount of the base management fee, the incentive fee or other compensation terms. In general, material amendments to the Investment Advisory Agreement must be approved by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of our outstanding voting securities (as that term is defined in the 1940 Act) and by a majority of our Independent Directors.

See "Risk Factors – Risks Relating to our Business and Structure – We are dependent upon our investment advisor's managing members and our executive officers for our future success. If our investment advisor was to lose any of its managing members or we lose any of our executive officers, our ability to achieve our investment objective could be significantly harmed."

Indemnification

The Investment Advisory Agreement provides that, absent willful misconduct, bad faith or gross negligence in the performance of its duties under the Investment Advisory Agreement or by reason of the reckless disregard of its duties and obligations under the Investment Advisory Agreement, our investment advisor and its affiliates, and their respective officers, directors, members, managers, partners, stockholders and employees, are entitled to indemnification from us from and against any claims or liabilities, including reasonable legal fees and other expenses reasonably incurred, arising out of or in connection with our investment advisor's performance of its duties and obligations under the Investment Advisory Agreement or otherwise as our investment advisor.

Administration Agreement

Pursuant to the Administration Agreement, Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC acts as our administrator and furnishes us with office facilities and equipment and clerical, book-keeping and record-keeping services at such facilities. Under the Administration Agreement, our investment advisor performs, or oversees the performance of, our required administrative services, which include being responsible for the financial records that we are required to maintain and preparing reports to our stockholders and reports filed with the SEC. In addition, our investment advisor assists us in determining and publishing our net asset value, overseeing the preparation and filing of our tax returns and the printing and dissemination of reports to our stockholders, and generally overseeing the payment of our expenses and the performance of administrative and professional services rendered to us by others. Under the Administration Agreement, our investment advisor also provides managerial assistance on our behalf to those portfolio companies that have accepted our offer to provide such assistance and we reimburse our Investment Advisor for fees and expenses incurred with providing such services. In addition, we reimburse our Investment Advisor for fees and expenses incurred while performing due diligence on our prospective portfolio companies, including "dead deal" costs for potential investments which are ultimately not pursued. Payments under the Administration Agreement are equal to an amount based upon our allocable portion of our investment advisor's overhead in performing its obligations under the Administration Agreement, including rent and our allocable portion of the cost of our officers, including our chief financial officer and chief compliance officer and their respective staffs. To the extent that our investment advisor outsources any of its functions, we will pay the fees associated with such functions on a direct basis without profit to our investment advisor.

At an in-person meeting of our board of directors on June 1, 2017, our board of directors, including a majority of the Independent Directors, unanimously voted to approve the continuation of the Administration Agreement to June 20, 2018. Unless terminated earlier, the Administration Agreement will automatically renew for successive annual periods if approved annually by our board of directors or by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of our outstanding voting securities (as that term is defined in the 1940 Act), including, in either case, approval by a majority of our Independent Directors. In making the decision to approve the continuation of the Administration Agreement, our board of directors took into account, to the extent relevant, certain information set forth above under "Investment Advisory Agreement – Duration and Termination" with respect to its consideration of the Investment Advisory Agreement.

The Administration Agreement may be terminated by either party without penalty upon 60 days' written notice to the other party. The holders of a majority of our outstanding voting securities (as that term is defined in the 1940 Act) may also terminate the Administration Agreement without penalty.

Indemnification

The Administration Agreement provides that, absent willful misconduct, bad faith or gross negligence in the performance of its duties under the Administration Agreement or by reason of the reckless disregard of its duties and obligations under the Administration Agreement, our investment advisor and its affiliates, and their respective officers, directors, members, managers, stockholders and employees, are entitled to indemnification from us from and against any claims or liabilities, including reasonable legal fees and other expenses reasonably incurred, arising out of or in connection with our investment advisor's performance of its duties or obligations under the Administration Agreement or otherwise as our administrator.

License Agreement

We have entered into a license agreement with Fidus Partners, LLC under which Fidus Partners, LLC has agreed to grant us a non-exclusive (provided that there is not a change in control of Fidus Partners, LLC), royalty-free license to use the name "Fidus." Under this agreement, we have a right to use the "Fidus" name for so long as our investment advisor remains our investment advisor. Other than with respect to this limited license, we have no legal right to the "Fidus" name. This license agreement will remain in effect for so long as the Investment Advisory Agreement with our investment advisor remains in effect.

CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS

Investment Advisory Agreement

Under the Investment Advisory Agreement with our investment advisor, we pay our investment advisor a management fee and incentive fee that consists of an income incentive fee and a capital gains incentive fee. The incentive fee is computed and paid on income that we may not have yet received in cash. This fee structure may create an incentive for our investment advisor to invest in certain types of securities that may have a high degree of risk. Additionally, we rely on investment professionals from our investment advisor to assist our board of directors with the valuation of our portfolio investments. Our investment advisor's management fee and incentive fee are based on the value of our investments and there may be a conflict of interest when personnel of our investment advisor are involved in the valuation process for our portfolio investments. The base management fee under the Investment Advisory Agreement for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 totaled $9.8 million, $8.3 million and $7.5 million, respectively. The income incentive fee expense for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 totaled $8.9 million, $7.4 million and $6.6 million, respectively. During the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, we accrued (reversed) capital gains incentive fees of $2.1, $3.0, and $(0.1), respectively.

Mr. E. Ross is the chairman of the board of directors of the Company and the Funds, as well as the chairman of our investment advisor's investment committees and the chief executive officer of our investment advisor. The board of managers of our investment advisor, the manager of Fidus Investment GP, LLC, the general partner of the Funds, currently controls the Funds. The following people are members of the board of managers of our investment advisor: Messrs. E. Ross, Lauer, J. Ross and Andrew W. Worth. Officers and members of the board of managers of our investment advisor receive a benefit from the fees paid to our investment advisor pursuant to the Investment Advisory Agreement. Our board of directors, including a majority of the Independent Directors has approved the Investment Advisory Agreement, including the fees paid pursuant to such agreement.

Administration Agreement

Pursuant to the Administration Agreement, Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC acts as our administrator and furnishes us with office facilities and equipment and clerical, book-keeping and record-keeping services at such facilities. Under the Administration Agreement, our investment advisor performs, or oversees the performance of, our required administrative services, which include being responsible for the financial records that we are required to maintain and preparing reports to our stockholders and reports filed with the SEC. In addition, our investment advisor assists us in determining and publishing our net asset value, overseeing the preparation and filing of our tax returns and the printing and dissemination of reports to our stockholders, and generally overseeing the payment of our expenses and the performance of administrative and professional services rendered to us by others. Under the Administration Agreement, our investment advisor also provides managerial assistance on our behalf to those portfolio companies that have accepted our offer to provide such assistance. Payments under the Administration Agreement are equal to an amount based upon our allocable portion of our investment advisor's overhead in performing its obligations under the Administration Agreement, including rent and our allocable portion of the cost of our officers, including our chief financial officer and chief compliance officer and their respective staffs. To the extent that our investment advisor outsources any of its functions, we will pay the fees associated with such functions on a direct basis without profit to our investment advisor. Under the administration agreement, administrative expenses for services provided for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 totaled \$1.4 million, \$1.4 million and \$1.5 million, respectively.

Conflicts of Interest

Our investment advisor currently manages Fidus Credit Opportunities, L.P. and Fidus Equity Opportunities Fund, L.P., each, a Delaware limited partnership, each of which has an investment objective and investment policies that are substantially similar to those of the Company, and may in the future manage investment vehicles with similar or overlapping investment strategies. Our investment advisor has put in place a conflict-resolution policy that addresses the co-investment restrictions set forth under the 1940 Act and the allocation of investment opportunities. The 1940 Act generally prohibits us from making certain negotiated co-investments with affiliates unless we first obtain an order from the SEC permitting us to do so. On March 27, 2012, the SEC granted us an order for exemptive relief to allow us to take certain actions that would otherwise be prohibited by the 1940 Act, as applicable to BDCs. In particular, this relief permitted Fidus Investment Corporation and Fidus Mezzanine Capital, L.P. to operate effectively as one company by specifically allowing them to engage in certain transactions with each other and invest in securities in which the other is or proposes to be an investor. On June 2, 2014, we received an amended exemptive order that extended the previous granted relief to apply to Fidus Mezzanine Capital II, L.P. and any future subsidiary of Fidus Investment Corporation.

We, Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC, the Funds, and Fidus Credit Opportunities, L.P. applied for exemptive relief from the SEC under the 1940 Act to expand our ability to co-invest in portfolio companies with certain of our affiliates managed by our investment advisor in a manner consistent with our investment objective, positions, policies, strategies and restrictions as well as regulatory requirements and other pertinent factors. Pursuant to the Order, we are permitted to co-invest with our affiliates if a "required majority" (as defined in Section 57(o) of the 1940 Act) or our independent directors make certain conclusions in connection with a co-investment transaction, including that (1) the terms of the transactions, including the consideration to be paid, are reasonable and fair to us and our stockholders and do not involve overreaching by us or our stockholders on the part of any person concerned and (2) the transaction is consistent with the interests of our stockholders and is consistent with our investment objective and strategies. We intend to co-invest, subject to the conditions included in the Order.

Where co-investments can be made, or where an investment opportunity becomes available to one investment vehicle managed by our investment advisor, then an equitable allocation must be made with respect to the investment. Our investment advisor will seek to ensure the equitable allocation of investment opportunities when we invest alongside other accounts managed by our investment advisor. When we invest alongside such other accounts as permitted, such investments will be made consistent with our investment advisor's allocation policy. The allocation policy provides that allocations among us and other accounts will be based on certain factors determined by our investment advisor, including but not limited to: (1) the targeted asset mix and diversification requirements and other investment policies and restrictions for the entity, including those imposed by the entities organizational documents, policies, applicable laws, rules, regulations or interpretations; (2) the risk and return profile for the entity; (3) the suitability/priority of a particular investment for the entity; (4) if applicable, the target position size of the investment for the entity; and (5) the level of available cash for investment with respect to the particular entity.

Certain members of our investment advisor and its investment committee are also members of Fidus Partners, LLC, a merchant banking firm. Fidus Partners, LLC may in the future serve as an advisor to our portfolio companies and we may invest in companies that Fidus Partners, LLC is advising. Fidus Partners, LLC may receive fees in connection with these advisory services, subject to regulatory restrictions imposed by the 1940 Act.

In addition, Edward H. Ross, our Chairman and Chief Executive Officer and Thomas C. Lauer, one of our directors, are managers of Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC. In May 2015, Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC entered into a combination with Fidus Partners, LLC (the “Combination”), by which members of Fidus Investment Advisors LLC and Fidus Partners, LLC (“Partners”) contributed all of their respective membership interest in Fidus Investment Advisors LLC and Partners to a newly formed limited liability company, Fidus Group Holdings, LLC (“Holdings”). As a result, Fidus Investment Advisors LLC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Holdings, which is a newly formed limited liability company organized under the laws of Delaware.

Table of Contents

CONTROL PERSONS AND PRINCIPAL STOCKHOLDERS

The following table sets forth information with respect to the beneficial ownership of our common stock as of March 1, 2018 by each of our executive officers and independent directors and all of our directors and executive officers as a group. As of March 1, 2018, we are not aware of any 5.0% beneficial owners of our common stock, nor are we aware of any person who controls us, "control" being defined as the beneficial ownership of more than 25.0% of our common stock.

Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the SEC and includes voting or investment power with respect to the securities. There is no common stock subject to options or warrants that are currently exercisable or exercisable within 60 days of March 1, 2018. Percentage of beneficial ownership is based on 24,507,940 shares of common stock outstanding as of March 1, 2018. The business address of each person below is 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201.

Name and Address	Number of Shares Beneficially Owned (1)	Percentage of Class	Dollar Range of Equity Securities Beneficially Owned(2)(3)
Interested Directors:			
Edward H. Ross	167,955	*	over $100,000
Thomas C. Lauer	70,600	*	over $100,000
Independent Directors:			
Raymond L. Anstiss, Jr. (4)	12,256	*	over $100,000
Charles D. Hyman	21,700	*	over $100,000
John A. Mazzarino	11,946	*	over $100,000
Executive Officers Who Are Not Directors:			
Shelby E. Sherard	3,435	*	under $100,000
All Directors and Executive Officers as a Group	287,892	1.2%	over $100,000

* Represents less than 1.0%.

(1) Beneficial ownership has been determined in accordance with Rule 13d-3 of the Exchange Act.

(2) Beneficial ownership has been determined in accordance with Rule 16a-1(a)(2) of the Exchange Act.

(3) The dollar range of equity securities beneficially owned by our directors is based on a stock price of $12.95 per share as of February 27, 2018.

(4) Includes 5,246 shares held by Anstiss & Co., P.C. 401(k) Profit Sharing Trust, 2,000 shares held by Mr. Anstiss's son and 2,000 shares held by Mr. Anstiss's daughter. Mr. Anstiss has discretionary voting and investment power over the 5,246 shares held by Anstiss & Co., P.C. 401(k) Profit Sharing Trust, the 2,000 shares held by his son and the 2,000 shares held by his daughter.

SALES OF COMMON STOCK BELOW NET ASSET VALUE

On June 15, 2017, our stockholders approved our ability to sell or otherwise issue shares of our common stock at a discount from net asset value per share for a period of one year ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. We expect to present to our stockholders a similar proposal at our 2018 Annual meeting of Stockholders. In order to sell shares pursuant to this authorization a majority of our directors who have no financial interest in the sale or issuance and a majority of our independent directors must (a) find that the sale or issuance is in our best interests and in the best interests of our stockholders, and (b) in consultation with any underwriter or underwriters of the offering, make a good faith determination as of a time either immediately prior to the first solicitation by us or on our behalf of firm commitments to purchase such shares, or immediately prior to the issuance of such shares, that the price at which such shares are to be sold or otherwise issued is not less than a price which closely approximates the market value of such shares, less any distributing commission or discount. It should be noted that the maximum number of shares issuable below net asset value pursuant to this authority that could result in such dilution is limited to 25% of the Company's then outstanding common stock immediately prior to each such sale. Any offering of common stock below net asset value per share will be designed to raise capital for investment in accordance with our investment objective.

In making a determination that an offering below net asset value per share is in our and our stockholders' best interests, our board of directors would consider a variety of factors including:

- The effect that an offering below net asset value per share would have on our stockholders, including the potential dilution they would experience as a result of the offering;
- The amount per share by which the offering price per share and the net proceeds per share are less than the most recently determined net asset value per share;
- The relationship of recent market prices of our common stock to net asset value per share and the potential impact of the offering on the market price per share of our common stock;
- Whether the estimated offering price would closely approximate the market value of our shares;
- The potential market impact of being able to raise capital during the current financial market difficulties;
- The nature of any new investors anticipated to acquire shares in the offering;
- The anticipated rate of return on and quality, type and availability of investments; and
- The leverage available to us.

Sales or other issuances by us of our common stock at a discount from net asset value pose potential risks for our existing stockholders whether or not they participate in the offering, as well as for new investors who participate in the offering.

The following three headings and accompanying tables will explain and provide hypothetical examples on the impact of an offering at a price less than net asset value per share on three different set of investors:

- existing stockholders who do not purchase any shares in the offering;
- existing stockholders who purchase a relative small amount of shares in the offering or a relatively large amount of shares in the offering; and
- new investors who become stockholders by purchasing shares in the offering.

Impact On Existing Stockholders Who Do Not Participate in the Offering

Our existing stockholders who do not participate in an offering below net asset value per share or who do not buy additional shares in the secondary market at the same or lower price we obtain in the offering (after expenses and commissions) face the greatest potential risks. These stockholders will experience an immediate decrease (often called dilution) in the net asset value of the shares they hold and their net asset value per share. These stockholders will also experience a disproportionately greater decrease in their participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than the increase we will experience in our assets, potential earning power and voting interests due to the offering. These stockholders may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential increases and decreases in net asset value per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and level of discounts increases.

The following table illustrates the level of net asset value dilution that would be experienced by a nonparticipating stockholder in three different hypothetical offerings of different sizes and levels of discount from net asset value per share, although it is not possible to predict the level of market price decline that may occur. Actual sales prices and discounts may differ from the presentation below.

The examples assume that Company XYZ has 1,000,000 shares of common stock outstanding, $15,000,000 in total assets and $5,000,000 in total liabilities. The current net asset value and net asset value per share are thus $10,000,000 and $10.00. The table illustrates the dilutive effect on nonparticipating Stockholder A of (1) an offering of 50,000 shares (5.0% of the outstanding shares) at $9.50 per share after offering expenses and commission (a 5.0% discount from net asset value), (2) an offering of 100,000 shares (10.0% of the outstanding shares) at $9.00 per share after offering expenses and commissions (a 10.0% discount from net asset value) and (3) an offering of 200,000 shares (20.0% of the outstanding shares) at $8.00 per share after offering expenses and commissions (a 20.0% discount from net asset value). The acronym “NAV” stands for “net asset value.”

		Example 1 5.0% Offering At 5.0% Discount		Example 2 10.0% Offering At 10.0% Discount		Example 3 20.0% Offering At 20.0% Discount	
Period	Prior to Sale Below NAV	Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change
Offering Price							
Price per Share to Public	—	$ 10.00	—	$ 9.47	—	$ 8.42	—
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer	—	$ 9.50	—	$ 9.00	—	$ 8.00	—
Increase (Decrease) to NAV							
Total Shares Outstanding	1,000,000	1,050,000	5.00%	1,100,000	10.00%	1,200,000	20.00%
NAV per Share	$ 10.00	$ 9.98	(0.24)%	$ 9.91	(0.91)%	$ 9.67	(3.33)%
(Dilution) Accretion to Stockholder							
Shares Held by Stockholder A	10,000	10,000	—	10,000	—	10,000	—
Percentage Held by Stockholder A	1.0%	0.95%	(4.76)%	0.91%	(9.09)%	0.83%	(16.67)%
Total Asset Values							
Total NAV Held by Stockholder A	$ 100,000	$ 99,762	(0.24)%	$ 99,091	(0.91)%	$ 96,667	(3.33)%
Total Investment by Stockholder A (Assumed to Be $10.00 per Share)	$ 100,000	$ 100,000	—	$ 100,000	—	$ 100,000	—
Total (Dilution) Accretion to Stockholder A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)	—	$ (238)	—	$ (909)	—	$ (3,333)	—
Per Share Amounts							
NAV per Share Held by Stockholder A	—	$ 9.98	—	$ 9.91	—	$ 9.67	—
Investment per Share Held by Stockholder A (Assumed to be $10.00 per Share)	$ 10.00	$ 10.00	—	$ 10.00	—	$ 10.00	—
(Dilution) Accretion per Share Held by Stockholder A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)	—	$ (0.02)	—	$ (0.09)	—	$ (0.33)	—
Percentage (Dilution) Accretion to Stockholder A (Dilution per Share Divided by Investment per Share)	—	—	(0.24)%	—	(0.91)%	—	(3.33)%

Impact On Existing Stockholders Who Do Participate in the Offering

Our existing stockholders who participate in an offering below net asset value per share or who buy additional shares in the secondary market at the same or lower price as we obtain in the offering (after expenses and commissions) will experience the same types of net asset value dilution as the nonparticipating stockholders, albeit at a lower level, to the extent they purchase less than the same percentage of the discounted offering as their interest in our shares immediately prior to the offering. The level of net asset value dilution will decrease as the number of shares such stockholders purchase increases. Existing stockholders who buy more than such percentage will experience net asset value dilution but will, in contrast to existing stockholders who purchase less than their proportionate share of the offering, experience an increase (often called accretion) in net asset value per share over their investment per share and will also experience a disproportionately greater increase in their participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than our increase in assets, potential earning power and voting interests due to the offering. The level of accretion will increase as the excess number of shares such stockholder purchases increases. Even a stockholder who over participates will, however, be subject to the risk that we may make additional discounted offerings in which such stockholder does not participate, in which case such a stockholder will experience net asset value dilution as described above in such subsequent offerings. These stockholders may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential increases and decreases in net asset value per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and the level of discounts increases.

The following table illustrates the level of dilution and accretion in the hypothetical 20.0% discount offering from the prior table (Example 3) for a stockholder that acquires shares equal to (1) 50.0% of its proportionate share of the offering (i.e., 1,000 shares, which is 0.5% of an offering of 200,000 shares) rather than its 1.0% proportionate share and (2) 150% of such percentage (i.e. 3,000 shares, which is 1.5% of an offering of 200,000 shares rather than its 1.0% proportionate share). The prospectus supplement pursuant to which any discounted offering is made will include a table for these examples based on the actual number of shares in such offering and the actual discount from the most recently determined net asset value per share. It is not possible to predict the level of market price decline that may occur. Actual sales prices and discounts may differ from the presentation below.

		50.0% Participation		150.0% Participation	
Period	**Prior to Sale Below NAV**	**Following Sale**	**% Change**	**Following Sale**	**% Change**
Offering Price					
Price per Share to Public	—	$ 8.42	—	$ 8.42	—
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer	—	$ 8.00	—	$ 8.00	—
Increase (Decrease) to NAV					
Total Shares Outstanding	1,000,000	1,200,000	20.00%	1,200,000	20.00%
NAV per Share	$ 10.00	$ 9.67	(3.33)%	$ 9.67	(3.33)%
(Dilution) Accretion to Stockholder					
Shares Held by Stockholder A	10,000	11,000	10.00%	13,000	30.00
Percentage Held by Stockholder A	1.0%	0.92%	(8.33)%	1.08%	8.33%
Total Asset Values					
Total NAV Held by Stockholder A	$ 100,000	$ 106,333	6.33%	$ 125,667	25.67%
Total Investment by Stockholder A (Assumed to Be $10.00 per Share)	$ 100,000	$ 108,421	—	$ 125,263	—
Total (Dilution) Accretion to Stockholder A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)	—	$ (2,088)	—	$ 404	—
Per Share Amounts					
NAV per Share Held by Stockholder A	—	$ 9.67	—	$ 9.67	—
Investment per Share Held by Stockholder A (Assumed to be $10.00 per Share)	$ 10.00	$ 9.86	—	$ 9.64	—
(Dilution) Accretion per Share Held by Stockholder A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)	—	$ (0.19)	—	$ 0.03	—
Percentage (Dilution) Accretion to Stockholder A (Dilution per Share Divided by Investment per Share)	—	—	(1.93)%	—	0.32%

Impact On New Investors

Investors who are not currently stockholders and who participate in an offering below net asset value but whose investment per share is greater than the resulting net asset value per share due to selling compensation and expenses paid by the issuer will experience an immediate decrease, albeit small, in the net asset value of their shares and their net asset value per share compared to the price they pay for their shares. Investors who are not currently stockholders and who participate in an offering below net asset value per share and whose investment per share is also less than the resulting net asset value per share due to selling compensation and expenses paid by the issuer being significantly less than the discount per share will experience an immediate increase in the net asset value of their shares and their net asset value per share compared to the price they pay for their shares. These investors will experience a disproportionately greater participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than our increase in assets, potential earning power and voting interests. These investors will, however, be subject to the risk that we may make additional discounted offerings in which such new stockholder does not participate, in which case such new stockholder will experience dilution as described above in such subsequent offerings. These investors may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential increases and decreases in net asset value per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and level of discounts increases.

The following table illustrates the level of dilution or accretion for new investors that would be experienced by a new investor in the same hypothetical 5.0%, 10.0% and 20.0% discounted offerings as described in the first table above. The illustration is for a new investor who purchases the same percentage (1.0%) of the shares in the offering as Stockholder A in the prior examples held immediately prior to the offering. The prospectus supplement pursuant to which any discounted offering is made will include a table for these examples based on the actual number of shares in such offering and the actual discount from the most recently determined net asset value per share. It is not possible to predict the level of market price decline that may occur. Actual sales prices and discounts may differ from the presentation below.

		Example 1 5.0% Offering At 5.0% Discount		Example 2 10.0% Offering At 10.0% Discount		Example 3 20.0% Offering At 20.0% Discount	
Period	**Prior to Sale Below NAV**	**Following Sale**	**% Change**	**Following Sale**	**% Change**	**Following Sale**	**% Change**
Offering Price							
Price per Share to Public	—	$ 10.00	—	$ 9.47	—	$ 8.42	—
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer	—	$ 9.50	—	$ 9.00	—	$ 8.00	—
(Decrease) Increase to NAV							
Total Shares Outstanding	1,000,000	1,050,000	5.00%	1,100,000	10.00%	1,200,000	20.00%
NAV per Share	$ 10.00	$ 9.98	(0.24)%	$ 9.91	(0.91)%	$ 9.67	(3.33)%
(Dilution) Accretion to Stockholder							
Shares Held by Investor A	—	500	—	1,000	—	2,000	—
Percentage Held by Investor A	— %	0.05%	— %	0.09%	— %	0.17%	— %
Total Asset Values							
Total NAV Held by Investor A	$ —	$ 4,988	— %	$ 9,909	— %	$ 19,333	— %
Total Investment by Investor A (At Price to Public)	$ —	$ 5,000	—	$ 9,474	—	$ 16,842	—
Total (Dilution) Accretion to Investor A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)	—	$ (12)	—	$ 435	—	$ 2,491	—
Per Share Amounts							
NAV per Share Held by Investor A	—	$ 9.98	—	$ 9.91	—	$ 9.67	—
Investment per Share Held by Investor A	$ —	$ 10.00	—	$ 9.47	—	$ 8.42	—
(Dilution) Accretion per Share Held by Investor A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)	—	$ (0.02)	—	$ 0.44	—	$ 1.25	—
Percentage (Dilution) Accretion to Investor A (Dilution per Share Divided by Investment per Share)	—	—	(0.24)%	—	4.60%	—	14.79%

DIVIDEND REINVESTMENT PLAN

We have adopted a dividend reinvestment plan that provides for reinvestment of our distributions on behalf of our stockholders, unless a stockholder elects to receive cash as provided below. As a result, if our board of directors authorizes, and we declare, a cash distribution, then our stockholders who have not “opted out” of our dividend reinvestment plan will have their cash distribution automatically reinvested in additional shares of our common stock, rather than receiving the cash distribution.

No action is required on the part of a registered stockholder to have their cash distribution reinvested in shares of our common stock. A registered stockholder may elect to receive an entire distribution in cash by notifying American Stock Transfer & Trust, LLC, the plan administrator and our transfer agent and registrar, in writing so that such notice is received by the plan administrator no later than two days prior to the payment date for distributions to stockholders. The plan administrator will set up an account for shares acquired through the plan for each stockholder who has not elected to receive distributions in cash and hold such shares in non-certificated form. Upon request by a stockholder participating in the plan, received in writing not less than three days prior to the payment date, the plan administrator will, instead of crediting shares to and/or carrying shares in the participant's account, issue a certificate registered in the participant's name for the number of whole shares of our common stock and a check for any fractional share.

Those stockholders whose shares are held by a broker or other financial intermediary may receive distributions in cash by notifying their broker or other financial intermediary of their election.

We intend to use primarily newly issued shares to implement the plan, so long as our shares are trading at or above net asset value. If our shares are trading below net asset value, we intend to purchase shares in the open market in connection with our implementation of the plan. The number of shares to be issued to a stockholder is determined by dividing the total dollar amount of the distribution payable to such stockholder by the market price per share of our common stock at the close of regular trading on the Nasdaq Global Select Market on the valuation date fixed for such distribution. Market price per share on that date will be the closing price for such shares on the Nasdaq Global Select Market or, if no sale is reported for such day, at the average of their reported bid and asked prices. The number of shares of our common stock to be outstanding after giving effect to payment of the distribution cannot be established until the value per share at which additional shares will be issued has been determined and elections of our stockholders have been tabulated.

There will be no brokerage charges or other charges to stockholders who participate in the plan. The plan administrator's fees will be paid by us. If a participant elects by written notice to the plan administrator to have the plan administrator sell part or all of the shares held by the plan administrator in the participant's account and remit the proceeds to the participant, the plan administrator is authorized to deduct a $15.00 transaction fee plus a $0.10 per share brokerage commissions from the proceeds.

Stockholders who receive distributions in the form of stock are subject to the same U.S. federal, state and local tax consequences as are stockholders who elect to receive their distributions in cash; however, since their cash distributions will be reinvested, such stockholders will not receive cash with which to pay any applicable taxes on reinvested distributions. A stockholder's basis for determining gain or loss upon the sale of stock received in a distribution from us will be equal to the total dollar amount of the distribution payable to the stockholder. Any stock received in a distribution will have a new holding period for tax purposes commencing on the day following the day on which the shares are credited to the U.S. stockholder's account.

Participants may terminate their accounts under the plan by notifying the plan administrator via its website at *www.amstock.com* or by filling out the transaction request form located at bottom of their statement and sending it to the plan administrator.

The plan may be terminated by us upon notice in writing mailed to each participant at least 30 days prior to any record date for the payment of any distribution by us. All correspondence concerning the plan should be directed to the plan administrator by mail at Post Office Box 922, Wall Street Station, New York, New York 10269-0560, or by the Plan Administrator's Interactive Voice Response System at 1-877-573-4005.

If you withdraw or the plan is terminated, you will receive the number of whole shares in your account under the plan and a cash payment for any fraction of a share in your account.

If you hold your common stock with a brokerage firm that does not participate in the plan, you will not be able to participate in the plan, and any distribution reinvestment may be effected on different terms than those described above. Consult your financial advisor for more information.

MATERIAL U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS

The following discussion is a general summary of the material U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to us and to an investment in shares of our common stock. This summary does not purport to be a complete description of the income tax considerations applicable to us or to investors in such an investment. For example, we have not described tax consequences that we assume to be generally known by investors or certain considerations that may be relevant to certain types of holders subject to special treatment under U.S. federal income tax laws, including stockholders subject to the alternative minimum tax, tax-exempt organizations, insurance companies, dealers in securities, pension plans and trusts, financial institutions, U.S. stockholders (as defined below) whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar, persons who mark-to-market our shares and persons who hold our shares as part of a “straddle,” “hedge” or “conversion” transaction. This summary assumes that investors hold shares of our common stock as capital assets (within the meaning of the Code). The discussion is based upon the Code, U.S. Department of Treasury regulations, (“Treasury Regulations”), and administrative and judicial interpretations, each as of the date of this prospectus and all of which are subject to change, possibly retroactively, which could affect the continuing validity of this discussion. We have not sought and do not intend to seek any ruling from the Internal Revenue Service, or the IRS, regarding any offer and sale of our securities under this prospectus. This summary does not discuss any aspects of U.S. estate or gift tax or foreign, state or local tax. It does not discuss the special treatment under U.S. federal income tax laws that could result if we invested in tax-exempt securities or certain other investment assets.

For purposes of our discussion, a “U.S. stockholder” means a beneficial owner of shares of our common stock that is for U.S. federal income tax purposes:

- a citizen or individual resident of the United States;
- a corporation, or other entity treated as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, created or organized in or under the laws of the United States or any state thereof or the District of Columbia;
- an estate, the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source; or
- a trust if (1) a U.S. court is able to exercise primary supervision over the administration of such trust and one or more U.S. persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (2) it has a valid election in place to be treated as a U.S. person.

For purposes of our discussion, a “Non-U.S. stockholder” means a beneficial owner of shares of our common stock that is neither a U.S. stockholder nor a partnership (including an entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes).

If a partnership (including an entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes) holds shares of our common stock, the tax treatment of a partner or member of the partnership will generally depend upon the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. Each partner in a partnership that is considering acquiring shares of our common stock should consult his, her or its tax advisors with respect to the purchase, ownership and disposition of shares of our common stock.

Tax matters are very complicated and the tax consequences to an investor of an investment in our shares will depend on the facts of his, her or its particular situation. We encourage investors to consult their own tax advisors regarding the specific consequences of such an investment, including tax reporting requirements, the applicability of U.S. federal, state, local and foreign tax laws, eligibility for the benefits of any applicable tax treaty and the effect of any possible changes in the tax laws.

Taxation in Connection with Holding Securities other than our Common Stock

We intend to describe in any prospectus supplement related to the offering of preferred stock, subscription rights, debt securities, or warrants to purchase our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities, the U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to such securities as will be sold by us pursuant to that prospectus supplement, including the taxation of any debt securities that will be sold at an original issue discount, and the tax treatment of sales, exchanges or retirements of our debt securities.

Election to be Taxed as a RIC

We have elected to be treated as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code. As a RIC, we generally will not be subject to corporate-level U.S. federal income taxes on any income that we distribute to our stockholders. To maintain our tax status as a RIC, we must, among other things, meet certain source-of-income and asset diversification requirements (as described below). In addition, in order to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC, we must distribute to our stockholders, for each taxable year, at least 90.0% of our "investment company taxable income," which is generally our net ordinary income plus the excess, if any, of realized net short-term capital gain over realized net long-term capital loss, or the Annual Distribution Requirement. Depending on the level of taxable income earned in a tax year, we may choose to carry forward taxable income in excess of current year distributions into the next tax year and pay a 4.0% excise tax on such income. In such case, we must distribute any such carryover taxable income through a distribution declared prior to filing the final tax return for the year in which we generated such taxable income. Even if we maintain our status as a RIC, we generally will be subject to corporate-level U.S. federal income tax on our undistributed taxable income and could be subject to U.S. federal excise, state, local and foreign taxes.

Taxation as a RIC

Provided that we maintain our status as a RIC and satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement, we will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the portion of our investment company taxable income and net capital gain (which is defined as net long-term capital gain in excess of net short-term capital loss) that we timely distribute to stockholders as dividends. We will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at the regular corporate rates on any income or capital gain not distributed (or deemed distributed) to our stockholders.

We will be subject to a 4.0% nondeductible U.S. federal excise tax on certain undistributed income unless we distribute in a timely manner an amount at least equal to the sum of (1) 98.0% of our investment company taxable income for each calendar year, (2) 98.2% of our capital gain net income for the one-year period ending October 31 in that calendar year (or, if we so elect, for that calendar year) and (3) any income recognized, but not distributed, in the preceding calendar year and on which we paid no U.S. federal income tax.

In order to maintain our status as a RIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes, we must, among other things:

- continue to qualify as a BDC or be registered as a management investment company under the 1940 Act at all times during each taxable year;
- derive in each taxable year at least 90.0% of our gross income from dividends, interest, payments with respect to certain securities loans, gains from the sale or other disposition of stock or other securities or foreign currencies, other income derived with respect to our business of investing in such stock, securities or currencies and net income derived from an interest in a "qualified publicly traded partnership" (as defined in Subchapter M of the Code), or the 90% Income Test; and
- diversify our holdings so that at the end of each quarter of the taxable year:
    - at least 50.0% of the value of our assets consists of cash, cash equivalents, U.S. Government securities, securities of other RICs, and other securities if such other securities of any one issuer do not represent more than 5.0% of the value of our assets or more than 10.0% of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer (which for these purposes includes the equity securities of a "qualified publicly traded partnership"); and
    - no more than 25.0% of the value of our assets is invested in the securities, other than U.S. Government securities or securities of other RICs, (i) of one issuer (ii) of two or more issuers that are controlled, as determined under applicable tax rules, by us and that are engaged in the same or similar or related trades or businesses or (iii) of one or more "qualified publicly traded partnerships," or the Diversification Tests.

To the extent that we invest in entities treated as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes (other than a "qualified publicly traded partnership"), we generally must include our allocable share of the items of gross income derived by the partnerships for purposes of the 90% Income Test, and the income that is derived from a partnership (other than, a "qualified publicly traded partnership") will be treated as qualifying income for purposes of the 90% Income Test only to the extent that such income is attributable to items of income of the partnership which would be qualifying income if realized by us directly. In addition, we generally must take into account our proportionate share of the assets held by partnerships (other than a "qualified publicly traded partnership") in which we are a partner for purposes of the Diversification Tests.

In order to meet the 90% Income Test, we have established several special purpose corporations, and in the future may establish additional such corporations, to hold assets from which we do not anticipate earning dividends, interest or other qualifying income under the 90% Income Test (the "Taxable Subsidiaries"). Any investments held through the Taxable Subsidiaries are generally subject to U.S. federal income and other taxes, and therefore we can expect to achieve a reduced after-tax yield on such investments.

We may be required to recognize taxable income in circumstances in which we do not receive a corresponding payment in cash. For example, if we hold debt instruments that are treated under applicable tax rules as having OID or debt instruments with PIK interest, we must include in income each year a portion of the OID that accrues over the life of the instrument and PIK interest, regardless of whether cash representing such income is received by us in the same taxable year. We may also have to include in income other amounts that we have not yet received in cash, such as deferred loan origination fees that are paid after origination of the loan or are paid in non-cash compensation such as warrants or stock. We anticipate that a portion of our income may constitute OID or other income required to be included in taxable income prior to our receipt of cash.

Because any OID or other amounts accrued will be included in our investment company taxable income for the year of the accrual, we may be required to make a distribution to our stockholders in order to satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement, even though we will not have received any corresponding cash amount. As a result, we may have difficulty meeting the Annual Distribution Requirement. We may have to sell some of our investments at times and/or at prices we would not consider advantageous, raise additional debt or equity capital or forgo new investment opportunities for this purpose. If we are not able to obtain cash from other sources, we may fail to qualify for RIC tax treatment and thus become subject to corporate-level income tax.

Furthermore, a portfolio company in which we invest may face financial difficulty that requires us to work-out, modify or otherwise restructure our investment in the portfolio company. Any such restructuring may result in unusable capital losses and future non-cash income. Any restructuring may also result in our recognition of a substantial amount of non-qualifying income for purposes of the 90% Income Test, such as cancellation of indebtedness income in connection with the work-out of a leveraged investment (which, while not free from doubt, may be treated as non-qualifying income) or the receipt of other non-qualifying income.

Gain or loss realized by us from warrants acquired by us as well as any loss attributable to the lapse of such warrants generally will be treated as capital gain or loss. Such gain or loss generally will be long-term or short-term, depending on how long we held a particular warrant.

Investments by us in non-U.S. securities may be subject to non-U.S. income, withholding and other taxes, and therefore, our yield on any such securities may be reduced by such non-U.S. taxes. Stockholders will generally not be entitled to claim a credit or deduction with respect to non-U.S. taxes paid by us.

Although we do not presently expect to do so, we are authorized to borrow funds and to sell assets in order to satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement and to avoid corporate-level U.S. federal income tax and the 4.0% U.S. federal excise tax. However, under the 1940 Act, we are not permitted to make distributions to our stockholders while our debt obligations and other senior securities are outstanding unless certain "asset coverage" tests are met. See "Regulation — Qualifying Assets" and "Regulation — Senior Securities." Moreover, our ability to dispose of assets to satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement and to avoid corporate-level U.S. federal income tax and the 4.0% U.S. federal excise tax may be limited by (1) the illiquid nature of our portfolio and (2) other requirements relating to our status as a RIC, including the Diversification Tests. If we dispose of assets in order to meet the Annual Distribution Requirement or to avoid corporate-level U.S. federal income tax or the 4.0% U.S. federal excise tax, we may make such dispositions at times that, from an investment standpoint, are not advantageous.

If we fail to satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement or otherwise fail to qualify as a RIC in any taxable year, unless certain cure provisions apply, we will be subject to tax in that year on all of our taxable income, regardless of whether we make any distributions to our stockholders. In that case, all of such income will be subject to corporate-level U.S. federal income tax, reducing the amount available to be distributed to our stockholders. See "— Failure To Qualify as a RIC" below.

As a RIC, we are not allowed to carry forward or carry back a net operating loss for purposes of computing our investment company taxable income in other taxable years. U.S. federal income tax law generally permits a RIC to carry forward (i) the excess of its net short-term capital loss over its net long-term capital gain for a given year as a short-term capital loss arising on the first day of the following year and (ii) the excess of its net long-term capital loss over its net short-term capital gain for a given year as a long- term capital loss arising on the first day of the following year. However, future transactions in which we may engage could cause our ability to use any capital loss carryforwards, and unrealized losses once realized, to be limited under Section 382 of the Code.

Certain of our investment practices may be subject to special and complex U.S. federal income tax provisions that may, among other things, (i) disallow, suspend or otherwise limit the allowance of certain losses or deductions, (ii) convert lower taxed long-term capital gain and qualified dividend income into higher taxed short-term capital gain or ordinary income, (iii) convert an ordinary loss or a deduction into a capital loss (the deductibility of which is more limited), (iv) cause us to recognize income or gain without a corresponding receipt of cash, (v) adversely affect the time as to when a purchase or sale of stock or securities is deemed to occur, (vi) adversely alter the characterization of certain complex financial transactions, and (vii) produce income that will not be qualifying income for purposes of the 90% Income Test. We will monitor our transactions and may make certain tax elections in order to mitigate the effect of these provisions.

As described above, to the extent that we invest in equity securities of entities that are treated as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes, the effect of such investments for purposes of the 90% Income Test and the Diversification Tests will depend on whether or not the partnership is a "qualified publicly traded partnership" (as defined in Subchapter M of the Code). If the partnership is a "qualified publicly traded partnership," the net income derived from such investments will be qualifying income for purposes of the 90% Income Test and will be "securities" for purposes of the Diversification Tests. If the partnership, however, is not treated as a "qualified publicly traded partnership," then the consequences of an investment in the partnership will depend upon the amount and type of income and assets of the partnership allocable to us. The income derived from such investments may not be qualifying income for purposes of the 90% Income Test and, therefore, could adversely affect our qualification as a RIC. We intend to monitor our investments in equity securities of entities that are treated as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes to prevent our disqualification as a RIC.

We may invest in preferred securities or other securities the U.S. federal income tax treatment of which may not be clear or may be subject to recharacterization by the IRS. To the extent the tax treatment of such securities or the income from such securities differs from the expected tax treatment, it could affect the timing or character of income recognized, requiring us to purchase or sell securities, or otherwise change our portfolio, to comply with the tax rules applicable to RICs under Subchapter M of the Code.

We may make distributions that are payable in cash or shares of our stock at the election of each stockholder. In accordance with Treasury regulations and published guidance issued by the Internal Revenue Service, a publicly offered RIC may treat distributions of its own stock as counting towards its RIC distribution requirements if each stockholder may elect to receive his, her, or its entire distribution in either cash or stock of the RIC. This published guidance applies even if the aggregate amount of cash available to be distributed to all stockholders is no more than 20% of the aggregate declared distribution. Under the published guidance, if too many stockholders elect to receive their distributions in cash, the cash available for distribution must be allocated among the shareholders electing to receive cash (with the balance of the distribution paid in stock). If we decide to make any distributions that are payable in part in shares of our stock, U.S. stockholders receiving such distributions will be required to include the full amount of the distribution (whether received in cash, shares of our stock, or a combination thereof) as ordinary income (or as long-term capital gain to the extent such distribution is properly reported as a capital gain dividend) to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits. As a result, a U.S. stockholder may be required to pay tax with respect to such distributions in excess of any cash received. If a U.S. stockholder sells the stock it receives in order to pay this tax, the sales proceeds may be less than the amount included in income with respect to the distribution, depending on the market price of our stock at the time of the sale. Furthermore, with respect to non-U.S. stockholders, we may be required to withhold U.S. federal tax with respect to such distributions, including in respect of all or a portion of such distributions that are payable in stock. In addition, if a significant number of our stockholders determine to sell shares of our stock in order to pay taxes owed on such distributions, it may put downward pressure on the trading price of shares of our stock.

We may decide to retain some or all of our long-term capital gains in excess of the amount required to satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement, but designate the retained amount as a "deemed distribution." In that case, among other consequences, we will pay tax on the retained amount on behalf of the stockholders. Each U.S. stockholder will be required to include his, her or its share of the deemed distribution in income as if it had been actually distributed to the U.S. stockholder, and the stockholder will be entitled to claim a credit equal to his, her or its allocable share of the tax paid thereon by us. Since non-U.S. stockholders generally would not have U.S. tax liability with respect to the deemed capital gain distribution, they would not be entitled to credit the tax paid by us for U.S. tax purposes. Whether non-U.S. stockholders could claim a credit with respect to their non-U.S. tax liability will depend on the foreign tax credit rules of the country in which they are a resident. In order to utilize the deemed distribution approach, we must provide written notice to our stockholders prior to the expiration of 60 days after the close of the relevant taxable year. We cannot treat any of our investment company taxable income as a "deemed distribution."

Failure To Obtain RIC Tax Treatment

If we fail to satisfy the 90% Income Test or the Diversification Tests for any taxable year, we may nevertheless continue to qualify as a RIC for such year if certain relief provisions are applicable (which may, among other things, require us to pay certain corporate-level U.S. federal taxes or to dispose of certain assets).

If we were unable to maintain our tax treatment as a RIC, we would be subject to tax on all of our taxable income at regular corporate rates. We would not be able to deduct distributions to stockholders, nor would distributions be compulsory. Distributions would generally be taxable to our stockholders as dividend income to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits (in the case of noncorporate U.S. stockholders, at a maximum federal income tax rate applicable to qualified dividend income of 20.0%). Subject to certain limitations under Subchapter M of the Code, corporate distributees would be eligible for the dividends-received deduction. Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits would be treated first as a return of capital to the extent of the stockholder's tax basis, and any remaining distributions would be treated as a capital gain.

If we fail to qualify as a RIC for two or more taxable years, to qualify as a RIC in a subsequent year we may be subject to regular corporate tax on any net built-in gains with respect to certain of our assets (i.e., the excess of the aggregate gains, including items of income, over aggregate losses that would have been realized with respect to such assets if we had been liquidated) that we elect to recognize on requalification or when recognized over the next five years.

Taxation of U.S. Stockholders

Whether an investment in shares of our common stock is appropriate for a U.S. stockholder will depend upon that person's particular circumstances. An investment in shares of our common stock by a U.S. stockholder may have adverse tax consequences. The following summary generally describes certain U.S. federal income tax consequences of an investment in shares of our common stock by taxable U.S. stockholders. Prospective investors should consult their own tax advisors before making an investment in our common stock.

Distributions by us generally are taxable to U.S. stockholders as ordinary income or capital gain. Distributions of our "investment company taxable income" (which is, generally, our ordinary income excluding net capital gain) will be taxable as ordinary income to U.S. stockholders to the extent of our current or accumulated earnings and profits, whether paid in cash or reinvested in additional common stock. To the extent such distributions paid by us to noncorporate U.S. stockholders (including individuals) are attributable to dividends from U.S. corporations and certain qualified foreign corporations, such distributions generally will be eligible for taxation at rates applicable to "qualifying dividends" (at a maximum tax rate of 20.0%) provided that we properly report such distribution as "qualified dividend income" in a written statement furnished to our stockholders and certain holding period and other requirements are satisfied. In this regard, it is not anticipated that a significant portion of distributions paid by us will be attributable to qualifying dividends; therefore, our distributions generally will not qualify for the preferential rates applicable to qualified dividend income. Distributions of our net capital gain (which is generally our net long-term capital gain in excess of net short-term capital loss) properly designated by us as "capital gain dividends" will be taxable to a U.S. stockholder as long-term capital gain (at a maximum rate of 20.0% in the case of individuals, trusts or estates), regardless of the U.S. stockholder's holding period for his, her or its common stock and regardless of whether paid in cash or reinvested in additional common stock. Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits first will reduce a U.S. stockholder's adjusted tax basis in such stockholder's common stock and, after the adjusted basis is reduced to zero, will constitute capital gain to such U.S. stockholder.

In order to satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement we intend to distribute any long-term capital gain at least annually; however, we may in the future decide to retain some or all of our long-term capital gain, but designate the retained amount as a "deemed distribution." In that case, among other consequences, we will pay tax on the retained amount, each U.S. stockholder will be required to include his, her or its proportionate share of the deemed distribution in income as if it had been actually distributed to the U.S. stockholder, and the U.S. stockholder will be entitled to claim a credit equal to his, her or its allocable share of the tax paid thereon by us. The amount of the deemed distribution net of such tax will be added to the U.S. stockholder's tax basis for his, her or its common stock. Since we expect to pay tax on any retained capital gain at our regular corporate tax rate, and since that rate is in excess of the maximum rate currently payable by individuals on net capital gain, the amount of tax that individual stockholders will be treated as having paid and for which they will receive a credit will exceed the tax they owe on the retained net capital gain. Such excess generally may be claimed as a credit against the U.S. stockholder's other U.S. federal income tax obligations or may be refunded to the extent it exceeds a stockholder's liability for U.S. federal income tax. A stockholder that is not subject to U.S. federal income tax or otherwise required to file a U.S. federal income tax return would be required to file a U.S. federal income tax return on the appropriate form in order to claim a refund for the taxes we paid. In order to utilize the deemed distribution approach, we must provide written notice to our stockholders prior to the expiration of 60 days after the close of the relevant taxable year. We cannot treat any of our investment company taxable income as a "deemed distribution."

For purposes of determining (1) whether the Annual Distribution Requirement is satisfied for any year and (2) the amount of capital gain dividends paid for that year, we may, under certain circumstances, elect to treat a dividend that is paid during the following taxable year as if it had been paid during the taxable year in question. If we make such an election, the U.S. stockholder will still be treated as receiving the dividend in the taxable year in which the distribution is made. However, any dividend declared by us in October, November or December of any calendar year, payable to stockholders of record on a specified date in any such month and actually paid during January of the following year, will be treated as if it had been received by our U.S. stockholders on December 31 of the year in which the dividend was declared.

If an investor purchases shares of our common stock shortly before the record date of a distribution, the price of the shares will include the value of the distribution, and the investor will be subject to tax on the distribution even though it represents a return of his, her or its investment.

A U.S. stockholder generally will recognize taxable gain or loss if the stockholder sells or otherwise disposes of his, her or its shares of our common stock. The amount of gain or loss will be measured by the difference between such stockholder's adjusted tax basis in the common stock sold and the amount of the proceeds received in exchange. Any gain arising from such sale or disposition generally will be treated as long-term capital gain or loss if the stockholder has held his, her or its shares for more than one year. Otherwise, it will be classified as short-term capital gain or loss. However, any capital loss arising from the sale or disposition of shares of our common stock held for six months or less will be treated as long-term capital loss to the extent of the amount of capital gain dividends received, or undistributed capital gain deemed received, with respect to such shares. In addition, all or a portion of any loss recognized upon a disposition of shares of our common stock may be disallowed if other substantially identical shares are purchased (whether through reinvestment of distributions or otherwise) within 30 days before or after the disposition. The ability to otherwise deduct capital loss may be subject to other limitations under the Code.

In general, noncorporate U.S. stockholders, including individuals, trusts and estates, are subject to U.S. federal income tax (at a maximum rate of 20.0%) on their net capital gain, or the excess of realized net long-term capital gain over realized net short-term capital loss for a taxable year, including a long-term capital gain derived from an investment in our shares. Such rate is lower than the maximum rate on ordinary income currently payable by individuals. Corporate U.S. stockholders currently are subject to U.S. federal income tax on net capital gain at the maximum 35.0% rate also applied to ordinary income. Noncorporate stockholders with net capital loss for a year (which we define as capital loss in excess of capital gain) generally may deduct up to $3,000 of such losses against their ordinary income each year; any net capital loss of a noncorporate stockholder in excess of $3,000 generally may be carried forward and used in subsequent years as provided in the Code. Corporate stockholders generally may not deduct any net capital loss for a year, but may carry forward such losses for five years.

Certain U.S. stockholders who are individuals, estates or trusts generally will be subject to a 3.8% Medicare tax on, among other things, dividends on, and capital gain from the sale or other disposition of shares, of our common stock.

A “publicly offered” RIC is a RIC whose shares are either (i) continuously offered pursuant to a public offering, (ii) regularly traded on an established securities market or (iii) held by at least 500 persons at all times during the taxable year. If we are not a publicly offered RIC for any period, a noncorporate stockholder’s pro rata portion of our affected expenses, including our management fees, will be treated as an additional distribution to the stockholder and will be deductible by such stockholder only to the extent permitted under the limitations described below. For noncorporate stockholders, including individuals, trusts, and estates, significant limitations generally apply to the deductibility of certain expenses of a nonpublicly offered RIC, including advisory fees. In particular, these expenses, referred to as miscellaneous itemized deductions, are deductible only to individuals to the extent they exceed 2.0% of such a stockholder’s adjusted gross income, and are not deductible for AMT purposes. Because we anticipate that shares of our common stock will continue to be regularly traded on an established securities market, we believe that we will continue to qualify as a publicly offered RIC.

We will send to each of our U.S. stockholders, as promptly as possible after the end of each calendar year, a written statement detailing, on a per share and per distribution basis, the amounts includible in such U.S. stockholder’s taxable income for such year as ordinary income and as long-term capital gain. In addition, the U.S. federal income tax status of each year’s distributions generally will be reported to the IRS (including the amount of dividends, if any, eligible for the current 20.0% maximum rate). Distributions paid by us generally will not be eligible for the dividends-received deduction or the preferential tax rate applicable to qualifying dividends. Distributions may also be subject to additional state, local and foreign taxes depending on a U.S. stockholder’s particular situation.

We may be required to withhold U.S. federal income tax, or backup withholding (at a rate of 28.0%), from all taxable distributions to any noncorporate U.S. stockholder (1) who fails to furnish us with a correct taxpayer identification number or a certificate that such stockholder is exempt from backup withholding or (2) with respect to whom the IRS notifies us that such stockholder has failed to properly report certain interest and dividend income to the IRS and to respond to notices to that effect. An individual’s taxpayer identification number is his or her social security number. Backup withholding tax is not an additional tax, and any amount withheld may be refunded or credited against the U.S. stockholder’s U.S. federal income tax liability, provided that proper information is timely provided to the IRS.

Under legislation commonly referred to as “FATCA,” if certain disclosure requirements related to U.S. accounts or ownership are not satisfied, a U.S. federal withholding tax at a 30.0% rate will be imposed on dividends received by U.S. stockholders that own their stock through foreign accounts or foreign intermediaries. In addition, for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2018, if certain disclosure requirements related to U.S. accounts or ownership are not satisfied, a U.S. federal withholding tax at a 30.0% rate will be imposed on proceeds of sale in respect of our stock received by U.S. stockholders that own their stock through foreign accounts or foreign intermediaries. We will not pay any additional amounts in respect of any amounts withheld.

Under applicable Treasury Regulations, if a stockholder recognizes a loss with respect to shares of our stock of $2 million or more for an individual, S corporation, trust, or a partnership with at least one noncorporate partner or $10 million or more for a stockholder that is either a corporation or a partnership with only corporate partners in any single taxable year (or a greater loss over a combination of years), the stockholder must file with the IRS a disclosure statement on IRS Form 8886 (or successor form). Direct stockholders of portfolio securities in many cases are excepted from this reporting requirement, but under current guidance, stockholders of a RIC are not excepted. Future guidance may extend the current exception from this reporting requirement to stockholders of most or all RICs. The fact that a loss is reportable under these regulations does not affect the legal determination of whether the taxpayer's treatment of the loss is proper. Significant monetary penalties apply to a failure to comply with this reporting requirement. States may also have a similar reporting requirement. Stockholders should consult their own tax advisors to determine the applicability of these regulations in light of their individual circumstances.

Taxation of Non-U.S. Stockholders

Whether an investment in the shares is appropriate for a Non-U.S. stockholder will depend upon that person's particular circumstances. An investment in the shares by a Non-U.S. stockholder may have adverse tax consequences. Non-U.S. stockholders should consult their tax advisers before investing in our common stock.

Distributions of our "investment company taxable income" to Non-U.S. stockholders that are not "effectively connected" with a U.S. trade or business carried on by the Non-U.S. stockholder, generally will be subject to withholding of U.S. federal income tax at a rate of 30.0% (or lower rate provided by an applicable treaty) to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits, unless an applicable exception applies.

Properly reported dividends received by a Non-U.S. stockholder generally were exempt from U.S. federal withholding tax when they (a) were paid in respect of our "qualified net interest income" (generally, our U.S. source interest income, other than certain contingent interest and interest from obligations of a corporation or partnership in which we are at least a 10.0% stockholder, reduced by expenses that are allocable to such income), or (b) paid in connection with our "qualified short-term capital gains" (generally, the excess of our net short-term capital gain over our long-term capital loss for such taxable year). We may report all, some or none of our potentially eligible dividends as such qualified net interest income or as qualified short-term capital gains, or treat such dividends, in whole or in part, as ineligible for this exemption from withholding. In order to qualify for this exemption from withholding, a Non-U.S. stockholder must comply with applicable certification requirements relating to its non-U.S. status (including, in general, furnishing an IRS Form W-8BEN or an acceptable substitute or successor form). In the case of shares held through an intermediary, the intermediary could withhold tax even if we properly report the payment as qualified net interest income or qualified short-term capital gain. Non-U.S. stockholders should contact their intermediaries with respect to the application of these rules to their accounts.

Actual or deemed distributions of our net capital gain to a Non-U.S. stockholder, and gain realized by a Non-U.S. stockholder upon the sale of our common stock, that are not effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business carried on by the Non-U.S. stockholder, will generally not be subject to U.S. federal withholding tax and generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax unless the Non-U.S. stockholder is a nonresident alien individual and is physically present in the United States for more than 182 days during the taxable year and meets certain other requirements. However, withholding of U.S. federal income tax at a rate of 30.0% on the capital gain of nonresident alien individuals who are physically present in the United States for more than the 182 day period only applies in exceptional cases because any individual present in the United States for more than 182 days during the taxable year is generally treated as a resident for U.S. income tax purposes; in that case, he or she would be subject to U.S. income tax on his or her worldwide income at the graduated rates applicable to U.S. citizens, rather than the 30.0% U.S. federal withholding tax.

If we distribute our net capital gain in the form of deemed rather than actual distributions (which we may do in the future), a Non-U.S. stockholder will be entitled to a U.S. federal income tax credit or tax refund equal to the stockholder's allocable share of the tax we pay on the capital gain deemed to have been distributed. In order to obtain the refund, the Non-U.S. stockholder must obtain a U.S. taxpayer identification number and file a U.S. federal income tax return even if the Non-U.S. stockholder would not otherwise be required to obtain a U.S. taxpayer identification number or file a U.S. federal income tax return. Accordingly, investment in the shares may not be appropriate for a Non-U.S. stockholder.

Distributions of our “investment company taxable income” and net capital gain (including deemed distributions) to Non-U.S. stockholders, and gain realized by Non-U.S. stockholders upon the sale of our common stock that is “effectively connected” with a U.S. trade or business carried on by the Non-U.S. stockholder (or if an income tax treaty applies, attributable to a “permanent establishment” in the United States), will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at the graduated rates applicable to U.S. citizens, residents and domestic corporations. Corporate Non-U.S. stockholders may also be subject to an additional branch profits tax at a rate of 30.0% imposed by the Code (or lower rate provided by an applicable treaty). In the case of a non-corporate Non-U.S. stockholder, we may be required to withhold U.S. federal income tax from distributions that are otherwise exempt from withholding tax (or taxable at a reduced rate) unless the Non-U.S. stockholder certifies his or her foreign status under penalties of perjury or otherwise establishes an exemption.

The tax consequences to a Non-U.S. stockholder entitled to claim the benefits of an applicable tax treaty may differ from those described herein. Non-U.S. stockholders are advised to consult their own tax advisers with respect to the particular tax consequences to them of an investment in our shares.

A Non-U.S. stockholder who is a nonresident alien individual may be subject to information reporting and backup withholding of U.S. federal income tax on dividends unless the Non-U.S. stockholder provides us or the dividend paying agent with an IRS Form W-8BEN (or an acceptable substitute form) or otherwise meets documentary evidence requirements for establishing that it is a Non-U.S. stockholder or otherwise establishes an exemption from backup withholding.

Under FATCA, if certain disclosure requirements related to U.S. accounts or ownership are not satisfied, a U.S. federal withholding tax at a 30.0% rate will be imposed on dividends received by certain Non-U.S. stockholders. In addition, if certain disclosure requirements related to U.S. accounts or ownership are not satisfied, a U.S. federal withholding tax at a 30.0% rate will be imposed on proceeds of sale in respect of shares of our stock received by certain Non-U.S. stockholders. If payment of withholding taxes is required, Non-U.S. stockholders that are otherwise eligible for an exemption from, or reduction of, U.S. federal withholding taxes with respect to such dividends and proceeds will be required to seek a refund from the IRS to obtain the benefit of such exemption or reduction. We will not pay any additional amounts in respect of any amounts withheld.

Non-U.S. persons should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the U.S. federal income tax and withholding tax, and state, local and foreign tax consequences of an investment in the shares.

Possible Legislative or Other Actions Affecting Tax Considerations

Prospective investors should recognize that the present U.S. federal income tax treatment of an investment in our stock may be modified by legislative, judicial or administrative action at any time, and that any such action may affect investments and commitments previously made. The rules dealing with U.S. federal income taxation are constantly under review by persons involved in the legislative process any by the IRS and the U.S. Treasury Department, resulting in revisions of regulations and revised interpretations of established concepts as well as statutory changes. Revisions in U.S. federal tax laws and interpretations thereof could adversely affect the tax consequences of an investment in our stock. See Risk Related to Our Business and Structure – Recent tax legislation could have a negative effect on the Company.

The discussion set forth herein does not constitute tax advice, and potential investors should consult their own tax advisors concerning the tax considerations relevant to their particular situation.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR CAPITAL STOCK

The following description is based on relevant portions of the Maryland General Corporation Law and on our charter and bylaws. This summary is not necessarily complete, and we refer you to the Maryland General Corporation Law and our charter and bylaws for a more detailed description of the provisions summarized below.

Capital Stock

Our authorized capital stock consists of 100,000,000 shares of common stock, par value $0.001 per share, of which 24,507,940 were outstanding as of March 1, 2018. Our common stock trades on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the ticker symbol “FDUS.” There are no outstanding options or warrants to purchase our stock. No stock has been authorized for issuance under any equity compensation plan. Under Maryland law, our stockholders generally are not personally liable for our debts or obligations.

Under our charter, our board of directors is authorized to classify and reclassify any unissued shares of stock into other classes or series of stock without obtaining stockholder approval. As permitted by the Maryland General Corporation Law, our charter provides that the board of directors, without any action by our stockholders, may amend the charter from time to time to increase or decrease the aggregate number of shares of stock or the number of shares of stock of any class or series that we have authority to issue.

Common Stock

All shares of our common stock have equal rights as to earnings, assets, voting, and distributions and, when they are issued, will be duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable. Distributions may be paid to the holders of our common stock if, as and when authorized by our board of directors and declared by us out of assets legally available therefor. Shares of our common stock have no preemptive, conversion or redemption rights and are freely transferable, except where their transfer is restricted by federal and state securities laws or by contract. In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, each share of our common stock would be entitled to share ratably in all of our assets that are legally available for distribution after we pay all debts and other liabilities and subject to any preferential rights of holders of our preferred stock, if any preferred stock is outstanding at such time. Each share of our common stock is entitled to one vote on all matters submitted to a vote of stockholders, including the election of directors. Except as provided with respect to any other class or series of stock, the holders of our common stock will possess exclusive voting power. There is no cumulative voting in the election of directors, which means that holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock can elect all of our directors, and holders of less than a majority of such shares will be unable to elect any director.

Long-Term Debt

The SBA debentures issued by the Funds have fixed interest rates that approximate prevailing 10-year Treasury Note rates plus a spread and have a maturity of ten years with interest payable semi-annually. The principal amount of the SBA debentures is not required to be paid before maturity but may be pre-paid at any time. As of December 31, 2017, Fund I had $108.3 million of outstanding SBA debentures and cannot issue additional SBA debentures. As of December 31, 2017, Fund II had $123.0 million of outstanding SBA debentures. As of December 31, 2017, Fund II had the capacity to issue up to an additional $27.0 million of SBA debentures. Subject to SBA regulatory requirements and approval, we may access up to $91.7 million of additional SBA debentures under the SBIC Debenture Program.

Credit Facility

In June 2014, we entered into a senior secured revolving credit agreement (the “Credit Facility”) with certain lenders party thereto and ING Capital, LLC, as administrative agent, to provide additional funding for our investment and operational activities. On December 29, 2017, we entered into an amendment to the Credit Facility to, among other things, extend the maturity date from June 16, 2018 to June 16, 2019. The Credit Facility has a commitment of $50.0 million and an accordion feature that allows for an increase in the total commitments up to $75.0 million, subject to certain customary conditions. The Credit Facility is secured by substantially all of our assets, excluding the assets of the Funds.

Amounts available to borrow under the Credit Facility are subject to a minimum borrowing/collateral base that applies an advance rate to certain portfolio investments. We are subject to limitations with respect to the investments securing the Credit Facility, including, but not limited to, restrictions on sector concentrations, loan size, transferability, payment frequency and status and collateral interests, as well as restrictions on portfolio company leverage, which may also affect the borrowing base and therefore amounts available to borrow.

Borrowings under the Credit Facility bear interest, subject to our election, on a per annum basis equal to (i) the alternate base rate plus 2.5% or (ii) the applicable LIBOR, which varies depending on the period of the borrowing under the Credit Facility, plus 3.5%. The alternate base rate is equal to the greater of (i) prime rate, (ii) the federal funds rate plus 0.5% or (iii) the three-month LIBOR plus 1.0%. We pay a commitment fee ranging from 0.5% to 1.0% per annum based on the size of the unused portion of the Credit Facility.

We have made customary representations and warranties and are required to comply with various covenants, reporting requirements and other customary requirements for similar credit facilities. These covenants are subject to important limitations and exceptions that are described in the documents governing the Credit Facility. As of December 31, 2017, we were in compliance with all covenants of the Credit Facility and there were $11.5 million of borrowings outstanding under the Credit Facility.

Outstanding Securities

The following table shows our outstanding classes of securities as of December 31, 2017:

(a) Title of Class	(b) Amount Authorized	(c) Amount Held by us or for Our Account	(d) Amount Outstanding Exclusive of Amounts Shown Under (c)
Common Stock	100,000,000	—	24,507,940
SBA Debentures	$258.3 million (1)	—	$ 231.3 million
Credit Facility	$ 50.0 million	—	$ 11.5 million

(1) Based on $137.6 million of regulatory capital as of December 31, 2017. For more information regarding our limitations as to SBA debenture issuances, see "Regulation — Small Business Administration Regulations."

Limitation on Liability of Directors and Officers; Indemnification and Advance of Expenses

Maryland law permits a Maryland corporation to include in its charter a provision limiting the liability of its directors and officers to the corporation and its stockholders for money damages except for liability resulting from (a) actual receipt of an improper benefit or profit in money, property or services or (b) active and deliberate dishonesty established by a final judgment as being material to the cause of action. Our charter contains such a provision which eliminates directors' and officers' liability to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law, subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act.

Our charter authorizes us, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law and subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act, to indemnify any present or former director or officer or any individual who, while serving as our director or officer and at our request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee, from and against any claim or liability to which that person may become subject or which that person may incur by reason of his or her service in any such capacity and to pay or reimburse their reasonable expenses in advance of final disposition of a proceeding. Our bylaws obligate us, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law and subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act, to indemnify any present or former director or officer or any individual who, while serving as our director or officer and at our request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee and who is made, or threatened to be made, a party to the proceeding by reason of his or her service in that capacity from and against any claim or liability to which that person may become subject or which that person may incur by reason of his or her service in any such capacity and to pay or reimburse his or her reasonable expenses in advance of final disposition of a proceeding. The charter and bylaws also permit us to indemnify and advance expenses to any person who served a predecessor of us in any of the capacities described above and any of our employees or agents or any employees or agents of our predecessor. In accordance with the 1940 Act, we will not indemnify any person for any liability to which such person would be subject by reason of such person's willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of his or her office.

Maryland law requires a corporation (unless its charter provides otherwise, which our charter does not) to indemnify a director or officer who has been successful in the defense of any proceeding to which he or she is made, or threatened to be made, a party by reason of his or her service in that capacity. Maryland law permits a corporation to indemnify its present and former directors and officers, among others, against judgments, penalties, fines, settlements and reasonable expenses actually incurred by them in connection with any proceeding to which they may be made, or threatened to be made, a party by reason of their service in those or other capacities unless it is established that (a) the act or omission of the director or officer was material to the matter giving rise to the proceeding and (1) was committed in bad faith or (2) was the result of active and deliberate dishonesty, (b) the director or officer actually received an improper personal benefit in money, property or services or (c) in the case of any criminal proceeding, the director or officer had reasonable cause to believe that the act or omission was unlawful. However, under Maryland law, a Maryland corporation may not indemnify for an adverse judgment in a suit by or in the right of the corporation or for a judgment of liability on the basis that a personal benefit was improperly received unless, in either case, a court orders indemnification, and then only for expenses. In addition, Maryland law permits a corporation to advance reasonable expenses to a director or officer in advance of final disposition of a proceeding upon the corporation's receipt of (a) a written affirmation by the director or officer of his or her good faith belief that he or she has met the standard of conduct necessary for indemnification by the corporation and (b) a written undertaking by him or her or on his or her behalf to repay the amount paid or reimbursed by the corporation if it is ultimately determined that the standard of conduct was not met.

We have entered into indemnification agreements with our directors. The indemnification agreements provide our directors the maximum indemnification permitted under Maryland law and the 1940 Act.

We have purchased directors' and officers' insurance policies covering our directors and officers and us for any acts and omissions committed, attempted or allegedly committed by any director or officer during the policy period. The policy is subject to customary exclusions.

Certain Provisions of the Maryland General Corporation Law and Our Charter and Bylaws

The Maryland General Corporation Law and our charter and bylaws contain provisions that could make it more difficult for a potential acquiror to acquire us by means of a tender offer, proxy contest or otherwise. These provisions are expected to discourage certain coercive takeover practices and inadequate takeover bids and to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to negotiate first with our board of directors. We believe that the benefits of these provisions outweigh the potential disadvantages of discouraging any such acquisition proposals because, among other things, the negotiation of such proposals may improve their terms.

Classified Board of Directors

Our board of directors is divided into three classes of directors serving staggered three-year terms. The terms of the first, second and third classes expire in 2018, 2019 and 2020, respectively, and in each case, those directors will serve until their successors are elected and qualify. Directors of each class will be elected to serve for three-year terms and until their successors are duly elected and qualify and each year one class of directors will be elected by the stockholders. A classified board may render a change in control of us or removal of our incumbent management more difficult. We believe, however, that the longer time required to elect a majority of a classified board of directors will help to ensure the continuity and stability of our management and policies.

Election of Directors

Our charter and bylaws provide that the affirmative vote of the holders of a plurality of the outstanding shares of stock entitled to vote in the election of directors cast at a meeting of stockholders duly called and at which a quorum is present is required to elect a director. Pursuant to our bylaws our board of directors may amend the bylaws to alter the vote required to elect directors.

Number of Directors; Vacancies; Removal

Our charter provides that the number of directors will be set only by the board of directors in accordance with our bylaws. Our bylaws provide that a majority of our entire board of directors may at any time increase or decrease the number of directors. However, unless our bylaws are amended, the number of directors may never be less than one nor more than eight. Except as may be provided by the board of directors in setting the terms of any class or series of preferred stock, any and all vacancies on the board of directors may be filled only by the affirmative vote of a majority of the remaining directors in office, even if the remaining directors do not constitute a quorum, and any director elected to fill a vacancy will serve for the remainder of the full term of the directorship in which the vacancy occurred and until a successor is elected and qualifies, subject to any applicable requirements of the 1940 Act.

Our charter provides that a director may be removed only for cause, as defined in our charter, and then only by the affirmative vote of at least two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast in the election of directors.

Action by Stockholders

Under the Maryland General Corporation Law, stockholder action can be taken only at an annual or special meeting of stockholders or (unless the charter provides for stockholder action by less than unanimous written consent, which our charter does not) by unanimous written consent in lieu of a meeting. These provisions, combined with the requirements of our bylaws regarding the calling of a stockholder-requested special meeting of stockholders discussed below, may have the effect of delaying consideration of a stockholder proposal until the next annual meeting.

Advance Notice Provisions for Stockholder Nominations and Stockholder Proposals

Our bylaws provide that with respect to an annual meeting of stockholders, nominations of persons for election to the board of directors and the proposal of business to be considered by stockholders may be made only (a) pursuant to our notice of the meeting, (b) by the board of directors or (c) by a stockholder who was a stockholder of record both at the time of giving notice and at the time of the annual meeting and who is entitled to vote at the meeting and who has complied with the advance notice procedures of our bylaws. With respect to special meetings of stockholders, only the business specified in our notice of the meeting may be brought before the meeting. Nominations of persons for election to the board of directors at a special meeting may be made only (a) pursuant to our notice of the meeting, (b) by the board of directors or (c) provided that the board of directors has determined that directors will be elected at the meeting, by a stockholder who was a stockholder of record both at the time of giving notice and at the time of the annual meeting and who is entitled to vote at the meeting and who has complied with the advance notice provisions of the bylaws.

The purpose of requiring stockholders to give us advance notice of nominations and other business is to afford our board of directors a meaningful opportunity to consider the qualifications of the proposed nominees and the advisability of any other proposed business and, to the extent deemed necessary or desirable by our board of directors, to inform stockholders and make recommendations about such qualifications or business, as well as to provide a more orderly procedure for conducting meetings of stockholders. Although our bylaws do not give our board of directors any power to disapprove stockholder nominations for the election of directors or proposals recommending certain action, they may have the effect of (a) precluding a contest for the election of directors or the consideration of stockholder proposals if proper procedures are not followed and (b) discouraging or deterring a third party from conducting a solicitation of proxies to elect its own slate of directors or to approve its own proposal without regard to whether consideration of such nominees or proposals might be harmful or beneficial to us and our stockholders.

Calling of Special Meetings of Stockholders

Our bylaws provide that special meetings of stockholders may be called by the chairman of our board of directors, our President and our board of directors. Additionally, our bylaws provide that, subject to the satisfaction of certain procedural and informational requirements by the stockholders requesting the meeting, a special meeting of stockholders will be called by the secretary of the corporation upon the written request of stockholders entitled to cast not less than a majority of all the votes entitled to be cast at such meeting.

Approval of Extraordinary Corporate Action; Amendment of Charter and Bylaws

Under Maryland law, a Maryland corporation generally cannot dissolve, amend its charter, merge, sell all or substantially all of its assets, engage in a share exchange or engage in similar transactions outside the ordinary course of business, unless approved by the affirmative vote of stockholders entitled to cast at least two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter. However, a Maryland corporation may provide in its charter for approval of these matters by a lesser percentage, but not less than a majority of all of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter. Our charter provides that certain charter amendments, any proposal for our conversion, whether by charter amendment, merger or otherwise, from a closed-end company to an open-end company and any proposal for our liquidation or dissolution requires the approval of the stockholders entitled to cast at least 80.0% of the votes entitled to be cast on such matter. However, if such amendment or proposal is approved by a majority of our continuing directors (in addition to approval by our board of directors), such amendment or proposal may be approved by a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on such a matter. The “continuing directors” are defined in our charter as (a) our current directors, (b) those directors whose nomination for election by the stockholders or whose election by the directors to fill vacancies is approved by a majority of our current directors then on the board of directors or (c) any successor directors whose nomination for election by the stockholders or whose election by the directors to fill vacancies is approved by a majority of continuing directors or the successor continuing directors then in office.

Our charter and bylaws provide that the board of directors has the exclusive power to make, alter, amend or repeal any provision of our bylaws.

No Appraisal Rights

Except with respect to appraisal rights arising in connection with the Control Share Act discussed below, as permitted by the Maryland General Corporation Law, our charter provides that stockholders will not be entitled to exercise appraisal rights unless a majority of the board of directors shall determine such rights apply.

Control Share Acquisitions

The Maryland General Corporation Law provides that control shares of a Maryland corporation acquired in a control share acquisition have no voting rights except to the extent approved by a vote of two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter (the “Control Share Act”). Shares owned by the acquiror, by officers or by directors who are employees of the corporation are excluded from shares entitled to vote on the matter. Control shares are voting shares of stock which, if aggregated with all other shares of stock owned by the acquiror or in respect of which the acquiror is able to exercise or direct the exercise of voting power (except solely by virtue of a revocable proxy), would entitle the acquiror to exercise voting power in electing directors within one of the following ranges of voting power:

- one-tenth or more but less than one-third;
- one-third or more but less than a majority; or
- a majority or more of all voting power.

The requisite stockholder approval must be obtained each time an acquiror crosses one of the thresholds of voting power set forth above. Control shares do not include shares the acquiring person is then entitled to vote as a result of having previously obtained stockholder approval. A control share acquisition means the acquisition of control shares, subject to certain exceptions.

A person who has made or proposes to make a control share acquisition may compel the board of directors of the corporation to call a special meeting of stockholders to be held within 50 days of demand to consider the voting rights of the shares. The right to compel the calling of a special meeting is subject to the satisfaction of certain conditions, including an undertaking to pay the expenses of the meeting. If no request for a meeting is made, the corporation may itself present the question at any stockholders meeting.

If voting rights are not approved at the meeting or if the acquiring person does not deliver an acquiring person statement as required by the statute, then the corporation may redeem for fair value any or all of the control shares, except those for which voting rights have previously been approved. The right of the corporation to redeem control shares is subject to certain conditions and limitations, including, as provided in our bylaws compliance with the 1940 Act. Fair value is determined, without regard to the absence of voting rights for the control shares, as of the date of the last control share acquisition by the acquiror or of any meeting of stockholders at which the voting rights of the shares are considered and not approved. If voting rights for control shares are approved at a stockholders meeting and the acquiror becomes entitled to vote a majority of the shares entitled to vote, all other stockholders may exercise appraisal rights. The fair value of the shares as determined for purposes of appraisal rights may not be less than the highest price per share paid by the acquiror in the control share acquisition.

The Control Share Act does not apply (a) to shares acquired in a merger, consolidation or share exchange if the corporation is a party to the transaction or (b) to acquisitions approved or exempted by the charter or bylaws of the corporation. Our bylaws contain a provision exempting from the Control Share Act any and all acquisitions by any person of our shares of stock. There can be no assurance that such provision will not be amended or eliminated at any time in the future. However, we will amend our bylaws to be subject to the Control Share Act only if the board of directors determines that it would be in our best interests and if the SEC staff does not object to our determination that our being subject to the Control Share Act does not conflict with the 1940 Act.

Business Combinations

Under Maryland law, “business combinations” between a Maryland corporation and an interested stockholder or an affiliate of an interested stockholder are prohibited for five years after the most recent date on which the interested stockholder becomes an interested stockholder (the “Business Combination Act”). These business combinations include a merger, consolidation, share exchange or, in circumstances specified in the statute, an asset transfer or issuance or reclassification of equity securities. An interested stockholder is defined as:

- any person who beneficially owns 10.0% or more of the voting power of the corporation’s outstanding voting stock; or
- an affiliate or associate of the corporation who, at any time within the two-year period prior to the date in question, was the beneficial owner of 10.0% or more of the voting power of the then outstanding voting stock of the corporation.

A person is not an interested stockholder under this statute if the board of directors approved in advance the transaction by which the stockholder otherwise would have become an interested stockholder. However, in approving a transaction, the board of directors may provide that its approval is subject to compliance, at or after the time of approval, with any terms and conditions determined by the board.

After the five-year prohibition, any business combination between the Maryland corporation and an interested stockholder generally must be recommended by the board of directors of the corporation and approved by the affirmative vote of at least:

- 80.0% of the votes entitled to be cast by holders of outstanding shares of voting stock of the corporation; and
- two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast by holders of voting stock of the corporation other than shares held by the interested stockholder with whom or with whose affiliate the business combination is to be effected or held by an affiliate or associate of the interested stockholder.

These super-majority vote requirements do not apply if the corporation's common stockholders receive a minimum price, as defined under Maryland law, for their shares in the form of cash or other consideration in the same form as previously paid by the interested stockholder for its shares.

The statute permits various exemptions from its provisions, including business combinations that are exempted by the board of directors before the time that the interested stockholder becomes an interested stockholder. Our board of directors has adopted a resolution, subject to the provisions of the 1940 Act, that any business combination between us and any other person is exempted from the provisions of the Business Combination Act, provided that the business combination is first approved by the board of directors, including a majority of the directors who are not interested persons as defined in the 1940 Act. This resolution may be altered or repealed in whole or in part at any time; however, our board of directors will adopt resolutions so as to make us subject to the provisions of the Business Combination Act only if the board of directors determines that it would be in our best interests and if the SEC staff does not object to our determination that our being subject to the Business Combination Act does not conflict with the 1940 Act. If this resolution is repealed, or the board of directors does not otherwise approve a business combination, the statute may discourage others from trying to acquire control of us and increase the difficulty of consummating any offer.

Conflict with 1940 Act

Our bylaws provide that, if and to the extent that any provision of the Maryland General Corporation Law, including the Control Share Act (if we amend our bylaws to be subject to such Act) and the Business Combination Act, or any provision of our charter or bylaws conflicts with any provision of the 1940 Act, the applicable provision of the 1940 Act will control.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR PREFERRED STOCK

Our charter authorizes our board of directors to classify and reclassify any unissued shares of stock into other classes or series of stock, including preferred stock. Prior to issuance of shares of each class or series, the board of directors is required by Maryland law and by our charter to set the terms, preferences, conversion or other rights, voting powers, restrictions, limitations as to distributions, qualifications and terms or conditions of redemption for each class or series. Thus, our board of directors could authorize the issuance of shares of preferred stock with terms and conditions which could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a transaction or a change in control that might involve a premium price for holders of our common stock or otherwise be in their best interest. You should note, however, that any issuance of preferred stock must comply with the requirements of the 1940 Act.

The 1940 Act generally requires that (1) immediately after issuance and before any distribution is made with respect to our common stock and before any purchase of common stock is made, such preferred stock together with all other senior securities must not exceed an amount equal to 50.0% of our total assets less liabilities not represented by indebtedness, and (2) the holders of shares of preferred stock, if any are issued, must be entitled as a class to elect two directors at all times and to elect a majority of the directors if distributions on such preferred stock are in arrears by two years or more. Certain matters under the 1940 Act require the separate vote of the holders of any issued and outstanding preferred stock. For example, holders of preferred stock would vote separately from the holders of common stock on a proposal to cease operations as a BDC. Further, the 1940 Act requires that any distributions we make on preferred stock be cumulative. We believe that the availability for issuance of preferred stock will provide us with increased flexibility in structuring future financings and acquisitions.

For any series of preferred stock that we may issue, our board of directors will determine and the prospectus supplement relating to such series will describe:

- the designation and number of shares of such series;
- the rate and time at which, and the preferences and conditions under which, any distributions will be paid on shares of such series, as well as whether such distributions are participating or non-participating;
- any provisions relating to convertibility or exchangeability of the shares of such series;
- the rights and preferences, if any, of holders of shares of such series upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our affairs;
- the voting powers, if any, of the holders of shares of such series;
- any provisions relating to the redemption of the shares of such series;
- any limitations on our ability to pay distributions on, or acquire or redeem, other securities while shares of such series are outstanding;
- any conditions or restrictions on our ability to issue additional shares of such series or other securities;
- if applicable, a discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations; and
- any other relative power, preferences and participating, optional or special rights of shares of such series, and the qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof.

The preferred stock may be either fixed rate preferred stock or variable rate preferred stock, which is sometimes referred to as “auction rate” preferred stock. All shares of preferred stock that we may issue will be identical and of equal rank except as to the particular terms thereof that may be fixed by our board of directors, and all shares of each series of preferred stock will be identical and of equal rank except as to the dates from which cumulative distributions, if any, thereon will be cumulative. If we issue shares of preferred stock, holders of such preferred stock will be entitled to receive cash distributions at an annual rate that will be fixed or will vary for the successive distribution periods for each series. In general, the distribution periods for fixed rate preferred stock can range from quarterly to weekly and are subject to extension. The distribution rate to be variable and determined for each distribution period.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR SUBSCRIPTION RIGHTS

We may issue subscription rights to purchase common stock. Subscription rights may be issued independently or together with any other offered security and may or may not be transferable by the person purchasing or receiving the subscription rights. In connection with any subscription rights offering to our stockholders, we may enter into a standby underwriting or other arrangement with one or more underwriters or other persons pursuant to which such underwriters or other persons would purchase any offered securities remaining unsubscribed for after such subscription rights offering. We will not offer transferable subscription rights to our stockholders at a price equivalent to less than the then current net asset value per share of common stock, excluding underwriting commissions, unless we first file a post-effective amendment that is declared effective by the SEC with respect to such issuance and the common stock to be purchased in connection with the rights represents no more than one-third of our outstanding common stock at the time such rights are issued. In connection with a subscription rights offering to our stockholders, we would distribute certificates evidencing the subscription rights and a prospectus supplement to our stockholders on the record date that we set for receiving subscription rights in such subscription rights offering. Our common stockholders will indirectly bear the expenses of such subscription rights offerings, regardless of whether our common stockholders exercise any subscription rights.

The applicable prospectus supplement would describe the following terms of subscription rights in respect of which this prospectus is being delivered:

- the title of such subscription rights;
- the exercise price or a formula for the determination of the exercise price for such subscription rights;
- the number or a formula for the determination of the number of such subscription rights issued to each stockholder;
- the extent to which such subscription rights are transferable;
- if applicable, a discussion of the material U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to the issuance or exercise of such subscription rights;
- the date on which the right to exercise such subscription rights would commence, and the date on which such rights shall expire (subject to any extension);
- the extent to which such subscription rights include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities;
- if applicable, the material terms of any standby underwriting or other purchase arrangement that we may enter into in connection with the subscription rights offering; and
- any other terms of such subscription rights, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of such subscription rights.

Exercise of Subscription Rights

Each subscription right would entitle the holder of the subscription right to purchase for cash such amount of shares of common stock or other securities at such exercise price as shall in each case be set forth in, or be determinable as set forth in, the prospectus supplement relating to the subscription rights offered thereby or another report filed with the SEC. Subscription rights may be exercised at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date for such subscription rights set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, all unexercised subscription rights would become void. We have not previously completed such an offering of subscription rights.

Subscription rights may be exercised as set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the subscription rights offered thereby. Upon receipt of payment and the subscription rights certificate properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the subscription rights agent or any other office indicated in the prospectus supplement, we will forward, as soon as practicable, the shares of common stock or other securities purchasable upon such exercise. We may determine to offer any unsubscribed offered securities directly to stockholders, persons other than stockholders, to or through agents, underwriters or dealers or through a combination of such methods, including pursuant to standby underwriting or other arrangements, as set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR DEBT SECURITIES

We may issue debt securities in one or more series. The specific terms of each series of debt securities will be described in the particular prospectus supplement relating to that series. The prospectus supplement may or may not modify the general terms found in this prospectus and will be filed with the SEC. For a complete description of the terms of a particular series of debt securities, you should read both this prospectus and the prospectus supplement relating to that particular series.

As required by federal law for all bonds and notes of companies that are publicly offered, the debt securities are governed by a document called an “indenture.” An indenture is a contract between us and the financial institution acting as trustee on your behalf, and is subject to and governed by the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended. The trustee has two main roles. First, the trustee can enforce your rights against us if we default. There are some limitations on the extent to which the trustee acts on your behalf, described in the second paragraph under “— Events of Default — Remedies if an Event of Default Occurs.” Second, the trustee performs certain administrative duties for us with respect to our debt securities.

This section includes a description of the material provisions of the indenture. Because this section is a summary, however, it does not describe every aspect of the debt securities and the indenture. We urge you to read the indenture because it, and not this description, defines your rights as a holder of debt securities. A copy of the form of indenture is attached as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. We will file a supplemental indenture with the SEC in connection with any debt offering, at which time the supplemental indenture would be publicly available. See “Available Information” for information on how to obtain a copy of the indenture.

The prospectus supplement, which will accompany this prospectus, will describe the particular series of debt securities being offered by including:

- the designation or title of the series of debt securities;
- the total principal amount of the series of debt securities;
- the percentage of the principal amount at which the series of debt securities will be offered;
- the date or dates on which principal will be payable;
- the rate or rates (which may be either fixed or variable) and/or the method of determining such rate or rates of interest, if any;
- the date or dates from which any interest will accrue, or the method of determining such date or dates, and the date or dates on which any interest will be payable;
- whether any interest may be paid by issuing additional securities of the same series in lieu of cash (and the terms upon which any such interest may be paid by issuing additional securities);
- the terms for redemption, extension or early repayment, if any;
- the currencies in which the series of debt securities are issued and payable;
- whether the amount of payments of principal, premium or interest, if any, on a series of debt securities will be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method (which could be based on one or more currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices) and how these amounts will be determined;

- the place or places, if any, other than or in addition to the Borough of Manhattan in the City of New York, of payment, transfer, conversion and/or exchange of the debt securities;
- the denominations in which the offered debt securities will be issued (if other than $1,000 and any integral multiple thereof);
- the provision for any sinking fund;
- any restrictive covenants;
- any Events of Default (as defined in "Events of Default" below);
- whether the series of debt securities are issuable in certificated form;
- any provisions for defeasance or covenant defeasance;
- any special U.S. federal income tax implications, including, if applicable, U.S. federal income tax considerations relating to original issue discount;
- whether and under what circumstances we will pay additional amounts in respect of any tax, assessment or governmental charge and, if so, whether we will have the option to redeem the debt securities rather than pay the additional amounts (and the terms of this option);
- any provisions for convertibility or exchangeability of the debt securities into or for any other securities;
- whether the debt securities are subject to subordination and the terms of such subordination;
- whether the debt securities are secured and the terms of any security interest;
- the listing, if any, on a securities exchange; and
- any other terms.

The debt securities may be secured or unsecured obligations. Unless the prospectus supplement states otherwise, principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, will be paid by us in immediately available funds.

As a BDC, under the 1940 Act, generally we are permitted to issue debt only in amounts such that our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, equals at least 200% after each issuance of debt, but giving effect to any exemptive relief granted to us by the SEC. For a discussion of pending legislation that may allow us to incur additional leverage, see "Risk Factors — Risks Related to Our Business and Structure — Pending legislation may allow us to incur additional leverage."

As a BDC, the necessity of raising additional capital may expose us to risks, including the typical risks associated with leverage."

General

The indenture provides that any debt securities proposed to be sold under this prospectus and the accompanying prospectus supplement ("offered debt securities") and any debt securities issuable upon the exercise of warrants or upon conversion or exchange of other offered securities ("underlying debt securities") may be issued under the indenture in one or more series.

For purposes of this prospectus, any reference to the payment of principal of, or premium or interest, if any, on, debt securities will include additional amounts if required by the terms of the debt securities.

The indenture does not limit the amount of debt securities that may be issued thereunder from time to time. Debt securities issued under the indenture, when a single trustee is acting for all debt securities issued under the indenture, are called the "indenture securities." The indenture also provides that there may be more than one trustee thereunder, each with respect to one or more different series of indenture securities. See "— Resignation of Trustee" below. At a time when two or more trustees are acting under the indenture, each with respect to only certain series, the term "indenture securities" means the one or more series of debt securities with respect to which each respective trustee is acting. In the event that there is more than one trustee under the indenture, the powers and trust obligations of each trustee described in this prospectus will extend only to the one or more series of indenture securities for which it is trustee. If two or more trustees are acting under the indenture, then the indenture securities for which each trustee is acting would be treated as if issued under separate indentures.

Except as described under "— Events of Default" and "— Merger or Consolidation" below, the indenture does not contain any provisions that give you protection in the event we issue a large amount of debt or we are acquired by another entity.

We refer you to the prospectus supplement for information with respect to any deletions from, modifications of or additions to the Events of Default or our covenants, as applicable, that are described below, including any addition of a covenant or other provision providing event risk protection or similar protection.

We have the ability to issue indenture securities with terms different from those of indenture securities previously issued and, without the consent of the holders thereof, to reopen a previous issue of a series of indenture securities and issue additional indenture securities of that series unless the reopening was restricted when that series was created.

Conversion and Exchange

If any debt securities are convertible into or exchangeable for other securities, the prospectus supplement will explain the terms and conditions of the conversion or exchange, including the conversion price or exchange ratio (or the calculation method), the conversion or exchange period (or how the period will be determined), if conversion or exchange will be mandatory or at the option of the holder or us, provisions for adjusting the conversion price or the exchange ratio, and provisions affecting conversion or exchange in the event of the redemption of the underlying debt securities. These terms may also include provisions under which the number or amount of other securities to be received by the holders of the debt securities upon conversion or exchange would be calculated according to the market price of the other securities as of a time stated in the prospectus supplement.

Issuance of Securities in Registered Form

We may issue the debt securities in registered form, in which case we may issue them either in book-entry form only or in "certificated" form. Debt securities issued in book-entry form will be represented by global securities. We expect that we will usually issue debt securities in book-entry only form represented by global securities.

Book-Entry Holders

We will issue registered debt securities in book-entry form only, unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement. This means debt securities will be represented by one or more global securities registered in the name of a depositary that will hold them on behalf of financial institutions that participate in the depositary's book-entry system. These participating institutions, in turn, hold beneficial interests in the debt securities held by the depositary or its nominee. These institutions may hold these interests on behalf of themselves or customers.

Under the indenture, only the person in whose name a debt security is registered is recognized as the holder of that debt security. Consequently, for debt securities issued in book-entry form, we will recognize only the depositary as the holder of the debt securities and we will make all payments on the debt securities to the depositary. The depositary will then pass along the payments it receives to its participants, which in turn will pass the payments along to their customers who are the beneficial owners. The depositary and its participants do so under agreements they have made with one another or with their customers; they are not obligated to do so under the terms of the debt securities.

As a result, investors will not own debt securities directly. Instead, they will own beneficial interests in a global security, through a bank, broker or other financial institution that participates in the depositary's book-entry system or holds an interest through a participant. As long as the debt securities are represented by one or more global securities, investors will be indirect holders, and not holders, of the debt securities.

Street Name Holders

In the future, we may issue debt securities in certificated form or terminate a global security. In these cases, investors may choose to hold their debt securities in their own names or in "street name." Debt securities held in street name are registered in the name of a bank, broker or other financial institution chosen by the investor, and the investor would hold a beneficial interest in those debt securities through the account he or she maintains at that institution.

For debt securities held in street name, we will recognize only the intermediary banks, brokers and other financial institutions in whose names the debt securities are registered as the holders of those debt securities, and we will make all payments on those debt securities to them. These institutions will pass along the payments they receive to their customers who are the beneficial owners, but only because they agree to do so in their customer agreements or because they are legally required to do so. Investors who hold debt securities in street name will be indirect holders, and not holders, of the debt securities.

Legal Holders

Our obligations, as well as the obligations of the applicable trustee and those of any third parties employed by us or the applicable trustee, run only to the legal holders of the debt securities. We do not have obligations to investors who hold beneficial interests in global securities, in street name or by any other indirect means. This will be the case whether an investor chooses to be an indirect holder of a debt security or has no choice because we are issuing the debt securities only in book-entry form.

For example, once we make a payment or give a notice to the holder, we have no further responsibility for the payment or notice even if that holder is required, under agreements with depositary participants or customers or by law, to pass it along to the indirect holders but does not do so. Similarly, if we want to obtain the approval of the holders for any purpose (for example, to amend an indenture or to relieve us of the consequences of a default or of our obligation to comply with a particular provision of an indenture), we would seek the approval only from the holders, and not the indirect holders, of the debt securities. Whether and how the holders contact the indirect holders is up to the holders.

When we refer to you in this Description of Our Debt Securities, we mean those who invest in the debt securities being offered by this prospectus, whether they are the holders or only indirect holders of those debt securities. When we refer to your debt securities, we mean the debt securities in which you hold a direct or indirect interest.

Special Considerations for Indirect Holders

If you hold debt securities through a bank, broker or other financial institution, either in book-entry form or in street name, we urge you to check with that institution to find out:

- how it handles securities payments and notices;
- whether it imposes fees or charges;
- how it would handle a request for the holders' consent, if ever required;
- whether and how you can instruct it to send you debt securities registered in your own name so you can be a holder, if that is permitted in the future for a particular series of debt securities;
- how it would exercise rights under the debt securities if there were a default or other event triggering the need for holders to act to protect their interests; and
- if the debt securities are in book-entry form, how the depositary's rules and procedures will affect these matters.

Global Securities

As noted above, we usually will issue debt securities as registered securities in book-entry form only. A global security represents one or any other number of individual debt securities. Generally, all debt securities represented by the same global securities will have the same terms.

Each debt security issued in book-entry form will be represented by a global security that we deposit with and register in the name of a financial institution or its nominee that we select. The financial institution that we select for this purpose is called the depositary. Unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, known as DTC, will be the depositary for all debt securities issued in book-entry form.

A global security may not be transferred to or registered in the name of anyone other than the depositary or its nominee, unless special termination situations arise. We describe those situations below under "— Termination of a Global Security." As a result of these arrangements, the depositary, or its nominee, will be the sole registered owner and holder of all debt securities represented by a global security, and investors will be permitted to own only beneficial interests in a global security. Beneficial interests must be held by means of an account with a broker, bank or other financial institution that in turn has an account with the depositary or with another institution that has an account with the depositary. Thus, an investor whose security is represented by a global security will not be a holder of the debt security, but only an indirect holder of a beneficial interest in the global security.

Special Considerations for Global Securities

As an indirect holder, an investor's rights relating to a global security will be governed by the account rules of the investor's financial institution and of the depositary, as well as general laws relating to securities transfers. The depositary that holds the global security will be considered the holder of the debt securities represented by the global security.

If debt securities are issued only in the form of a global security, an investor should be aware of the following:

- an investor cannot cause the debt securities to be registered in his or her name and cannot obtain certificates for his or her interest in the debt securities, except in the special situations we describe below;

- an investor will be an indirect holder and must look to his or her own bank or broker for payments on the debt securities and protection of his or her legal rights relating to the debt securities, as we describe under "— Issuance of Securities in Registered Form" above;
- an investor may not be able to sell interests in the debt securities to some insurance companies and other institutions that are required by law to own their securities in non-book-entry form;
- an investor may not be able to pledge his or her interest in a global security in circumstances where certificates representing the debt securities must be delivered to the lender or other beneficiary of the pledge in order for the pledge to be effective;
- the depositary's policies, which may change from time to time, will govern payments, transfers, exchanges and other matters relating to an investor's interest in a global security. We and the trustee have no responsibility for any aspect of the depositary's actions or for its records of ownership interests in a global security. We and the trustee also do not supervise the depositary in any way;
- if we redeem less than all the debt securities of a particular series being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount to be redeemed from each of its participants holding that series;
- an investor is required to give notice of exercise of any option to elect repayment of its debt securities, through its participant, to the applicable trustee and to deliver the related debt securities by causing its participant to transfer its interest in those debt securities, on DTC's records, to the applicable trustee;
- DTC requires that those who purchase and sell interests in a global security deposited in its book-entry system use immediately available funds; your broker or bank may also require you to use immediately available funds when purchasing or selling interests in a global security; and
- financial institutions that participate in the depositary's book-entry system, and through which an investor holds its interest in a global security, may also have their own policies affecting payments, notices and other matters relating to the debt securities; there may be more than one financial intermediary in the chain of ownership for an investor; we do not monitor and are not responsible for the actions of any of those intermediaries.

Termination of a Global Security

If a global security is terminated for any reason, interests in it will be exchanged for certificates in non-book-entry form (certificated securities). After that exchange, the choice of whether to hold the certificated debt securities directly or in street name will be up to the investor. Investors must consult their own banks or brokers to find out how to have their interests in a global security transferred on termination to their own names, so that they will be holders. We have described the rights of legal holders and street name investors under "— Issuance of Securities in Registered Form" above.

The prospectus supplement may list situations for terminating a global security that would apply only to the particular series of debt securities covered by the prospectus supplement. If a global security is terminated, only the depositary, and not we or the applicable trustee, is responsible for deciding the investors in whose names the debt securities represented by the global security will be registered and, therefore, who will be the holders of those debt securities.

Payment and Paying Agents

We will pay interest to the person listed in the applicable trustee's records as the owner of the debt security at the close of business on a particular day in advance of each due date for interest, even if that person no longer owns the debt security on the interest due date. That day, usually about two weeks in advance of the interest due date, is called the "record date." Because we will pay all the interest for an interest period to the holders on the record date, holders buying and selling debt securities must work out between themselves the appropriate purchase price. The most common manner is to adjust the sales price of the debt securities to prorate interest fairly between buyer and seller based on their respective ownership periods within the particular interest period. This prorated interest amount is called "accrued interest."

Payments on Global Securities

We will make payments on a global security in accordance with the applicable policies of the depositary as in effect from time to time. Under those policies, we will make payments directly to the depositary, or its nominee, and not to any indirect holders who own beneficial interests in the global security. An indirect holder's right to those payments will be governed by the rules and practices of the depositary and its participants, as described under "— Special Considerations for Global Securities."

Payments on Certificated Securities

We will make payments on a certificated debt security as follows. We will pay interest that is due on an interest payment date to the holder of debt securities as shown on the trustee's records as of the close of business on the regular record date at our office and/or at other offices that may be specified in the prospectus supplement. We will make all payments of principal and premium, if any, by check at the office of the applicable trustee and/or at other offices that may be specified in the prospectus supplement or in a notice to holders against surrender of the debt security.

Alternatively, at our option, we may pay any cash interest that becomes due on the debt security by mailing a check to the holder at his, her or its address shown on the trustee's records as of the close of business on the regular record date or by transfer to an account at a bank in the United States, in either case, on the due date.

Payment When Offices Are Closed

If any payment is due on a debt security on a day that is not a business day, we will make the payment on the next day that is a business day. Payments made on the next business day in this situation will be treated under the indenture as if they were made on the original due date, except as otherwise indicated in the attached prospectus supplement. Such payment will not result in a default under any debt security or the indenture, and no interest will accrue on the payment amount from the original due date to the next day that is a business day.

Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how they will receive payments on their debt securities.

Events of Default

You will have rights if an Event of Default occurs in respect of the debt securities of your series and is not cured, as described later in this subsection.

The term "Event of Default" in respect of the debt securities of your series means any of the following:

- we do not pay the principal of, or any premium on, a debt security of the series within five days of its due date;
- we do not pay interest on a debt security of the series when due, and such default is not cured within 30 days;

- we remain in breach of a covenant in respect of debt securities of the series for 60 days after we receive a written notice of default stating we are in breach (the notice must be sent by either the trustee or holders of at least 25% of the principal amount of the debt securities of the series);
- we file for bankruptcy or certain other events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization occur and remain undischarged or unstayed for a period of 90 days;
- the series of debt securities has an asset coverage, as such term is defined in the 1940 Act, of less than 100% on the last business day of each of twenty-four consecutive calendar months, after giving effect to any exemptive relief granted to the Company by the SEC; or
- any other Event of Default in respect of debt securities of the series described in the prospectus supplement occurs.

An Event of Default for a particular series of debt securities does not necessarily constitute an Event of Default for any other series of debt securities issued under the same or any other indenture. The trustee may withhold notice to the holders of the debt securities of any default, except in the payment of principal, premium, interest, or sinking or purchase fund installment, if it in good faith considers the withholding of notice to be in the interest of the holders.

Remedies if an Event of Default Occurs

If an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the trustee or the holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series may (and the trustee shall at the request of such holders) declare the entire principal amount of all the debt securities of that series to be due and immediately payable. This is called a declaration of acceleration of maturity. In certain circumstances, a declaration of acceleration of maturity may be canceled by the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series if (1) we have deposited with the trustee all amounts due and owing with respect to the securities (other than principal that has become due solely by reason of such acceleration) and certain other amounts, and (2) any other Events of Default have been cured or waived.

The trustee is not required to take any action under the indenture at the request of any holders unless the holders offer the trustee protection from expenses and liability reasonably satisfactory to it (called an “indemnity”). If indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the trustee is provided, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the relevant series may direct the time, method and place of conducting any lawsuit or other formal legal action seeking any remedy available to the trustee. The trustee may refuse to follow those directions in certain circumstances. No delay or omission in exercising any right or remedy will be treated as a waiver of that right, remedy or Event of Default.

Before you are allowed to bypass your trustee and bring your own lawsuit or other formal legal action or take other steps to enforce your rights or protect your interests relating to the debt securities, the following must occur:

- you must give the trustee written notice that an Event of Default with respect to the relevant debt securities has occurred and remains uncured;
- the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of all outstanding debt securities of the relevant series must make a written request that the trustee take action because of the default and must offer the trustee indemnity, security or both reasonably satisfactory to it against the cost, expenses, and other liabilities of taking that action;
- the trustee must not have taken action for 60 days after receipt of the above notice and offer of indemnity and/or security; and

- the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series must not have given the trustee a direction inconsistent with the above notice during that 60-day period.

However, you are entitled at any time to bring a lawsuit for the payment of money due on your debt securities on or after the due date.

Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how to give notice or direction to or make a request of the trustee and how to declare or cancel an acceleration of maturity.

Each year, we will furnish to each trustee a written statement of certain of our officers certifying that to their knowledge we are in compliance with the indenture and the debt securities, or else specifying any default.

Waiver of Default

Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series may waive any past defaults other than a default:

- in the payment of principal or interest; or
- in respect of a covenant that cannot be modified or amended without the consent of each holder.

Merger or Consolidation

Under the terms of the indenture, we are generally permitted to consolidate or merge with another entity. We are also permitted to sell all or substantially all of our assets to another entity. However, we may not take any of these actions unless all the following conditions are met:

- where we merge out of existence or convey or transfer our assets substantially as an entirety, the resulting entity must agree to be legally responsible for our obligations under the debt securities;
- the merger or sale of assets must not cause a default on the debt securities and we must not already be in default (unless the merger or sale would cure the default). For purposes of this no-default test, a default would include an Event of Default that has occurred and has not been cured, as described under “Events of Default” above. A default for this purpose would also include any event that would be an Event of Default if the requirements for giving us a notice of default or our default having to exist for a specific period of time were disregarded;
- we must deliver certain certificates and documents to the trustee; or
- we must satisfy any other requirements specified in the prospectus supplement relating to a particular series of debt securities.

Modification or Waiver

There are three types of changes we can make to the indenture and the debt securities issued thereunder.

Changes Requiring Your Approval

First, there are changes that we cannot make to your debt securities without your specific approval. The following is a list of those types of changes:

- change the stated maturity of the principal of or interest on a debt security or the terms of any sinking fund with respect to any security;
- reduce any amounts due on a debt security;
- reduce the amount of principal payable upon acceleration of the maturity of an original issue discount or indexed security following a default or upon the redemption thereof or the amount thereof provable in a bankruptcy proceeding;
- adversely affect any right of repayment at the holder’s option;
- change the place or currency of payment on a debt security (except as otherwise described in the prospectus or prospectus supplement);
- impair your right to sue for payment;
- adversely affect any right to convert or exchange a debt security in accordance with its terms;
- modify the subordination provisions in the indenture in a manner that is adverse to outstanding holders of the debt securities;
- reduce the percentage of holders of debt securities whose consent is needed to modify or amend the indenture;
- reduce the percentage of holders of debt securities whose consent is needed to waive compliance with certain provisions of the indenture or to waive certain defaults;
- modify any other aspect of the provisions of the indenture dealing with supplemental indentures with the consent of holders, waiver of past defaults, changes to the quorum or voting requirements or the waiver of certain covenants; and
- change any obligation we have to pay additional amounts.

Changes Not Requiring Approval

The second type of change does not require any vote by the holders of the debt securities. This type is limited to clarifications, establishment of the form or terms of new securities of any series as permitted by the indenture and certain other changes that would not adversely affect holders of the outstanding debt securities in any material respect. We also do not need any approval to make any change that affects only debt securities to be issued under the indenture after the change takes effect.

Changes Requiring Majority Approval

Any other change to the indenture and the debt securities would require the following approval:

- if the change affects only one series of debt securities, it must be approved by the holders of a majority in principal amount of that series; and
- if the change affects more than one series of debt securities issued under the same indenture, it must be approved by the holders of a majority in principal amount of all of the series affected by the change, with all affected series voting together as one class for this purpose.

In each case, the required approval must be given by written consent.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of a series of debt securities issued under the indenture, voting together as one class for this purpose, may waive our compliance with some of our covenants applicable to that series of debt securities. However, we cannot obtain a waiver of a payment default or of any of the matters covered by the bullet points included above under "— Changes Requiring Your Approval."

Further Details Concerning Voting

When taking a vote, we will use the following rules to decide how much principal to attribute to a debt security:

- for original issue discount securities, we will use the principal amount that would be due and payable on the voting date if the maturity of these debt securities were accelerated to that date because of a default;
- for debt securities whose principal amount is not known (for example, because it is based on an index), we will use the principal face amount at original issuance or a special rule for that debt security described in the prospectus supplement; and
- for debt securities denominated in one or more foreign currencies, we will use the U.S. dollar equivalent.

Debt securities will not be considered outstanding, and therefore not eligible to vote, if we have deposited or set aside in trust money for their payment or redemption or if we, any other obligor, or any affiliate of us or any obligor own such debt securities. Debt securities will also not be eligible to vote if they have been fully defeased as described later under "— Defeasance — Full Defeasance."

We will generally be entitled to set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the holders of outstanding indenture securities that are entitled to vote or take other action under the indenture. However, the record date may not be more than 30 days before the date of the first solicitation of holders to vote on or take such action. If we set a record date for a vote or other action to be taken by holders of one or more series, that vote or action may be taken only by persons who are holders of outstanding indenture securities of those series on the record date and must be taken within eleven months following the record date.

Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how approval may be granted or denied if we seek to change the indenture or the debt securities or request a waiver.

Defeasance

The following provisions will be applicable to each series of debt securities unless we state in the applicable prospectus supplement that the provisions of covenant defeasance and full defeasance will not be applicable to that series.

Covenant Defeasance

Under current U.S. federal tax law and the indenture, we can make the deposit described below and be released from some of the restrictive covenants in the indenture under which the particular series was issued. This is called "covenant defeasance." In that event, you would lose the protection of those restrictive covenants but would gain the protection of having money and government securities set aside in trust to repay your debt securities. If we achieved covenant defeasance and your debt securities were subordinated as described under "— Indenture Provisions — Subordination" below, such subordination would not prevent the trustee under the indenture from applying the funds available to it from the deposit described in the first bullet below to the payment of amounts due in respect of such debt securities for the benefit of the subordinated debt holders. In order to achieve covenant defeasance, we must do the following:

- we must deposit in trust for the benefit of all holders of a series of debt securities a combination of cash (in such currency in which such securities are then specified as payable at stated maturity) or government obligations applicable to such securities (determined on the basis of the currency in which such securities are then specified as payable at stated maturity) that will generate enough cash to make interest, principal and any other payments on the debt securities on their various due dates and any mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments;
- we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion of our counsel confirming that, under current U.S. federal income tax law, we may make the above deposit without causing you to be taxed on the debt securities any differently than if we did not make the deposit;
- we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion of our counsel stating that the above deposit does not require registration by us under the 1940 Act, as amended, and a legal opinion and officers' certificate stating that all conditions precedent to covenant defeasance have been complied with;
- defeasance must not result in a breach or violation of, or result in a default under, of the indenture or any of our other material agreements or instruments;
- no default or event of default with respect to such debt securities shall have occurred and be continuing and no defaults or events of default related to bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization shall occur during the next 90 days; and
- satisfy the conditions for covenant defeasance contained in any supplemental indentures.

If we accomplish covenant defeasance, you can still look to us for repayment of the debt securities if there were a shortfall in the trust deposit or the trustee is prevented from making payment. For example, if one of the remaining Events of Default occurred (such as our bankruptcy) and the debt securities became immediately due and payable, there might be such a shortfall. However, there is no assurance that we would have sufficient funds to make payment of the shortfall.

Full Defeasance

If there is a change in U.S. federal tax law or we obtain an IRS ruling, as described in the second bullet below, we can legally release ourselves from all payment and other obligations on the debt securities of a particular series (called "full defeasance") if we put in place the following other arrangements for you to be repaid:

- we must deposit in trust for the benefit of all holders of a series of debt securities a combination of cash (in such currency in which such securities are then specified as payable at stated maturity) or government obligations applicable to such securities (determined on the basis of the currency in which such securities are then specified as payable at stated maturity) that will generate enough cash to make interest, principal and any other payments on the debt securities on their various due dates and any mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments;

- we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion confirming that there has been a change in current U.S. federal tax law or an IRS ruling that allows us to make the above deposit without causing you to be taxed on the debt securities any differently than if we did not make the deposit. Under current U.S. federal tax law, the deposit and our legal release from the debt securities would be treated as though we paid you your share of the cash and notes or bonds at the time the cash and notes or bonds were deposited in trust in exchange for your debt securities and you would recognize gain or loss on the debt securities at the time of the deposit;
- we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion of our counsel stating that the above deposit does not require registration by us under the 1940 Act, as amended, and a legal opinion and officers' certificate stating that all conditions precedent to defeasance have been complied with;
- defeasance must not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, of the indenture or any of our other material agreements or instruments;
- no default or event of default with respect to such debt securities shall have occurred and be continuing and no defaults or events of default related to bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization shall occur during the next 90 days; and
- satisfy the conditions for full defeasance contained in any supplemental indentures.

If we ever did accomplish full defeasance, as described above, you would have to rely solely on the trust deposit for repayment of the debt securities. You could not look to us for repayment in the unlikely event of any shortfall. Conversely, the trust deposit would most likely be protected from claims of our lenders and other creditors if we ever became bankrupt or insolvent. If your debt securities were subordinated as described later under "— Indenture Provisions — Subordination", such subordination would not prevent the trustee under the indenture from applying the funds available to it from the deposit referred to in the first bullet of the preceding paragraph to the payment of amounts due in respect of such debt securities for the benefit of the subordinated debt holders.

Form, Exchange and Transfer of Certificated Registered Securities

If registered debt securities cease to be issued in book-entry form, they will be issued:

- only in fully registered certificated form;
- without interest coupons; and
- unless we indicate otherwise in the prospectus supplement, in denominations of $1,000 and amounts that are multiples of $1,000.

Holders may exchange their certificated securities for debt securities of smaller denominations or combined into fewer debt securities of larger denominations, as long as the total principal amount is not changed and as long as the denomination is greater than the minimum denomination for such securities.

Holders may exchange or transfer their certificated securities at the office of the trustee. We have appointed the trustee to act as our agent for registering debt securities in the names of holders transferring debt securities. We may appoint another entity to perform these functions or perform them ourselves.

Holders will not be required to pay a service charge to transfer or exchange their certificated securities, but they may be required to pay any tax or other governmental charge associated with the transfer or exchange. The transfer or exchange will be made only if our transfer agent is satisfied with the holder's proof of legal ownership.

If we have designated additional transfer agents for your debt security, they will be named in the prospectus supplement. We may appoint additional transfer agents or cancel the appointment of any particular transfer agent. We may also approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts.

If any certificated securities of a particular series are redeemable and we redeem less than all the debt securities of that series, we may block the transfer or exchange of those debt securities during the period beginning 15 days before the day we mail the notice of redemption and ending on the day of that mailing, in order to freeze the list of holders to prepare the mailing. We may also refuse to register transfers or exchanges of any certificated securities selected for redemption, except that we will continue to permit transfers and exchanges of the unredeemed portion of any debt security that will be partially redeemed.

If a registered debt security is issued in book-entry form, only the depositary will be entitled to transfer and exchange the debt security as described in this subsection, since it will be the sole holder of the debt security.

Resignation of Trustee

Each trustee may resign or be removed with respect to one or more series of indenture securities provided that a successor trustee is appointed to act with respect to these series and has accepted such appointment. In the event that two or more persons are acting as trustee with respect to different series of indenture securities under the indenture, each of the trustees will be a trustee of a trust separate and apart from the trust administered by any other trustee.

Indenture Provisions — Subordination

Upon any distribution of our assets upon our dissolution, winding up, liquidation or reorganization, the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on any indenture securities denominated as subordinated debt securities is to be subordinated to the extent provided in the indenture in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness (as defined below), but our obligation to you to make payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such subordinated debt securities will not otherwise be affected. In addition, no payment on account of principal (or premium, if any), sinking fund or interest, if any, may be made on such subordinated debt securities at any time unless full payment of all amounts due in respect of the principal (and premium, if any), sinking fund and interest on Senior Indebtedness has been made or duly provided for in money or money’s worth.

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing, any payment by us is received by the trustee in respect of subordinated debt securities or by the holders of any of such subordinated debt securities, upon our dissolution, winding up, liquidation or reorganization before all Senior Indebtedness is paid in full, the payment or distribution received by the trustee in respect of such subordinated debt securities or by the holders of any of such subordinated debt securities must be paid over to the holders of the Senior Indebtedness or on their behalf for application to the payment of all the Senior Indebtedness remaining unpaid until all the Senior Indebtedness has been paid in full, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to the holders of the Senior Indebtedness. Subject to the payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness upon this distribution by us, the holders of such subordinated debt securities will be subrogated to the rights of the holders of the Senior Indebtedness to the extent of payments made to the holders of the Senior Indebtedness out of the distributive share of such subordinated debt securities.

By reason of this subordination, in the event of a distribution of our assets upon our insolvency, certain of our senior creditors may recover more, ratably, than holders of any subordinated debt securities or the holders of any indenture securities that are not Senior Indebtedness. The indenture provides that these subordination provisions will not apply to money and securities held in trust under the defeasance provisions of the indenture.

Senior Indebtedness is defined in the indenture as the principal of (and premium, if any) and unpaid interest on:

- our indebtedness (including indebtedness of others guaranteed by us), whenever created, incurred, assumed or guaranteed, for money borrowed, that we have designated as “Senior Indebtedness” for purposes of the indenture and in accordance with the terms of the indenture (including any indenture securities designated as Senior Indebtedness), and
- renewals, extensions, modifications and refinancings of any of this indebtedness.

If this prospectus is being delivered in connection with the offering of a series of indenture securities denominated as subordinated debt securities, the accompanying prospectus supplement will set forth the approximate amount of our Senior Indebtedness and of our other Indebtedness outstanding as of a recent date.

Secured Indebtedness and Ranking

Certain of our indebtedness, including certain series of indenture securities, may be secured. The prospectus supplement for each series of indenture securities will describe the terms of any security interest for such series and will indicate the approximate amount of our secured indebtedness as of a recent date. Any unsecured indenture securities will effectively rank junior to any secured indebtedness, including any secured indenture securities, that we incur in the future to the extent of the value of the assets securing such future secured indebtedness. The debt securities, whether secured or unsecured, of the Company will rank structurally junior to all existing and future indebtedness (including trade payables) incurred by our subsidiaries, financing vehicles, or similar facilities.

In the event of our bankruptcy, liquidation, reorganization or other winding up, any of our assets that secure secured debt will be available to pay obligations on unsecured debt securities only after all indebtedness under such secured debt has been repaid in full from such assets. We advise you that there may not be sufficient assets remaining to pay amounts due on any or all unsecured debt securities then outstanding after fulfillment of this obligation. As a result, the holders of unsecured indenture securities may recover less, ratably, than holders of any of our secured indebtedness.

The Trustee under the Indenture

We intend to use a nationally recognized financial institution to serve as the trustee under the indenture.

Certain Considerations Relating to Foreign Currencies

Debt securities denominated or payable in foreign currencies may entail significant risks. These risks include the possibility of significant fluctuations in the foreign currency markets, the imposition or modification of foreign exchange controls and potential illiquidity in the secondary market. These risks will vary depending upon the currency or currencies involved and will be more fully described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR WARRANTS

The following is a general description of the terms of the warrants we may issue from time to time. Particular terms of any warrants we offer will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to such warrants.

We may issue warrants to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities. Such warrants may be issued independently or together with shares of common or preferred stock or a specified principal amount of debt securities and may be attached or separate from such securities. We will issue each series of warrants under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between us and a warrant agent. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency for or with holders or beneficial owners of warrants.

A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any series of warrants we may issue, including the following:

- the title of such warrants;
- the aggregate number of such warrants;
- the price or prices at which such warrants will be issued;
- the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which the price of such warrants may be payable;
- if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities with which the warrants are issued and the number of warrants issued with each such security or each principal amount of such security;
- in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, the principal amount of debt securities purchasable upon exercise of one warrant and the price at which and the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which this principal amount of debt securities may be purchased upon such exercise;
- in the case of warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, the number of shares of common stock or preferred stock, as the case may be, purchasable upon exercise of one warrant and the price at which and the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which these shares may be purchased upon such exercise;
- the date on which the right to exercise such warrants shall commence and the date on which such right will expire;
- whether such warrants will be issued in registered form or bearer form;
- if applicable, the minimum or maximum amount of such warrants which may be exercised at any one time;
- if applicable, the date on and after which such warrants and the related securities will be separately transferable;
- information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;
- the terms of the securities issuable upon exercise of the warrants;
- if applicable, a discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations; and
- any other terms of such warrants, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of such warrants.

We and the warrant agent may amend or supplement the warrant agreement for a series of warrants without the consent of the holders of the warrants issued thereunder to effect changes that are not inconsistent with the provisions of the warrants and that do not materially and adversely affect the interests of the holders of the warrants.

Prior to exercising their warrants, holders of warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities purchasable upon such exercise, including, in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, the right to receive principal, premium, if any, or interest payments, on the debt securities purchasable upon exercise or to enforce covenants in the applicable indenture or, in the case of warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, the right to receive distributions, if any, or payments upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up or to exercise any voting rights.

Under the 1940 Act, we may generally only offer warrants provided that (1) the warrants expire by their terms within ten years; (2) the exercise or conversion price is not less than the current market value at the date of issuance; (3) our stockholders authorize the proposal to issue such warrants, and our board of directors approves such issuance on the basis that the issuance is in our best interests and our stockholders; and (4) if the warrants are accompanied by other securities, the warrants are not separately transferable unless no class of such warrants and the securities accompanying them has been publicly distributed. The 1940 Act also provides that the amount of our voting securities that would result from the exercise of all outstanding warrants at the time of issuance may not exceed 25.0% of our outstanding voting securities. Our stockholders voted to allow us to issue warrants at our 2012 Annual Meeting of Stockholders.

REGULATION

We and Fund I have elected to be treated as BDCs under the 1940 Act and we intend to elect to be treated as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code. The 1940 Act contains prohibitions and restrictions relating to transactions between BDCs and their affiliates (including any investment advisors), principal underwriters and affiliates of those affiliates or underwriters and requires that a majority of the directors be persons other than “interested persons,” as that term is defined in the 1940 Act. In addition, the 1940 Act provides that we may not change the nature of our business so as to cease to be, or to withdraw our election as, a BDC unless approved by a majority of our outstanding voting securities, as that term is defined in the 1940 Act.

We may invest up to 100.0% of our assets in securities acquired directly from issuers in privately negotiated transactions. With respect to such securities, we may, for the purpose of public resale, be deemed an “underwriter” as that term is defined in the Securities Act. Our intention is to not write (sell) or buy put or call options to manage risks associated with any publicly-traded securities that may from time-to-time be held by our portfolio companies, except that we may enter into hedging transactions to manage the risks associated with interest rate fluctuations. However, we may purchase or otherwise receive warrants to purchase the common stock of our portfolio companies in connection with acquisition financing or other investments. Similarly, in connection with an acquisition, we may acquire rights to require the issuers of acquired securities or their affiliates to repurchase them under certain circumstances. We also do not intend to acquire securities issued by any investment company that exceed the limits imposed by the 1940 Act. Under these limits, we generally cannot acquire more than 3.0% of the total outstanding voting stock of any investment company, invest more than 5.0% of the value of our total assets in the securities of one investment company or invest more than 10.0% of the value of our total assets in the securities of more than one investment company. With regard to that portion of our portfolio invested in securities issued by investment companies, it should be noted that such investments might subject our stockholders to additional expenses. These policies are not fundamental and, as a result, each may be changed by the vote of a majority of our board of directors without stockholder approval.

Qualifying Assets

Under the 1940 Act, a BDC may not acquire any asset other than assets of the type listed in section 55(a) of the 1940 Act, which are referred to as “qualifying assets,” unless, at the time the acquisition is made, qualifying assets represent at least 70.0% of the company’s total assets. The principal categories of qualifying assets relevant to our business are the following:

(a) Securities purchased in transactions not involving any public offering from the issuer of such securities, which issuer (subject to certain limited exceptions) is an eligible portfolio company, or from any person who is, or has been during the preceding 13 months, an affiliated person of an eligible portfolio company, or from any other person, subject to such rules as may be prescribed by the SEC. An eligible portfolio company is defined in the 1940 Act as any issuer that:

- is organized under the laws of, and has its principal place of business in, the U.S.;
- is not an investment company (other than a small business investment company wholly-owned by the BDC) or a company that would be an investment company but for certain exclusions under the 1940 Act; and
- satisfies either of the following:
  - does not have any class of securities listed on a national securities exchange or has any class of securities listed on a national securities exchange subject to a $250.0 million market capitalization maximum; or
  - is controlled by a BDC or a group of companies including a BDC, the BDC actually exercises a controlling influence over the management or policies of the eligible portfolio company, and, as a result, the BDC has an affiliated person who is a director of the eligible portfolio company.

(b) Securities of any eligible portfolio company which we control.

(c) Securities purchased in a private transaction from a U.S. issuer that is not an investment company or from an affiliated person of the issuer, or in transactions incident to such a private transaction, if the issuer is in bankruptcy and subject to reorganization or if the issuer, immediately prior to the purchase of its securities, was unable to meet its obligations as they came due without material assistance other than conventional lending or financing arrangements.

(d) Securities of an eligible portfolio company purchased from any person in a private transaction if there is no ready market for such securities and we already own 60.0% of the outstanding equity of the eligible portfolio company.

(e) Securities received in exchange for or distributed on or with respect to securities described above, or pursuant to the exercise of warrants or rights relating to such securities.

(f) Cash, cash equivalents, U.S. government securities or high-quality debt securities that mature in one year or less from the date of investment.

The regulations defining qualifying assets may change over time. We may adjust our investment focus as needed to comply with and/or take advantage of any regulatory, legislative, administrative or judicial actions in this area.

Managerial Assistance to Portfolio Companies

A BDC must be organized and have its principal place of business in the U.S. and must be operated for the purpose of making investments in the types of securities described in (a), (b) or (c) above. However, in order to count portfolio securities as qualifying assets for the purpose of the 70.0% test, the BDC must either control the issuer of the securities or must offer to make available to the issuer of the securities significant managerial assistance; except that, when the BDC purchases such securities in conjunction with one or more other persons acting together, one of the other persons in the group may make available such managerial assistance. Making available managerial assistance means, among other things, any arrangement whereby the BDC, through its directors, officers or employees, offers to provide, and, if accepted, does so provide, significant guidance and counsel concerning the management, operations or business objectives and policies of a portfolio company. Our investment advisor, acting as our administrator, has agreed to provide such managerial assistance on our behalf to portfolio companies that request this assistance. We may receive fees for these services and will reimburse our investment advisor, acting as our administrator, for its allocated costs in providing such assistance.

Temporary Investments

Pending investment in other types of qualifying assets, as described above, our investments may consist of cash, cash equivalents, U.S. government securities, repurchase agreements and high-quality debt investments that mature in one year or less from the date of investment, which we refer to, collectively, as temporary investments, so that 70.0% of our assets are invested in qualifying assets or temporary investments. We may from time to time invest in U.S. Treasury bills or in repurchase agreements, so long as the agreements are fully collateralized by cash or securities issued by the U.S. government, including securities issued by certain U.S. government agencies. A repurchase agreement involves the purchase by an investor, such as us, of a specified security and the simultaneous agreement by the seller to repurchase it at an agreed-upon future date and at a price that is greater than the purchase price by an amount that reflects an agreed-upon interest rate. There is no percentage restriction on the proportion of our assets that may be invested in such repurchase agreements. However, if more than 25.0% of our total assets constitute repurchase agreements from a single counterparty (other than repurchase agreements fully collateralized by U.S. government securities), we would not satisfy the asset diversification requirements for qualification as a RIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Accordingly, we do not intend to enter into any such repurchase agreements that would cause us to fail such asset diversification requirements. Our investment advisor monitors the creditworthiness of the counterparties with which we enter into repurchase agreement transactions.

Senior Securities

We are permitted, under specified conditions, to issue multiple classes of indebtedness and one class of stock senior to our common stock if our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, is at least equal to 200.0% immediately after each such issuance (exclusive of the SBA debentures pursuant to our SEC exemptive relief). In addition, while any senior securities remain outstanding, we must make provisions to prohibit any distribution to our stockholders or the repurchase of such securities or shares unless we meet the applicable asset coverage ratios at the time of the distribution or repurchase. We may also borrow amounts up to 5.0% of the value of our total assets for temporary or emergency purposes without regard to asset coverage. For a discussion of the risks associated with leverage, see "Risk Factors — Risks Relating to Our Business and Structure — Regulations governing our operation as a BDC affect our ability to raise, and the way in which we raise, additional capital which may have a negative effect on our growth."

The SEC has proposed a new rule under the 1940 Act that would govern financial commitment transactions (defined to include reverse repurchase agreements, short sale borrowings and any firm or standby commitment agreement or similar agreement) by BDCs. Under the proposed rule, a BDC would be required to comply with one of two alternative portfolio limitations, one of which would have the effect of treating such financial commitment transactions as senior securities. There are no assurances as to when the SEC will adopt a final version of the proposed rules or as to the form that the final rules will take.

Codes of Ethics

We, Fund I and our investment advisor have adopted a joint code of ethics pursuant to Rule 17j-1 under the 1940 Act that establishes procedures for personal investments and restricts certain personal securities transactions. Additionally, our investment advisor has adopted a code of ethics pursuant to rule 204A-1 under the Advisers Act and in accordance with Rule 17j-1(c). Personnel subject to the code of ethics may invest in securities for their personal investment accounts, including securities that may be purchased or held by us, so long as such investments are made in accordance with the code's requirements. You may read and copy these codes at the SEC's Public Reference Room in Washington, D.C. You may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at (800) SEC-0300. You may also obtain copies of the joint code of ethics, after paying a duplicating fee, by electronic request at the following e-mail address: *publicinfo@sec.gov*, or by writing the SEC's Public Reference Section, 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. The joint code of ethics is also available on our website at *www.fdus.com*. We have also adopted a code of business conduct that is applicable to all officers, directors and employees of Fidus and our investment advisor that is available on our website.

Proxy Voting Policies and Procedures

In light of the types of investments held in our portfolio, it is unlikely that we will be called upon to vote our shares very often. In the event that we receive a proxy statement related to one of our portfolio companies, however, we have delegated our proxy voting responsibility to our investment advisor. The proxy voting policies and procedures of our investment advisor are set out below. The guidelines are reviewed periodically by our investment advisor and our Independent Directors, and, accordingly, are subject to change. For purposes of these proxy voting policies and procedures described below, "we," "our" and "us" refer to our investment advisor.

Introduction

As an investment adviser registered under the Advisers Act, our investment advisor has a fiduciary duty to act solely in our best interests. As part of this duty, our investment advisor recognizes that it must vote our securities in a timely manner free of conflicts of interest and in our best interests.

Our investment advisor's policies and procedures for voting proxies for its investment advisory clients are intended to comply with Section 206 of, and Rule 206(4)-6 under, the Advisers Act.

Proxy Policies

Our investment advisor will vote proxies relating to our portfolio securities in what it perceives to be the best interest of our stockholders. Our investment advisor reviews on a case-by-case basis each proposal submitted to a stockholder vote to determine its effect on the portfolio securities we hold. In most cases our investment advisor will vote in favor of proposals that it believes are likely to increase the value of the portfolio securities we hold. Although our investment advisor will generally vote against proposals that may have a negative effect on our portfolio securities, our investment advisor may vote for such a proposal if there exist compelling long-term reasons to do so.

Proxy voting decisions are made by our investment advisor's senior investment professionals who are responsible for monitoring each of our portfolio investments. To ensure that our investment advisor's vote is not the product of a conflict of interest, our investment advisor requires that (a) anyone involved in the decision-making process disclose to our chief compliance officer any potential conflict that he or she is aware of and any contact that he or she has had with any interested party regarding a proxy vote; and (b) employees involved in the decision-making process or vote administration are prohibited from revealing how our investment advisor intends to vote on a proposal in order to reduce any attempted influence from interested parties. Where conflicts of interest may be present, our investment advisor will disclose such conflicts to us, including our Independent Directors, and may request guidance from us on how to vote such proxies.

Proxy Voting Records

You may obtain information about how our investment advisor voted proxies for us by making a written request for proxy voting information to: Fidus Investment Corporation, 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201, Attention: Investor Relations, or by calling Fidus Investment Corporation collect at (847) 859-3940.

Compliance Policies and Procedures

We, Fund I and our investment advisor have each adopted and implemented written policies and procedures reasonably designed to prevent violation of federal securities laws and are required to review these compliance policies and procedures annually for their adequacy and the effectiveness of their implementation. Our chief compliance officer is responsible for administering these policies and procedures.

Other

Under the 1940 Act, we are required to provide and maintain a bond issued by a reputable fidelity insurance company to protect us against larceny and embezzlement. Furthermore, as a BDC, we are prohibited from protecting any director or officer against any liability to us or our stockholders arising from willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of such person's office.

We may also be prohibited under the 1940 Act from knowingly participating in certain transactions with our affiliates without the prior approval of our Independent Directors and, in some cases, prior approval by the SEC. On March 27, 2012, the SEC granted us and Fund I exemptive relief allowing us to operate effectively as one company and to take certain actions, including engaging in certain transactions with our affiliates, and to be subject to modified consolidated asset coverage requirements for senior securities issued by a BDC, that would otherwise be prohibited by the 1940 Act. Effective September 30, 2014, our exemptive relief was amended to include Fund II. Therefore, any SBA debentures issued by Fund II are not subject to the 200.0% asset coverage requirement.

Small Business Administration Regulations

The Funds are licensed by the SBA to operate as SBICs under Section 301(c) of the Small Business Investment Act of 1958. Fund I received its SBIC license on October 22, 2007 and Fund II received its SBIC license on May 28, 2013. We may issue SBA debentures to fund additional investments through the Funds.

SBICs are designed to stimulate the flow of private equity capital to eligible small businesses. Under SBA regulations, SBICs can provide financing in the form of debt and/or equity securities and provide consulting and advisory services to “eligible” small businesses. The Funds have typically invested in senior subordinated debt, acquired warrants and/or made other equity investments in qualifying small businesses.

Under current SBA regulations, eligible small businesses generally include businesses that (together with their affiliates) have a tangible net worth not exceeding $19.5 million and have average annual net income after U.S. federal income taxes not exceeding $6.5 million (average net income to be computed without benefit of any carryover loss) for the two most recent fiscal years. In addition, an SBIC must devote between 20.0% and 25.0% (depending upon when it was licensed, when it obtained leverage commitments, the amount of leverage drawn and when financings occur) of its investment activity to “smaller” concerns as defined by the SBA. A smaller concern generally includes businesses (including their affiliates) that have a tangible net worth not exceeding $6.0 million and have average annual net income after U.S. federal income taxes not exceeding $2.0 million (average net income to be computed without benefit of any net carryover loss) for the two most recent fiscal years. SBA regulations also provide alternative size standard criteria to determine eligibility for designation as an eligible small business or smaller concern, which criteria depend on the industry in which the business (including its affiliates) is engaged and are based on the number of employees and gross revenue. However, once an SBIC has invested in a portfolio company, it may continue to make follow-on investments in the portfolio company, regardless of the size of the portfolio company at the time of the follow-on investment, up to the time of the portfolio company’s initial public offering.

The SBA prohibits an SBIC from providing funds to small businesses for certain purposes, such as relending and investment outside the U.S., to businesses engaged in a few prohibited industries, and to certain “passive” (non-operating) companies. In addition, under SBA regulations, without prior SBA approval, an SBIC may not invest more than 30.0% of its regulatory capital in any one portfolio company (assuming the SBIC intends to draw leverage equal to twice its regulatory capital).

The SBA places certain limitations on the financing terms of investments by SBICs in portfolio companies (such as limiting the permissible interest rate on debt securities held by an SBIC in a portfolio company). SBA regulations allow an SBIC to exercise control over a small business for a period of seven years from the date on which the SBIC initially acquires its control position. This control period may be extended for an additional period of time with the SBA’s prior written approval.

The SBA restricts the ability of an SBIC to lend money to any of its officers, directors and employees or to invest in affiliates thereof. The SBA also prohibits, without prior SBA approval, a “change of control” of an SBIC or transfers that would result in any person (or a group of persons acting in concert) owning 10.0% or more of a class of capital stock of a licensed SBIC. A “change of control” is any event that would result in the transfer of the power, direct or indirect, to direct the management and policies of an SBIC, whether through ownership, contractual arrangements or otherwise.

An SBIC (or group of SBICs under common control) may generally have outstanding debentures guaranteed by the SBA in amounts up to two times the amount of the regulatory capital of the SBIC(s). Debentures guaranteed by the SBA have a maturity of ten years, require semi-annual payments of interest, and do not require any principal payments prior to maturity. The amount of SBA-guaranteed debentures that affiliated SBIC funds can have outstanding is limited to $350.0 million, subject to SBA approval.

SBICs must invest idle funds that are not being used to make loans in investments permitted under SBA regulations in the following limited types of securities: (i) direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to principal and interest by, the U.S. government, which mature within 15 months from the date of the investment; (ii) repurchase agreements with federally insured institutions with a maturity of seven days or less (and the securities underlying the repurchase obligations must be direct obligations of or guaranteed by the federal government); (iii) certificates of deposit with a maturity of one year or less, issued by a federally insured institution; (iv) a deposit account in a federally insured institution that is subject to a withdrawal restriction of one year or less; (v) a checking account in a federally insured institution; or (vi) a reasonable petty cash fund.

SBICs are periodically examined and audited by the SBA’s staff to determine their compliance with SBA regulations and are periodically required to file certain forms with the SBA.

Neither the SBA nor the U.S. government or any of its agencies or officers has approved any ownership interest to be issued by us or any obligation that we or any of our subsidiaries may incur.

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, or the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, imposes a wide variety of regulatory requirements on publicly held companies and their insiders. Many of these requirements affect us. For example:

- pursuant to Rule 13a-14 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, our principal executive officer and principal financial officer must certify the accuracy of the financial statements contained in our periodic reports;
- pursuant to Item 307 under Regulation S-K, our periodic reports must disclose our conclusions about the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures;
- pursuant to Rule 13a-15 under the Exchange Act, our management must prepare an annual report regarding its assessment of our internal control over financial reporting, which must be audited by our independent registered public accounting firm; and
- pursuant to Item 308 of Regulation S-K and Rule 13a-15 under the Exchange Act, our periodic reports must disclose whether there were significant changes in our internal controls over financial reporting or in other factors that could significantly affect these controls subsequent to the date of their evaluation, including any corrective actions with regard to significant deficiencies and material weaknesses.

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires us to review our current policies and procedures to determine whether we comply with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the regulations promulgated under such act. We will continue to monitor our compliance with all regulations that are adopted under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and will take actions necessary to ensure that we comply with that act.

The NASDAQ Global Select Market Corporate Governance Regulations

The NASDAQ Global Select Market has adopted corporate governance regulations with which listed companies must comply. We are in compliance with such corporate governance listing standards applicable to BDCs.

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We may offer, from time to time, in one or more offerings or series, together or separately, up to $300,000,000 of our securities. We may sell our securities through underwriters or dealers, directly to one or more purchasers or through agents or through a combination of any such methods of sale. Any underwriter or agent involved in the offer and sale of our securities will also be named in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The distribution of our securities may be effected from time to time in one or more transactions at a fixed price or prices, which may be changed, at prevailing market prices at the time of sale, at prices related to such prevailing market prices, or at negotiated prices, provided, however, that the offering price per share of our securities less any underwriting commissions or discounts must equal or exceed the net asset value per share of our securities except that we may sell shares of our securities at a price below net asset value per share if a majority of the number of beneficial holders of our stock have approved such a sale or if the following conditions are met: (i) holders of a majority of our stock and a majority of our stock not held by affiliated persons have approved issuance at less than net asset value per share during the one year period prior to such sale; (ii) a majority of our directors who have no financial interest in the sale and a majority of such directors who are not interested persons of us have determined that such sale would be in our best interest and in the best interests of our stockholders; and (iii) a majority of our directors who have no financial interest in the sale and a majority of such directors who are not interested persons of us, in consultation with the underwriter or underwriters of the offering if it is to be underwritten, have determined in good faith, and as of a time immediately prior to the first solicitation by or on behalf of us of firm commitments to purchase such securities or immediately prior to the issuance of such securities, that the price at which such securities are to be sold is not less than a price which closely approximates the market value of those securities, less any distributing commission or discount.

On June 15, 2017, our common stockholders voted to allow us to issue common stock at a price below net asset value per share for a period of one year ending on the earlier of June 15, 2018 or the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. We expect to present to our stockholders a similar proposal at our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders. The maximum number of shares issuable below net asset value pursuant to the authority granted by our stockholders that could result in such dilution is limited to 25.0% of the Company's then outstanding common stock immediately prior to each such sale. We do not intend to issue shares of our common stock below net asset value unless our board of directors determines that it would be in our stockholders' best interests to do so.

In connection with the sale of our securities, underwriters or agents may receive compensation from us or from purchasers of our securities, for whom they may act as agents, in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions. Underwriters may sell our securities to or through dealers and such dealers may receive compensation in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions from the underwriters and/or commissions from the purchasers for whom they may act as agents. Underwriters, dealers and agents that participate in the distribution of our securities may be deemed to be underwriters under the Securities Act, and any discounts and commissions they receive from us and any profit realized by them on the resale of our securities may be deemed to be underwriting discounts and commissions under the Securities Act. Any such underwriter or agent will be identified and any such compensation received from us will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

We may enter into derivative transactions with third parties, or sell securities not covered by this prospectus to third parties in privately negotiated transactions. If the applicable prospectus supplement indicates, in connection with those derivatives, the third parties may sell securities covered by this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement, including in short sale transactions. If so, the third party may use securities pledged by us or borrowed from us or others to settle those sales or to close out any related open borrowings of stock, and may use securities received from us in settlement of those derivatives to close out any related open borrowings of stock. The third parties in such sale transactions will be underwriters and, if not identified in this prospectus, will be identified in the applicable prospectus supplement (or a post-effective amendment).

Any of our common stock sold pursuant to a prospectus supplement will be listed on the Nasdaq Global Select Market, or another exchange on which our common stock is traded.

Under agreements into which we may enter, underwriters, dealers and agents who participate in the distribution of our securities may be entitled to indemnification by us against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act. Underwriters, dealers and agents may engage in transactions with, or perform services for, us in the ordinary course of business.

If so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will authorize underwriters or other persons acting as our agents to solicit offers by certain institutions to purchase our securities from us pursuant to contracts providing for payment and delivery on a future date. Institutions with which such contracts may be made include commercial and savings banks, insurance companies, pension funds, investment companies, educational and charitable institutions and others, but in all cases such institutions must be approved by us. The obligations of any purchaser under any such contract will be subject to the condition that the purchase of our securities shall not at the time of delivery be prohibited under the laws of the jurisdiction to which such purchaser is subject. The underwriters and such other agents will not have any responsibility in respect of the validity or performance of such contracts. Such contracts will be subject only to those conditions set forth in the prospectus supplement, and the prospectus supplement will set forth the commission payable for solicitation of such contracts.

In order to comply with the securities laws of certain states, if applicable, our securities offered hereby will be sold in such jurisdictions only through registered or licensed brokers or dealers. In addition, in certain states, our securities may not be sold unless they have been registered or qualified for sale in the applicable state or an exemption from the registration or qualification requirement is available and is complied with.

The maximum commission or discount to be received by any member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. will not be greater than 10.0% for the sale of any securities being registered.

CUSTODIAN, TRANSFER AND DIVIDEND PAYING AGENT AND REGISTRAR

Our securities are held by U.S. Bank National Association pursuant to a custody agreement. The principal business address of U.S. Bank National Association is Corporate Trust Services, One Federal Street, 3rd Floor, Boston, MA 02110, telephone: (617) 603-6538. American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC will serve as our transfer agent, distribution paying agent and registrar. The principal business address of American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC is 59 Maiden Lane, Plaza Level, New York, New York 10038, telephone: (800) 937-5449.

BROKERAGE ALLOCATION AND OTHER PRACTICES

Since we will acquire and dispose of many of our investments in privately negotiated transactions, many of the transactions that we engage in will not require the use of brokers or the payment of brokerage commissions. Subject to policies established by our board of directors, our investment advisor will be primarily responsible for selecting brokers and dealers to execute transactions with respect to the publicly-traded securities portion of our portfolio transactions and the allocation of brokerage commissions. Our investment advisor does not expect to execute transactions through any particular broker or dealer but will seek to obtain the best net results for us under the circumstances, taking into account such factors as price (including the applicable brokerage commission or dealer spread), size of order, difficulty of execution and operational facilities of the firm and the firm's risk and skill in positioning blocks of securities. Our investment advisor generally will seek reasonably competitive trade execution costs but will not necessarily pay the lowest spread or commission available. Subject to applicable legal requirements and consistent with Section 28(e) of the Exchange Act, our investment advisor may select a broker based upon brokerage or research services provided to our investment advisor and us and any other clients. In return for such services, we may pay a higher commission than other brokers would charge if our investment advisor determines in good faith that such commission is reasonable in relation to the services provided.

LEGAL MATTERS

Certain legal matters will be passed upon for us by Eversheds Sutherland (US) LLP. Eversheds Sutherland (US) LLP also represents our investment advisor.

INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

The consolidated financial statements, the related senior securities table and the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting appearing in this prospectus and registration statement have been audited by RSM US LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm located at One South Wacker Drive, Suite 800, Chicago, Illinois 60606, as stated in their reports appearing elsewhere herein, and are included in reliance upon such reports and upon the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form N-2, together with all amendments and related exhibits, under the Securities Act, with respect to the securities offered by this prospectus. The registration statement contains additional information about us and the securities being offered by this prospectus.

We file with or submit to the SEC annual, quarterly and current periodic reports, proxy statements and other information meeting the informational requirements of the Exchange Act. You may inspect and copy these reports, proxy statements and other information, as well as the registration statement and related exhibits and schedules, at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549-0102. You may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at (202) 551-8090. We maintain a website at *http://www.fdus.com* and intend to make all of our annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other publicly filed information available, free of charge, on or through our website. Information contained on our website is not incorporated into this prospectus supplement, and you should not consider information on our website to be part of this prospectus supplement. You may also obtain such information by contacting us in writing at 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201, Attention: Investor Relations. The SEC maintains a website that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information we file with the SEC at *http://www.sec.gov*. Copies of these reports, proxy and information statements and other information may also be obtained, after paying a duplicating fee, by electronic request at the following e-mail address: publicinfo@sec.gov, or by writing the SEC's Public Reference Section, 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549-0102.

PRIVACY NOTICE

We are committed to maintaining the privacy of our stockholders and to safeguarding their nonpublic personal information. The following information is provided to help you understand what personal information we collect, how we protect that information and why, in certain cases, we may share information with select other parties.

From time to time, we may receive nonpublic personal information relating to our stockholders. We do not disclose nonpublic personal information about our stockholders or former stockholders to anyone, except as required by law or as is necessary in order to service stockholder accounts (for example, to a transfer agent or third-party administrator).

We restrict access to nonpublic personal information about our stockholders to employees of our investment advisor, its affiliates or authorized service providers that have a legitimate business need for the information. We maintain physical, electronic and procedural safeguards designed to protect the nonpublic personal information of our stockholders.

Table of Contents

Index to Consolidated Financial Statements

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Stockholders and the Board of Directors of
Fidus Investment Corporation and Subsidiaries

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated statements of assets and liabilities, including the consolidated schedules of investments, of Fidus Investment Corporation and Subsidiaries (collectively, the Company) as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the related consolidated statements of operations, changes in net assets and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes to the consolidated financial statements (collectively, the financial statements). In our opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Fidus Investment Corporation and Subsidiaries as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017 in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

We have also audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB) the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on criteria established in *Internal Control — Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission in 2013, and our report dated March 1, 2018, expressed an unqualified opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. Our procedures included confirmation of investments owned as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, by correspondence with custodians, portfolio companies or agents or by other appropriate procedures where replies from custodians, portfolio companies or agents were not received. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ RSM US LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2007.

Chicago, Illinois
March 1, 2018

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Stockholders and the Board of Directors of
Fidus Investment Corporation and Subsidiaries

Opinion on the Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

We have audited Fidus Investment Corporation and Subsidiaries' (collectively, the Company) internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on criteria established in *Internal Control — Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission in 2013. In our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on criteria established in *Internal Control — Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission in 2013.

We have also audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities, including the consolidated schedules of investments, of the Company as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the related consolidated statements of operations, changes in net assets and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017 and the related notes to the financial statements of the Company and our report dated March 1, 2018 expressed an unqualified opinion.

Basis for Opinion

The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting in the accompanying Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audit also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Definition and Limitations of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ RSM US LLP

Chicago, Illinois
March 1, 2018

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Statements of Assets and Liabilities
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
ASSETS		
Investments, at fair value		
Control investments (cost: $6,294 and $0, respectively)	$ 4,723	$ —
Affiliate investments (cost: $91,361 and $113,995, respectively)	123,011	132,013
Non-control/non-affiliate investments (cost: $480,139 and $386,519, respectively)	468,574	392,441
Total investments, at fair value (cost: $577,794 and $500,514, respectively)	596,308	524,454
Cash and cash equivalents	41,572	57,083
Interest receivable	7,411	4,407
Prepaid expenses and other assets	972	798
Total assets	$ 646,263	$ 586,742
LIABILITIES		
SBA debentures, net of deferred financing costs (Note 6)	$ 226,660	$ 219,901
Borrowings under Credit Facility, net of deferred financing costs (Note 6)	11,175	(462)
Accrued interest and fees payable	2,712	3,122
Management and incentive fees payable – due to affiliate	11,217	8,830
Administration fee payable and other – due to affiliate	562	570
Taxes payable	500	555
Accounts payable and other liabilities	164	441
Total liabilities	252,990	232,957
Commitments and contingencies (Note 7)		
NET ASSETS		
Common stock, $0.001 par value (100,000,000 shares authorized, 24,507,940 and 22,446,076 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively)	24	22
Additional paid-in capital	370,545	340,101
Undistributed net investment income	5,687	9,626
Accumulated net realized (loss) on investments, net of taxes and distributions	(2,001)	(19,908)
Accumulated net unrealized appreciation on investments	19,018	23,944
Total net assets	393,273	353,785
Total liabilities and net assets	$ 646,263	$ 586,742
Net asset value per common share	$ 16.05	$ 15.76

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Statements of Operations
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

	Years Ended December 31, 2017	2016	2015
Investment Income:			
Interest income			
Control investments	$ 56	$ —	$ 120
Affiliate investments	9,173	10,038	9,446
Non-control/non-affiliate investments	45,871	37,491	36,045
Total interest income	55,100	47,529	45,611
Payment-in-kind interest income			
Control investments	152	—	100
Affiliate investments	1,834	974	954
Non-control/non-affiliate investments	5,053	4,244	3,928
Total payment-in-kind interest income	7,039	5,218	4,982
Dividend income			
Affiliate investments	898	1,767	412
Non-control/non-affiliate investments	964	1,890	548
Total dividend income	1,862	3,657	960
Fee income			
Affiliate investments	378	339	591
Non-control/non-affiliate investments	4,085	3,354	2,072
Total fee income	4,463	3,693	2,663
Interest on idle funds and other income	151	132	53
Total investment income	68,615	60,229	54,269
Expenses:			
Interest and financing expenses	9,893	10,594	9,428
Base management fee	9,788	8,254	7,545
Incentive fee	10,968	10,369	6,481
Administrative service expenses	1,428	1,422	1,465
Professional fees	1,433	1,337	1,255
Other general and administrative expenses	1,208	1,227	1,212
Total expenses	34,718	33,203	27,386
Net investment income before income taxes	33,897	27,026	26,883
Income tax provision	220	425	390
Net investment income	33,677	26,601	26,493
Net realized and unrealized gains (losses) on investments:			
Net realized gains (losses):			
Control investments	—	(12,041)	—
Affiliate investments	4,460	713	1,686
Non-control/non-affiliate investments	13,444	(2,507)	7,845
Net change in unrealized appreciation (depreciation):			
Control investments	(1,571)	11,423	(5,207)
Affiliate investments	13,632	12,105	1,695
Non-control/non-affiliate investments	(17,487)	5,481	(6,574)
Income tax (provision) benefit from realized gains on investments	(2,204)	(205)	39
Net gain (loss) on investments	10,274	14,969	(516)
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	$ 43,951	$ 41,570	$ 25,977
Per common share data:			
Net investment income per share-basic and diluted	$ 1.43	$ 1.45	$ 1.64
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations per share-basic and diluted	$ 1.87	$ 2.27	$ 1.60
Dividends declared per share	$ 1.60	$ 1.60	$ 1.60
Weighted average number of shares outstanding- basic and diluted	23,527,188	18,283,715	16,201,449

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

Table of Contents

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Statements of Changes in Net Assets
(in thousands, except shares)

	Common Stock						
	Number of shares	Par value	Additional paid-in capital	Undistributed net investment income	Accumulated net realized (loss) on investments, net of taxes and distributions	Accumulated net unrealized (depreciation) appreciation on investments	Total net assets
Balances at December 31, 2014	16,051,037	$ 16	$ 243,008	$ 12,433	$ (15,999)	$ 3,805	$ 243,263
Public offerings of common stock, net of expenses (Note 8)	190,623	—	3,170	—	—	—	3,170
Shares issued under dividend reinvestment plan	59,072	—	899	—	—	—	899
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	—	—	—	26,493	9,992	(10,508)	25,977
Dividends declared	—	—	—	(25,947)	—	—	(25,947)
Tax reclassification of stockholders’ equity in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles	—	—	(770)	908	(138)	—	—
Balances at December 31, 2015	16,300,732	$ 16	$ 246,307	$ 13,887	$ (6,145)	$ (6,703)	$ 247,362
Public offerings of common stock, net of expenses (Note 8)	6,095,000	6	94,706	—	—	—	94,712
Shares issued under dividend reinvestment plan	50,344	—	788	—	—	—	788
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	—	—	—	26,601	(15,678)	30,647	41,570
Dividends declared	—	—	—	(30,647)	—	—	(30,647)
Tax reclassification of stockholders’ equity in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles	—	—	(1,700)	(215)	1,915	—	—
Balances at December 31, 2016	22,446,076	$ 22	$ 340,101	$ 9,626	$ (19,908)	$ 23,944	$ 353,785
Public offerings of common stock, net of expenses (Note 8)	2,012,500	2	32,328	—	—	—	32,330
Shares issued under dividend reinvestment plan	49,364	—	799	—	—	—	799
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	—	—	—	33,677	15,200	(4,926)	43,951
Dividends declared	—	—	—	(37,592)	—	—	(37,592)
Tax reclassification of stockholders’ equity in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles	—	—	(2,683)	(24)	2,707	—	—
Balances at December 31, 2017	24,507,940	$ 24	$ 370,545	$ 5,687	$ (2,001)	$ 19,018	$ 393,273

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
(in thousands)

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Cash Flows from Operating Activities:			
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	$ 43,951	$ 41,570	$ 25,977
Adjustments to reconcile net increase in net assets resulting from operations to net cash (used for) operating activities:			
Net change in unrealized depreciation (appreciation) on investments	5,426	(29,009)	10,086
Net realized (gain) loss on investments	(17,904)	13,835	(9,531)
Interest and dividend income paid-in-kind	(7,706)	(5,380)	(5,170)
Accretion of original issue discount	(385)	(234)	(578)
Accretion of loan origination fees	(1,472)	(1,128)	(797)
Purchase of investments	(214,681)	(197,801)	(136,380)
Proceeds from sales and repayments of investments	163,656	137,508	94,686
Proceeds from loan origination fees	1,212	1,024	770
Amortization of deferred financing costs	1,245	1,112	1,010
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Interest receivable	(3,004)	113	(60)
Prepaid expenses and other assets	(174)	424	(335)
Accrued interest and fees payable	(410)	282	487
Management and incentive fees payable – due to affiliate	2,387	3,607	315
Administration fee payable and other – due to affiliate	(8)	31	52
Taxes payable	(55)	155	72
Accounts payable and other liabilities	(277)	265	(72)
Net cash (used for) operating activities	(28,199)	(33,626)	(19,468)
Cash Flows from Financing Activities:			
Proceeds from stock offerings, net of expenses	32,330	94,712	3,170
Proceeds received from SBA debentures	49,000	10,500	40,000
Repayments of SBA debentures	(41,700)	—	—
Proceeds received from borrowings under Credit Facility	22,500	19,000	44,300
Repayments of borrowings under Credit Facility	(11,000)	(34,500)	(38,800)
Payment of deferred financing costs	(1,649)	(801)	(1,815)
Dividends paid to stockholders, including expenses	(36,793)	(29,859)	(25,048)
Net cash provided by financing activities	12,688	59,052	21,807
Net (decrease) increase in cash and cash equivalents	(15,511)	25,426	2,339
Cash and cash equivalents:			
Beginning of period	57,083	31,657	29,318
End of period	$ 41,572	$ 57,083	$ 31,657
Supplemental disclosure of cash flow information:			
Cash payments for interest	$ 9,058	$ 9,200	$ 7,931
Cash payments for taxes, net of tax refunds received	$ 2,479	$ 475	$ 279
Non-cash financing activities:			
Shares issued under dividend reinvestment plan	$ 799	$ 788	$ 901

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

Table of Contents

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments
December 31, 2017
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
Control Investments (t)							
FDS Avionics Corp.							
(dba Flight Display Systems)	Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		4.00%/11.00%	4/1/2020	$ 5,556	$ 5,546	$ 4,348	
Common Equity (7,478 shares) (j)					748	375	
					6,294	4,723	1%
Total Control Investments					$ 6,294	$ 4,723	1%
Affiliate Investments (l)							
Apex Microtechnology, Inc.	Electronic Components Supplier						
Warrant (2,293 shares) (m)					$ 220	$ 543	
Common Equity (11,690 shares)					1,169	2,857	
					1,389	3,400	1%
FAR Research Inc.	Specialty Chemicals						
Common Equity (1,396 units)					1,396	1,447	0%
Fiber Materials, Inc.	Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/1.00%	5/30/2022	$ 4,044	4,028	4,044	
Common Equity (10 units)					1,000	1,838	
					5,028	5,882	1%
Inflexxion, Inc.	Business Services						
First Lien Debt		5.00%/5.00%	12/16/2019	4,478	4,468	2,647	
Revolving Loan ($275 commitment) (j)		5.00%/5.00%	12/16/2019	275	273	163	
Preferred Equity (252,046 units)					252	—	
Preferred Equity (308,987 units)					309	—	
Preferred Equity (1,400 units)					1,400	—	
Preferred Equity (550,000 units)					200	—	
					6,902	2,810	1%
Medsurant Holdings, LLC	Healthcare Services						
Second Lien Debt		12.25%/0.75%	6/30/2020	8,824	8,776	8,824	
Preferred Equity (126,662 units) (h)					1,346	2,753	
Warrant (505,176 units) (h)(m)					4,516	10,048	
					14,638	21,625	5%
Microbiology Research Associates, Inc.	Healthcare Services						
Subordinated Debt		11.00%/1.50%	3/13/2022	8,667	8,649	8,667	
Common Equity (1,625,731 units) (j)					1,939	3,788	
					10,588	12,455	3%
Mirage Trailers LLC	Utility Equipment Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (k)(f)		12.88%/1.50%	11/25/2020	6,017	5,964	6,017	
Common Equity (2,500,000 shares) (g)					2,340	2,939	
					8,304	8,956	2%
Pfanstiehl, Inc.	Healthcare Products						
Subordinated Debt		10.50%/0.00%	9/29/2021	6,208	6,193	6,208	
Common Equity (8,500 units) (j)					850	9,070	
					7,043	15,278	4%
Pinnergy, Ltd.	Oil & Gas Services						
Second Lien Debt (k)		0.00%/10.00%	1/24/2020	9,300	9,286	9,300	
Common Equity - Class A-2 (42,500 units) (k)					3,000	15,621	
Common Equity - Class B (1,000 units) (k)					3,000	3,000	
					15,286	27,921	7%

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2017
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
Rhino Assembly Company, LLC	Specialty Distribution						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/1.00%	2/11/2023	$ 3,514	$ 3,498	$ 3,498	
Delayed Draw Commitment ($1,500 commitment) (i)(j)		12.00%/1.00%	5/17/2022	—	—	—	
Preferred Equity (7,500 units) (j)(s)					750	750	
					4,248	4,248	1%
Safety Products Group, LLC (n)	Safety Products Manufacturing						
Preferred Equity (749 units) (h)(j)					—	12	
Common Equity (676 units) ($2,852 commitment) (h)(j)					—	—	
					—	12	0%
Steward Holding LLC (dba Steward Advanced Materials)	Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/3.25%	5/12/2021	7,382	7,360	7,382	
Common Equity (1,000,000 units)					1,000	500	
					8,360	7,882	2%
Trantech Radiator Products, Inc.	Utility Equipment Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (j)		14.25%/0.00%	5/31/2018	6,994	6,992	6,694	
Common Equity (6,875 shares) (j)					688	13	
					7,680	6,707	2%
World Wide Packaging, LLC	Consumer Products						
Common Equity (1,517,573 units) (h)(j)					499	4,388	1%
Total Affiliate Investments					$91,361	$ 123,011	30%
Non-control/Non-affiliate Investments							
Accent Food Services, LLC	Vending Equipment Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (k)		10.00%/3.00%	5/30/2022	28,983	28,846	28,984	
Common Equity (7,885 units) (h)(j)					800	635	
					29,646	29,619	8%
Allied 100 Group, Inc.	Healthcare Products						
Subordinated Debt (k)		11.50%/0.00%	5/26/2020	13,000	12,973	13,000	
Common Equity (1,250,000 units) (j)					1,249	1,425	
					14,222	14,425	4%
Caldwell & Gregory, LLC	Laundry Services						
Subordinated Debt		0.00%/12.00%	5/31/2022	3,035	3,035	3,035	
Common Equity (500,000 units) (h)					500	625	
Warrant (242,121 units) (h)(m)					242	268	
					3,777	3,928	1%
Cardboard Box LLC (dba Anthony's Coal Fired Pizza)	Restaurants						
Common Equity (521,021 units) (j)					520	85	0%
Cavallo Bus Lines Holdings, LLC	Transportation Services						
Second Lien Debt		12.75%/0.00%	4/26/2021	7,395	7,370	6,572	2%
Comprehensive Logistics Co., Inc.	Business Services						
Subordinated Debt (k)		11.50%/4.50%	11/22/2021	15,775	15,716	15,775	4%
Consolidated Infrastructure Group Holdings, LP	Business Services						
Second Lien Debt		11.25%/1.50%	11/30/2022	2,002	1,993	1,993	
Common Equity (298 shares)					500	500	
					2,493	2,493	1%

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2017
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
ControlScan, Inc.	Information Technology Services						
Subordinated Debt (j)		11.00%/0.00%	1/28/2023	$ 6,750	$ 6,719	$ 6,719	
Common Equity (3,704 shares) (j)					4	4	
Preferred Equity (100 shares) (j)					996	996	
					7,719	7,719	2%
EBL, LLC (EbLens)	Retail						
Second Lien Debt (j)		12.00%/1.00%	1/13/2023	9,294	9,210	9,210	
Common Equity (75,000 units) (j)					750	750	
					9,960	9,960	3%
Gurobi Optimization, LLC	Information Technology Services						
Subordinated Debt (k)		11.00%/0.00%	6/19/2023	20,000	19,901	19,901	
Common Equity (5 shares)					1,500	1,500	
					21,401	21,401	5%
Hilco Plastics Holdings, LLC (dba Hilco Technologies)	Component Manufacturing						
Subordinated Debt		11.50%/4.00%	7/15/2022	8,228	8,198	7,207	
Common Equity (72,507 units) (h)(j)					500	163	
					8,698	7,370	2%
Hub Acquisition Sub, LLC (dba Hub Pen)	Promotional products						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.25%/0.00%	9/23/2021	16,750	16,685	16,750	
Common Equity (7,500 units)					276	902	
					16,961	17,652	4%
Ice House America, LLC	Vending Equipment Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (j)		12.00%/3.00%	1/1/2020	4,367	4,269	4,367	
Warrant (1,957,895 units) (h)(j)(m)					215	234	
					4,484	4,601	1%
inthinc Technology Solutions, Inc. (n)	Information Technology Services						
Royalty Rights			4/24/2020		185	—	0%
IOS Acquisitions, Inc. (n)	Oil & Gas Services						
Common Equity (2,152 units) (j)					103	17	0%
Jacob Ash Holdings, Inc.	Apparel Distribution						
Second Lien Debt (k)		17.00%/0.00%	6/30/2018	4,000	3,999	4,000	
Subordinated Debt		13.00%/0.00%	6/30/2018	510	509	510	
Preferred Equity (66,138 shares) (g)		0.00%/15.00%	6/30/2018		1,238	1,152	
Warrant (63,492 shares) (m)					67	—	
					5,813	5,662	1%
K2 Industrial Services, Inc.	Industrial Cleaning & Coatings						
Tranche A Loan		11.75%/2.50%	4/25/2022	10,304	10,270	10,304	
Tranche B Loan		11.75%/7.25%	4/25/2022	2,181	2,174	2,181	
Common Equity (1,673 shares)					1,268	457	
					13,712	12,942	3%
The Kyjen Company, LLC (dba Outward Hound)	Consumer Products						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.00%/0.00%	6/8/2024	14,500	14,428	14,428	
Common Equity (750 shares) (j)					750	750	
					15,178	15,178	4%

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2017
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
LNG Indy, LLC							
(dba Kinetrex Energy)	Oil & Gas Distribution						
Second Lien Debt (k)		11.50%/0.00%	9/28/2021	$ 5,000	$ 4,980	$ 5,000	
Common Equity (1,000 units)					1,000	1,137	
					5,980	6,137	2%
Marco Group International OpCo, LLC	Industrial Cleaning & Coatings						
Second Lien Debt		10.50%/0.75%	1/21/2023	12,041	11,986	11,986	
Common Equity (750,000 shares) (h)(j)					750	750	
					12,736	12,736	3%
Mesa Line Services, LLC	Utilities: Services						
Second Lien Debt (j)		10.50%/1.00%	5/31/2023	9,108	9,048	9,048	
Delayed Draw Commitment ($4,000 commitment) (i)(j)		10.50%/1.00%	5/31/2019	—	(13)	—	
Common Equity (500 shares) (j)					500	500	
					9,535	9,548	2%
Midwest Transit Equipment, Inc.	Transportation Services						
Subordinated Debt (j)		13.00%/0.00%	6/23/2022	12,005	11,286	12,005	
Warrant (14,384 shares) (j)(m)					361	80	
Warrant (9.59% of Junior Subordinated Notes) (j)(q)					381	405	
					12,028	12,490	3%
New Era Technology, Inc.	Information Technology Services						
Second Lien Debt (j)		11.00%/1.50%	9/3/2022	11,646	11,598	11,646	
Common Equity (197,369 shares) (j)					750	828	
					12,348	12,474	3%
NGT Acquisition Holdings, LLC							
(dba Techniks Industries)	Component Manufacturing						
Subordinated Debt		12.50%/0.00%	3/21/2022	11,000	10,952	11,000	
Common Equity (378 units) (j)					500	470	
					11,452	11,470	3%
Oaktree Medical Centre, P.C.							
(dba Pain Management Associates)	Healthcare Services						
First Lien Debt (j)		11.50%/0.00%	1/1/2018	571	648	631	
First Lien Debt (j)		7.00%/12.00%	1/1/2018	6,849	7,437	6,438	
Revolving Loan ($2,500 commitment) (j)		11.50%/0.00%	1/1/2018	2,500	2,835	2,743	
					10,920	9,812	2%
OMC Investors, LLC							
(dba Ohio Medical Corporation)	Healthcare Products						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/0.00%	7/15/2021	10,000	9,936	8,438	
Common Equity (5,000 shares)					500	214	
					10,436	8,652	2%
Palmetto Moon, LLC	Retail						
First Lien Debt		11.50%/1.00%	10/31/2021	6,187	6,158	6,187	
Common Equity (499 units) (j)					499	286	
					6,657	6,473	2%
Plymouth Rock Energy, LLC	Business Services						
Second Lien Debt (k)		11.00%/0.00%	6/30/2019	5,545	5,545	5,545	1%

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2017
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
Pugh Lubricants, LLC	Specialty Distribution						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.25%/0.00%	5/10/2022	$ 18,581	$18,505	$ 18,581	
Common Equity (6,125 units) (h)(j)					612	931	
					19,117	19,512	5%
Restaurant Finance Co, LLC	Restaurants						
Second Lien Debt (k)(p)		15.00%/4.00%	7/31/2020	9,342	9,314	2,046	1%
Revenue Management Solutions, LLC	Information Technology Services						
Subordinated Debt (k)		11.50%/1.00%	7/4/2022	8,838	8,766	8,838	
Subordinated Debt (j)		7.00%/6.50%	7/4/2022	817	806	817	
Common Equity (2,250,000 units)					2,250	2,571	
					11,822	12,226	3%
Rohrer Corporation	Packaging						
Common Equity (389 shares)					750	878	0%
SES Investors, LLC (dba SES Foam)	Building Products Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		13.00%/0.00%	12/29/2020	4,095	4,056	3,229	
Common Equity (6,000 units) (h)(j)					600	—	
					4,656	3,229	1%
Simplex Manufacturing Co.	Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
Subordinated Debt		14.00%/0.00%	11/1/2018	4,050	4,050	4,050	
Warrant (29 shares) (m)					1,155	3,240	
					5,205	7,290	2%
SimplyWell, Inc.	Healthcare Services						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/1.25%	2/23/2021	10,046	10,001	10,001	
Preferred Equity (309,142 shares)					500	500	
					10,501	10,501	3%
Six Month Smiles Holdings, Inc.	Healthcare Products						
Second Lien Debt (j)(p)		0.00%/14.50%	7/31/2020	9,395	9,377	5,041	1%
Software Technology, LLC	Information Technology Services						
Subordinated Debt (k)		11.00%/0.00%	6/23/2023	8,750	8,712	8,749	
Common Equity (11 units)					1,125	1,183	
					9,837	9,932	3%
The Wolf Organization, LLC	Building Products Manufacturing						
Common Equity (175 shares)					1,445	4,223	1%
Thermoforming Technology Group LLC (dba Brown Machine Group)	Capital Equipment Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.50%/0.00%	9/14/2021	19,700	19,626	19,700	
Common Equity (3,500 units) (h)(j)					169	360	
					19,795	20,060	5%
Tile Redi, LLC	Building Products Manufacturing						
First Lien Debt (j)(r)		11.34%/0.00%	6/16/2022	10,194	10,102	10,102	3%
Toledo Molding & Die, Inc.	Component Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (j)		10.50%/0.00%	12/18/2018	10,000	9,964	10,000	3%
TransGo, LLC	Component Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		13.25%/0.00%	8/28/2022	9,500	9,460	9,500	
Common Equity (1,000 units)					1,000	847	
					10,460	10,347	3%
United Biologics, LLC	Healthcare Services						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/2.00%	4/30/2018	8,876	8,866	8,876	
Preferred Equity (98,377 units) (h)(j)					1,069	879	
Warrant (57,469 units) (m)					566	234	
					10,501	9,989	3%

Table of Contents

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2017
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
US GreenFiber, LLC	Building Products Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.00%/2.00%	3/1/2019	$ 14,147	$ 14,131	$ 13,014	
Common Equity (2,522 units) (h)(j)					586	—	
					14,717	13,014	3%
US Pack Logistics LLC	Transportation Services						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.00%/1.75%	3/28/2023	7,282	7,257	7,282	
Common Equity (5,833 units) (h)(j)					583	1,078	
Preferred Equity (9,458 units) (h)(j)					945	966	
					8,785	9,326	2%
Vanguard Dealer Services, L.L.C.	Business Services						
Second Lien Debt		12.25%/0.00%	1/30/2021	11,450	11,416	11,450	
Common Equity (6,000 shares)					600	946	
					12,016	12,396	3%
Virginia Tile Company, LLC	Specialty Distribution						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.25%/0.00%	4/7/2022	12,000	11,971	12,000	
Common Equity (17 units)					342	1,493	
					12,313	13,493	4%
Worldwide Express Operations, LLC	Transportation Services						
Second Lien Debt (j)(o)		10.20%/0.00%	2/3/2025	10,000	9,867	10,000	
Common Equity (4,000 units) (h)(j)					4,000	4,233	
					13,867	14,233	4%
Total Non-control/Non-affiliate Investments					$480,139	$ 468,574	121%
Total Investments					$577,794	$ 596,308	152%

(a) See Note 3 to the consolidated financial statements for portfolio composition by geographic location.
(b) Equity ownership may be held in shares or units of companies related to the portfolio companies.
(c) All debt investments are income producing, unless otherwise indicated. Equity investments are non-income producing unless otherwise noted.
(d) Rate includes the cash interest or dividend rate and paid-in-kind interest or dividend rate, if any, as of December 31, 2017. Generally, payment-in-kind interest can be paid-in-kind or all in cash.
(e) The Company's investment portfolio is comprised entirely of debt and equity securities of privately held companies for which quoted prices falling within the categories of Level 1 and Level 2 inputs are not available. Therefore, the Company values all of its portfolio investments at fair value, as determined in good faith by the board of directors, using significant unobservable Level 3 inputs.
(f) The investment bears cash interest at a variable rate that is determined by reference to one-month LIBOR, which is reset monthly. The cash interest rate is set as one-month LIBOR + 11.50% and is subject to a 12.50% interest rate floor. The Company has provided the interest rate in effect as of December 31, 2017.
(g) Income producing. Maturity date, if any, represents mandatory redemption date.
(h) Investment is held by a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company, other than the Funds.
(i) The entire commitment was unfunded at December 31, 2017. The Company is earning 0.50% interest on the unfunded balance of the commitment.
(j) Investment pledged as collateral for the Credit Facility and, as a result, is not directly available to the creditors of the Company to satisfy any obligations of the Company other than the Company's obligations under the Credit Facility (see Note 6 to the consolidated financial statements).
(k) The portion of the investment not held by the Funds is pledged as collateral for the Credit Facility and, as a result, is not directly available to the creditors of the Company to satisfy any obligations of the Company other than the Company's obligations under the Credit Facility (see Note 6 to the consolidated financial statements).
(l) As defined in the 1940 Act, the Company is deemed to be an "Affiliated Person" of this portfolio company because it owns 5% or more of the portfolio company's outstanding voting securities or it has the power to exercise control over the management or policies of such portfolio company. Transactions in which the issuer was an Affiliated Person are detailed in Note 3 to the consolidated financial statements.
(m) Warrants entitle the Company to purchase a predetermined number of shares or units of common equity, and are non-income producing. The purchase price and number of shares are subject to adjustment under certain conditions until the expiration date, if any.
(n) Investment in portfolio company that has sold its operations and is in the process of winding down.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2017
(in thousands, except shares)

(o) The investment bears interest at a variable rate that is determined by reference to six-month LIBOR, which is reset semi-annually. The interest rate is set as six-month LIBOR + 8.75% and is subject to a 1.00% LIBOR interest rate floor. The Company has provided the interest rate in effect as of December 31, 2017.
(p) Investment was on non-accrual status as of December 31, 2017, meaning the Company has ceased recognizing interest income on the investment.
(q) Warrant entitles the Company to purchase 9.59% of the outstanding principal of Junior Subordinated Notes prior to exercise, and is non-income producing.
(r) The investment bears interest at a variable rate that is determined by reference to three-month LIBOR, which is reset quarterly. The interest rate is set as three-month LIBOR + 10.00% and is subject to a 1.00% LIBOR interest rate floor. The Company has provided the interest rate in effect as of December 31, 2017.
(s) A portion of the investment is held by a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company, other than the Funds.
(t) As defined in the 1940 Act, the Company is deemed to be both an “Affiliated Person” of and “Control” this portfolio company because it owns 25% or more of the portfolio company’s outstanding voting securities or it has the power to exercise control over the management or policies of such portfolio company. Transactions in which the issuer was both an Affiliated Person and a portfolio company that the Company is deemed to Control are detailed in Note 3 to the consolidated financial statements.

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments
December 31, 2016
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
Affiliate Investments (l)							
Apex Microtechnology, Inc.	Electronic Components Supplier						
Warrant (2,293 shares) (m)					$ 220	$ 345	
Common Equity (11,690 shares)					1,168	1,876	
					1,388	2,221	1%
FAR Research Inc.	Specialty Chemicals						
First Lien Debt (k)		11.75%/1.00%	3/31/2019	$ 7,271	7,256	7,271	
Revolving Loan ($1,750 commitment) (j)		11.75%/1.00%	3/31/2019	138	134	138	
Common Equity (1,396 units)					1,395	1,012	
					8,785	8,421	2%
Fiber Materials, Inc.	Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/1.00%	5/30/2022	4,003	3,984	3,984	
Common Equity (10 units)					1,000	1,000	
					4,984	4,984	1%
Inflexxion, Inc.	Business Services						
First Lien Debt		7.00%/6.00%	12/16/2019	4,196	4,182	3,579	
Revolving Loan ($500 commitment) (j)		7.00%/6.00%	12/16/2019	159	156	136	
Preferred Equity (252,046 units)					252	114	
Preferred Equity (308,987 units)					309	139	
Preferred Equity (1,400 units)					1,400	—	
					6,299	3,968	1%
Malabar International	Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
Subordinated Debt (k)		11.25%/2.00%	11/13/2021	7,617	7,607	7,617	
Preferred Equity (1,494 shares) (g)		6.00%/0.00%	5/12/2022		1,997	5,367	
					9,604	12,984	4%
Medsurant Holdings, LLC	Healthcare Services						
Second Lien Debt		12.25%/0.00%	6/18/2021	6,267	6,221	6,267	
Preferred Equity (126,662 units) (h)					1,346	1,505	
Warrant (505,176 units) (h)(m)					4,516	5,199	
					12,083	12,971	4%
Microbiology Research Associates, Inc.	Healthcare Services						
Subordinated Debt		11.00%/1.50%	3/13/2022	8,538	8,516	8,538	
Common Equity (1,625,731 units) (j)					1,939	2,593	
					10,455	11,131	3%
Mirage Trailers LLC	Utility Equipment Manufacturing						
First Lien Debt (k)(f)		12.50%/0.00%	11/25/2020	8,208	8,138	8,208	
Common Equity (2,500,000 shares)					2,480	2,721	
					10,618	10,929	3%
Pfanstiehl, Inc.	Healthcare Products						
Subordinated Debt		10.50%/0.00%	9/29/2021	6,208	6,189	6,208	
Common Equity (8,500 units) (j)					850	13,750	
					7,039	19,958	6%
Pinnergy, Ltd.	Oil & Gas Services						
Second Lien Debt (k)		0.00%/10.00%	1/24/2020	8,414	8,394	8,414	
Common Equity - Class A-2 (42,500 units) (k)					3,000	3,000	
Common Equity - Class B (1,000 units) (k)					3,000	3,000	
					14,394	14,414	4%

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2016
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
Safety Products Group, LLC (n)	Safety Products Manufacturing						
Preferred Equity (749 units) (h)(j)					$ —	$ 22	
Common Equity (676 units) ($2,852 commitment) (h)(j)					—	—	
					—	22	0%
SES Investors, LLC (dba SES Foam)	Building Products Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		11.00%/0.00%	3/8/2022	$ 10,474	10,424	10,424	
Revolving Loan ($1,500 commitment) (j)		6.00%/0.00%	3/8/2022	1,000	993	993	
Common Equity (6,000 units) (h)(j)					600	600	
					12,017	12,017	3%
Steward Holding LLC (dba Steward Advanced Materials)	Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/2.25%	5/12/2021	7,181	7,154	7,181	
Common Equity (1,000,000 units)					1,000	678	
					8,154	7,859	2%
Trantech Radiator Products, Inc.	Utility Equipment Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (j)		12.00%/2.25%	5/31/2018	6,994	6,988	6,994	
Common Equity (6,875 shares) (j)					688	242	
					7,676	7,236	2%
World Wide Packaging, LLC	Consumer Products						
Common Equity (1,517,573 units) (h)(j)					499	2,898	1%
Total Affiliate Investments					$113,995	$ 132,013	37%
Non-control/Non-affiliate Investments							
Accent Food Services, LLC	Vending Equipment Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		10.00%/1.25%	5/30/2022	$ 14,516	$ 14,436	$ 14,436	
Common Equity (7,500 units) (h)(j)					750	750	
					15,186	15,186	4%
ACFP Management, Inc. (n)	Restaurants						
Common Equity (1,000,000 units) (j)					—	—	0%
Allied 100 Group, Inc.	Healthcare Products						
Subordinated Debt (k)		11.50%/0.00%	5/26/2020	13,000	12,960	13,000	
Common Equity (1,250,000 units) (j)					1,250	1,201	
					14,210	14,201	4%
Anatrace Products, LLC	Healthcare Products						
Second Lien Debt		13.00%/1.25%	6/23/2021	6,500	6,483	6,500	
Common Equity (360,000 shares) (j)					—	259	
					6,483	6,759	2%
Brook & Whittle Limited	Printing Services						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/4.80%	6/30/2017	8,031	8,031	8,198	
Subordinated Debt		12.00%/2.00%	6/30/2017	2,342	2,342	2,342	
Warrant (1,051 shares) (m)					285	263	
Common Equity - Series A (148 shares)					110	37	
Common Equity - Series D (527 shares)					52	125	
					10,820	10,965	3%

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2016
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
Caldwell & Gregory, LLC	Laundry Services						
Subordinated Debt		11.50%/1.00%	11/30/2018	$ 1,555	$ 1,545	$ 1,555	
Subordinated Debt		0.00%/12.00%	5/31/2019	4,583	4,460	4,583	
Common Equity (500,000 units) (h)					500	650	
Warrant (242,121 units) (h)(m)					242	315	
					6,747	7,103	2%
Cardboard Box LLC (dba Anthony's Coal Fired Pizza)	Restaurants						
Common Equity (521,021 units) (j)					520	240	0%
Carlson Systems Holdings, Inc. (n)	Specialty Distribution						
Common Equity (15,000 units) (j)					—	73	0%
Cavallo Bus Lines Holdings, LLC	Transportation Services						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/3.00%	4/26/2021	8,250	8,218	8,250	2%
Comprehensive Logistics Co., Inc.	Business Services						
Subordinated Debt (k)		11.50%/4.50%	11/22/2021	15,075	15,001	15,001	4%
EBL, LLC (EbLens)	Retail						
Common Equity (750,000 units) (h)(j)					750	2,044	1%
FDS Avionics Corp. (dba Flight Display Systems)	Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		12.25%/0.00%	4/1/2020	5,200	5,184	4,237	
Common Equity (200 units) (j)					2,000	312	
					7,184	4,549	1%
FTH Acquisition Corp. VII	Information Technology Services						
Second Lien Debt		13.00%/0.00%	3/9/2017	8,178	8,178	7,937	
Preferred Equity (887,122 shares)					887	444	
					9,065	8,381	2%
Grindmaster Corporation	Consumer Products						
Second Lien Debt		11.50%/0.00%	10/31/2019	10,500	10,474	10,500	3%
Hilco Plastics Holdings, LLC (dba Hilco Technologies)	Component Manufacturing						
Subordinated Debt		11.50%/1.00%	7/15/2022	8,022	7,984	7,984	
Common Equity (72,507 units) (h)(j)					500	500	
					8,484	8,484	2%
Hub Acquisition Sub, LLC (dba Hub Pen)	Promotional products						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.25%/0.00%	9/23/2021	11,350	11,301	11,350	
Common Equity (7,500 units)					750	1,010	
					12,051	12,360	3%
Ice House America, LLC	Vending Equipment Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (j)		12.00%/3.00%	1/1/2020	4,237	4,090	4,237	
Warrant (1,957,895 units) (h)(j)(m)					216	101	
					4,306	4,338	1%
inthinc Technology Solutions, Inc.	Information Technology Services						
Second Lien Debt ($5,000 commitment)		12.50%/0.00%	4/24/2020	4,000	3,984	4,000	
Second Lien Debt		0.00%/12.50%	4/24/2020	1,178	1,039	1,141	
Royalty Rights			4/24/2020		185	—	
					5,208	5,141	1%

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2016
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
IOS Acquisitions, Inc. (n)	Oil & Gas Services						
Common Equity (2,152 units) (j)					$ 103	$ 17	0%
Jacob Ash Holdings, Inc.	Apparel Distribution						
Second Lien Debt (k)		13.00%/4.00%	6/30/2018	$ 4,000	3,997	4,000	
Subordinated Debt		13.00%/0.00%	6/30/2018	778	773	778	
Preferred Equity (66,138 shares) (g)		0.00%/15.00%	6/30/2018		1,071	1,075	
Warrant (63,492 shares) (m)					67	—	
					5,908	5,853	2%
K2 Industrial Services, Inc.	Industrial Cleaning & Coatings						
Second Lien Debt		11.75%/2.50%	4/25/2022	10,047	10,005	10,005	
Second Lien Debt		11.75%/7.25%	4/25/2022	2,027	2,019	2,019	
Common Equity (1,673 shares)					1,268	553	
					13,292	12,577	4%
Lightning Diversion Systems, LLC	Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
First Lien Debt (k)		10.50%/0.00%	9/16/2021	21,204	21,114	21,204	
Revolving Loan ($250 commitment) (i)		10.50%/0.00%	9/16/2021	—	(1)	—	
Common Equity (600,000 units)					—	2,637	
					21,113	23,841	7%
LNG Indy, LLC *(dba Kinetrex Energy)*	Oil & Gas Distribution						
Second Lien Debt (k)		11.50%/0.00%	9/28/2021	5,000	4,975	4,975	
Common Equity (1,000 units)					1,000	1,000	
					5,975	5,975	2%
Oaktree Medical Centre, P.C. *(dba Pain Management Associates)*	Healthcare Services						
First Lien Debt (j)		11.50%/0.00%	1/1/2018	571	614	633	
First Lien Debt (j)		7.00%/12.00%	1/1/2018	6,078	6,405	4,663	
Revolving Loan ($2,500 commitment) (j)		11.50%/0.00%	1/1/2018	2,500	2,526	2,768	
					9,545	8,064	2%
OMC Investors, LLC *(dba Ohio Medical Corporation)*	Healthcare Products						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/0.00%	7/15/2021	10,000	9,917	9,383	
Common Equity (5,000 shares)					500	358	
					10,417	9,741	3%
Palmetto Moon, LLC	Retail						
First Lien Debt		11.50%/0.00%	10/31/2021	6,402	6,364	6,364	
Common Equity (499 units)					499	499	
					6,863	6,863	2%
Plymouth Rock Energy, LLC	Business Services						
Second Lien Debt		11.75%/0.00%	5/14/2017	6,000	5,995	6,000	2%
Pugh Lubricants, LLC	Specialty Distribution						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.25%/0.00%	5/10/2022	12,256	12,197	12,197	
Common Equity (5,000 units) (h)(j)					500	500	
					12,697	12,697	4%
Restaurant Finance Co, LLC	Restaurants						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.00%/4.00%	7/31/2020	9,154	9,126	7,377	2%
Rohrer Corporation	Packaging						
Subordinated Debt (k)		11.00%/1.50%	1/18/2022	16,614	16,539	16,539	
Common Equity (389 shares)					750	750	
					17,289	17,289	5%

Table of Contents

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2016
(in thousands, except shares)

Portfolio Company (a)(b) Investment Type (c)	Industry	Rate (d) Cash/PIK	Maturity	Principal Amount	Cost	Fair Value (e)	Percent of Net Assets
Simplex Manufacturing Co.	Aerospace & Defense Manufacturing						
Subordinated Debt (o)		14.00%/0.00%	12/9/2016	$ 4,050	$ 4,050	$ 4,050	
Warrant (28 shares) (m)					1,041	3,787	
					5,091	7,837	2%
Six Month Smiles Holdings, Inc.	Healthcare Products						
Second Lien Debt (j)		6.00%/8.50%	7/31/2020	8,777	8,754	8,106	2%
Software Technology, LLC	Information Technology Services						
Subordinated Debt (k)		11.00%/0.00%	6/23/2023	8,750	8,706	8,706	
Common Equity (11 units)					1,125	1,125	
					9,831	9,831	3%
The Wolf Organization, LLC	Building Products Manufacturing						
Common Equity (175 shares)					1,455	3,102	1%
Thermoforming Technology Group LLC	Capital Equipment Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt		12.50%/0.00%	9/14/2021	14,700	14,637	14,700	
Common Equity (3,500 units) (h)(j)					350	353	
					14,987	15,053	4%
Toledo Molding & Die, Inc.	Component Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (j)		10.50%/0.00%	12/18/2018	10,000	9,926	10,000	3%
United Biologics, LLC	Healthcare Services						
Second Lien Debt		12.00%/2.00%	4/30/2018	8,698	8,659	8,698	
Preferred Equity (98,377 units) (h)(j)					1,069	729	
Warrant (57,469 units) (m)					566	191	
					10,294	9,618	3%
US GreenFiber, LLC	Building Products Manufacturing						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.50%/0.00%	1/2/2019	14,000	13,968	14,000	
Common Equity (1,667 units) (h)(j)					500	574	
					14,468	14,574	4%
US Pack Logistics LLC	Transportation Services						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.00%/1.75%	9/27/2020	14,027	13,923	14,027	
Common Equity (5,357 units) (h)(j)					583	675	
					14,506	14,702	4%
Vanguard Dealer Services, L.L.C.	Business Services						
Subordinated Debt		12.25%/0.00%	1/30/2021	11,450	11,405	11,450	
Common Equity (6,000 shares)					600	907	
					12,005	12,357	3%
Virginia Tile Company, LLC	Specialty Distribution						
Second Lien Debt (k)		12.25%/0.00%	4/7/2022	12,000	11,962	12,000	
Common Equity (17 units)					342	1,220	
					12,304	13,220	4%
Worldwide Express Operations, LLC	Transportation Services						
Subordinated Debt		11.50%/1.00%	8/1/2020	17,468	17,368	17,559	
Common Equity (2,500,000 units) (h)(j)					2,500	6,613	
					19,868	24,172	7%
Total Non-control/Non-affiliate Investments					$386,519	$ 392,441	111%
Total Investments					$500,514	$ 524,454	148%

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Consolidated Schedule of Investments—(Continued)
December 31, 2016
(in thousands, except shares)

(a) See Note 3 to the consolidated financial statements for portfolio composition by geographic location.
(b) Equity ownership may be held in shares or units of companies related to the portfolio companies.
(c) All debt investments are income producing, unless otherwise indicated. Equity investments are non-income producing unless otherwise noted.
(d) Rate includes the cash interest or dividend rate and paid-in-kind interest or dividend rate, if any, as of December 31, 2016. Generally, payment-in-kind interest can be paid-in-kind or all in cash.
(e) The Company's investment portfolio is comprised entirely of debt and equity securities of privately held companies for which quoted prices falling within the categories of Level 1 and Level 2 inputs are not available. Therefore, the Company values all of its portfolio investments at fair value, as determined in good faith by the board of directors, using significant unobservable Level 3 inputs.
(f) The investment bears interest at a variable rate that is determined by reference to one-month LIBOR, which is reset monthly. The interest rate is set as one-month LIBOR + 11.50% and is subject to a 12.50% interest rate floor. The Company has provided the interest rate in effect as of December 31, 2016.
(g) Income producing. Maturity date, if any, represents mandatory redemption date.
(h) Investment is held by a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company, other than the Funds.
(i) The entire commitment was unfunded at December 31, 2016. As such, no interest is being earned on this investment.
(j) Investment pledged as collateral for the Credit Facility and, as a result, is not directly available to the creditors of the Company to satisfy any obligations of the Company other than the Company's obligations under the Credit Facility (see Note 6 to the consolidated financial statements).
(k) The portion of the investment not held by the Funds is pledged as collateral for the Credit Facility and, as a result, is not directly available to the creditors of the Company to satisfy any obligations of the Company other than the Company's obligations under the Credit Facility (see Note 6 to the consolidated financial statements).
(l) As defined in the 1940 Act, the Company is deemed to be an "Affiliated Person" of this portfolio company because it owns 5% or more of the portfolio company's outstanding voting securities or it has the power to exercise control over the management or policies of such portfolio company. Transactions in which the issuer was an Affiliated Person are detailed in Note 3 to the consolidated financial statements.
(m) Warrants entitle the Company to purchase a predetermined number of shares of common stock, and are non-income producing. The purchase price and number of shares are subject to adjustment under certain conditions until the expiration date, if any.
(n) Investment in portfolio company that has sold its operations and is in the process of winding down.
(o) The debt investment continues to pay interest, including the default rate, while the portfolio company pursues refinancing options.

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Note 1. Organization and Nature of Business

Fidus Investment Corporation ("FIC," and together with its subsidiaries, the "Company"), a Maryland Corporation, operates as an externally managed, closed-end, non-diversified business development company ("BDC") under the Investment Company Act of 1940 ("1940 Act"). FIC completed its initial public offering, or IPO, in June 2011. In addition, for federal income tax purposes, the Company elected to be treated as a regulated investment company ("RIC") under Subchapter M of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code").

The Company provides customized debt and equity financing solutions to lower middle-market companies, and may make investments directly or through its two wholly-owned investment company subsidiaries, Fidus Mezzanine Capital, L.P. ("Fund I") and Fidus Mezzanine Capital II, L.P. ("Fund II") (collectively Fund I and Fund II are referred to as the "Funds"). The Funds are licensed by the U.S. Small Business Administration (the "SBA") as small business investment companies ("SBIC"). The SBIC licenses allow the Funds to obtain leverage by issuing SBA-guaranteed debentures ("SBA debentures"), subject to the issuance of leverage commitments by the SBA and other customary procedures. As SBICs, the Funds are subject to a variety of regulations and oversight by the SBA under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, as amended (the "SBIC Act"), concerning, among other things, the size and nature of the companies in which they may invest and the structure of those investments.

We believe that utilizing both FIC and the Funds as investment vehicles provides us with access to a broader array of investment opportunities. Given our access to lower cost capital through the SBA's SBIC debenture program, we expect that the majority of our investments will continue to be made through the Funds until the Funds reach their borrowing limit under the program. For three or more SBICs under common control, the maximum amount of outstanding SBA debentures cannot exceed $350,000.

Fund I has also elected to be regulated as a BDC under the 1940 Act. Fund II is not registered under the 1940 Act and relies on the exclusion from the definition of investment company contained in Section 3(c)(7) of the 1940 Act.

The Company pays a quarterly base management fee and an incentive fee to Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC (the "Investment Advisor") under an investment advisory agreement (the "Investment Advisory Agreement").

Note 2. Significant Accounting Policies

Basis of presentation: The accompanying consolidated financial statements of the Company have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America ("GAAP") pursuant to the requirements for reporting on Form 10-K, Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 946, *Financial Services—Investment Companies* ("ASC 946), and Articles 6 or 10 of Regulation S-X. In the opinion of management, the consolidated financial statements reflect all adjustments and reclassifications that are necessary for the fair presentation of financial results as of and for the periods presented. Certain prior period amounts have been reclassified to conform to the current period presentation.

Use of estimates: The preparation of the consolidated financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Consolidation: Pursuant to Article 6 of Regulation S-X and ASC 946, the Company will generally not consolidate its investments in a company other than an investment company subsidiary or a controlled operating company whose business consists of providing services to the Company. As a result, the consolidated financial statements of the Company include only the accounts of the Company and its wholly-owned subsidiaries, including the Funds. All significant intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated.

Investment risks: The Company's investments are subject to a variety of risks. These risks may include, but are not limited to the following:

- *Market risk*—Many of the Company's portfolio companies may be unseasoned, unprofitable and/or have no established operating history or earnings. These companies may also lack technical, marketing, financial, and other resources or may be dependent upon the success of one product or service, a unique distribution channel, or the effectiveness of a manager or management team. The failure of this one product, service or distribution channel, or the loss or the ineffectiveness of a key executive or executives within the management team may have a materially adverse impact on such companies. Furthermore, these companies may be more vulnerable to competition and to overall economic conditions than larger, more established entities.
- *Credit risk*—Credit risk represents the risk that the Company would incur if the counterparties failed to perform pursuant to the terms of their agreements with the Company.
- *Liquidity risk*—Liquidity risk represents the possibility that the Company may not be able to sell its investments quickly or at a reasonable price (given the lack of an established market).
- *Interest rate risk*—Interest rate risk represents the likelihood that a change in interest rates could have an adverse impact on the fair value of an interest-bearing financial instrument.
- *Prepayment risk*—Certain of the Company's debt investments allow for prepayment of principal without penalty. Downward changes in interest rates may cause prepayments to occur at a faster than expected rate, thereby effectively shortening the maturity of the debt investments and making the instrument less likely to be an income producing instrument.
- *Off-Balance sheet risk*—Some of the Company's financial instruments contain off-balance sheet risk. Generally, these financial instruments represent future commitments to purchase other financial instruments at specific terms at specific future dates. See Note 7 for further details.

Fair value of financial instruments: The Company measures and discloses fair value with respect to substantially all of its financial instruments in accordance with ASC Topic 820—*Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures* ("ASC Topic 820"). ASC Topic 820 defines fair value, establishes a framework used to measure fair value, and requires disclosures for fair value measurements, including the categorization of financial instruments into a three-level hierarchy based on the transparency of valuation inputs. See Note 4 to the consolidated financial statements for further discussion regarding the fair value measurements and hierarchy.

Investment classification: The Company classifies its investments in accordance with the requirements of the 1940 Act. Under the 1940 Act, "Control Investments" are defined as investments in those companies where the Company owns more than 25% of the voting securities of such company or has rights to maintain greater than 50% of the board representation. Under the 1940 Act, "Affiliate Investments" are defined as investments in those companies where the Company owns between 5% and 25% of the voting securities of such company. "Non-Control/Non-Affiliate Investments" are those that neither qualify as Control Investments nor Affiliate Investments. Transfers between classifications are assumed to have occurred at the beginning of the quarter during which the investment was reclassified.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Segments: In accordance with ASC Topic 280—*Segment Reporting*, the Company has determined that it has a single reporting segment and operating unit structure.

Cash and cash equivalents: Cash and cash equivalents are highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less at the date of acquisition. The Company places its cash in financial institutions and, at times, such balances may be in excess of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation insurance limits. The Company does not believe its cash balances are exposed to any significant credit risk.

Deferred financing costs: Deferred financing costs consist of fees and expenses paid in connection with the Credit Facility (as defined in Note 6) and SBA debentures. Deferred financing costs are capitalized and amortized over the term of the debt agreement using the effective interest method. Unamortized deferred financing costs are presented as an offset to the corresponding debt liabilities on the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities.

Deferred equity offering costs: Deferred equity offering costs include registration expenses related to shelf filings, including expenses related to the launch of the ATM Program. These expenses primarily consist of U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) registration fees, legal fees and accounting fees incurred. These expenses are included in prepaid assets and are charged to additional paid-in capital upon the receipt of proceeds from an equity offering or charged to expense if no offering is completed.

Realized gains or losses and unrealized appreciation or depreciation on investments: Realized gains or losses on investments are recorded upon the sale or disposition of a portfolio investment and are calculated as the difference between the net proceeds from the sale or disposition and the cost basis of the investment, without regard to unrealized appreciation or depreciation previously recognized. Net change in unrealized appreciation or depreciation on the consolidated statements of operations includes changes in the fair value of investments from the prior period, as determined in good faith by the Company’s board of directors (the “Board”) through the application of the Company’s valuation policy, as well as reclassifications of any prior period unrealized appreciation or depreciation on exited investments to realized gains or losses on investments.

Interest and dividend income: Interest and dividend income is recorded on the accrual basis to the extent that the Company expects to collect such amounts. Interest is accrued daily based on the outstanding principal amount and the contractual terms of the debt. Dividend income is recorded as dividends are declared or at the point an obligation exists for the portfolio company to make a distribution, and is generally recognized when received. Distributions from portfolio companies are evaluated to determine if the distribution is a distribution of earnings or a return of capital. Distributions of earnings are included in dividend income while a return of capital is recorded as a reduction in the cost basis of the investment. Estimates are adjusted as necessary when the relevant tax forms are received from the portfolio company.

Certain of the Company’s investments contain a payment-in-kind (“PIK”) income provision. The PIK income, computed at the contractual rate specified in the applicable investment agreement, is added to the principal balance of the investment, rather than being paid in cash, and recorded as interest or dividend income, as applicable, on the consolidated statements of operations. Generally, PIK can be paid-in-kind or all in cash. The Company stops accruing PIK income when there is reasonable doubt that PIK income will be collected. PIK income is included in the Company’s taxable income and, therefore, affects the amount the Company is required to pay to shareholders in the form of dividends in order to maintain the Company’s tax treatment as a RIC and to avoid corporate federal income tax, even though the Company has not yet collected the cash.

When there is reasonable doubt that principal, interest or dividends will be collected, loans or preferred equity investments are placed on non-accrual status and the Company will generally cease recognizing interest or

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

dividend income. Interest and dividend payments received on non-accrual investments may be recognized as interest or dividend income or may be applied to the investment principal balance based on management's judgment. Non-accrual investments are restored to accrual status when past due principal, interest or dividends are paid and, in management's judgment, payments are likely to remain current.

Fee income: Transaction fees earned in connection with the Company's investments are recognized as fee income. Such fees typically include fees for services, including structuring and advisory services, provided to portfolio companies. The Company recognizes income from fees for providing such structuring and advisory services when the services are rendered or the transactions are completed. Upon the prepayment of a loan or debt security, any prepayment penalties are recorded as fee income when earned.

The Company also typically receives loan origination or closing fees in connection with investments. Such loan origination and closing fees are capitalized as unearned income and offset against investment cost basis on the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities and accreted into interest income over the life of the investment.

Warrants: In connection with the Company's debt investments, the Company will sometimes receive warrants or other equity-related securities from the borrower ("Warrants"). The Company determines the cost basis of Warrants based upon their respective fair values on the date of receipt in proportion to the total fair value of the debt and Warrants received. Any resulting difference between the face amount of the debt and its recorded fair value resulting from the assignment of value to the Warrants is treated as original issue discount ("OID"), and accreted into interest income using the effective interest method over the term of the debt investment.

Partial loan sales: The Company follows the guidance in ASC 860, *Transfers and Servicing,* when accounting for loan participations and other partial loan sales. Such guidance requires a participation or other partial loan sale to meet the definition of a "participating interest," as defined in the guidance, in order for sale treatment to be allowed. Participations or other partial loan sales which do not meet the definition of a participating interest should remain on the Company's consolidated statement of assets and liabilities and the proceeds recorded as a secured borrowing until the definition is met. Management has determined that all participations and other partial loan sale transactions entered into by the Company have met the definition of a participating interest. Accordingly, the Company uses sale treatment in accounting for such transactions.

Income taxes: The Company has elected to be treated as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code, which will generally relieve the Company from U.S. federal income taxes with respect to all income distributed to stockholders. To maintain the tax treatment of a RIC, the Company is required to timely distribute to its stockholders at least 90.0% of "investment company taxable income," as defined by Subchapter M of the Code, each year. Depending on the level of taxable income earned in a tax year, the Company may choose to carry forward taxable income in excess of current year distributions into the next tax year; however, the Company will pay a 4.0% excise tax if it does not distribute at least 98.0% of the current year's ordinary taxable income. Any such carryover taxable income must be distributed through a dividend declared prior to the later of the date on which the final tax return related to the year in which the Company generated such taxable income is filed or the 15th day of the 10th month following the close of such taxable year. In addition, the Company will be subject to federal excise tax if it does not distribute at least 98.2% of its net capital gains realized, computed for any one year period ending October 31.

In the future, the Funds may be limited by provisions of the SBIC Act and SBA regulations governing SBICs from making certain distributions to FIC that may be necessary to enable FIC to make the minimum distributions required to maintain the tax treatment of a RIC.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

The Company has certain wholly-owned taxable subsidiaries (the “Taxable Subsidiaries”), each of which generally holds one or more of the Company’s portfolio investments listed on the consolidated schedules of investments. The Taxable Subsidiaries are consolidated for financial reporting purposes, such that the Company’s consolidated financial statements reflect the Company’s investment in the portfolio companies owned by the Taxable Subsidiaries. The purpose of the Taxable Subsidiaries is to permit the Company to hold equity investments in portfolio companies that are taxed as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes (such as entities organized as limited liability companies (“LLCs”) or other forms of pass through entities) while complying with the “source-of-income” requirements contained in the RIC tax provisions. The Taxable Subsidiaries are not consolidated with the Company for U.S. federal corporate income tax purposes, and each Taxable Subsidiary will be subject to U.S. federal corporate income tax on its taxable income. Any such income or expense is reflected in the consolidated statements of operations.

U.S. federal income tax regulations differ from GAAP, and as a result, distributions in accordance with tax regulations may differ from net investment income and realized gains recognized under GAAP. Differences may be permanent or temporary. Permanent differences may arise as a result of, among other items, a difference in the book and tax basis of certain assets and nondeductible federal income taxes. Temporary differences arise when certain items of income, expense, gain or loss are recognized at some time in the future.

ASC Topic 740—*Accounting for Uncertainty in Income Taxes* (“ASC Topic 740”) provides guidance for how uncertain tax positions should be recognized, measured, presented and disclosed in the consolidated financial statements. ASC Topic 740 requires the evaluation of tax positions taken in the course of preparing the Company’s tax returns to determine whether the tax positions are “more-likely-than-not” to be respected by the applicable tax authorities. Tax benefits of positions not deemed to meet the more-likely-than-not threshold would be recorded as a tax expense in the current year. It is the Company’s policy to recognize accrued interest and penalties related to uncertain tax benefits in income tax provision, if any. There were no material uncertain income tax positions at December 31, 2017 and 2016. The Company’s tax returns are generally subject to examination by U.S. federal and most state tax authorities for a period of three years from the date the respective returns are filed, and, accordingly, the Company’s 2014 through 2016 tax years remain subject to examination.

Distributions to stockholders: Distributions to stockholders are recorded on the record date with respect to such distributions. The amount, if any, to be distributed to stockholders, is determined by the Board each quarter and is generally based upon the earnings estimated by management. Net realized capital gains, if any, may be distributed at least annually, although the Company may decide to retain such capital gains for investment.

The determination of the tax attributes for the Company’s distributions is made annually, and is based upon the Company’s taxable income and distributions paid to its stockholders for the full year. Ordinary dividend distributions from a RIC do not qualify for the preferential tax rate on qualified dividend income from domestic corporations and qualified foreign corporations, except to the extent that the RIC received the income in the form of qualifying dividends from domestic corporations and qualified foreign corporations. The tax characterization of the Company’s distributions generally includes both ordinary income and capital gains but may also include qualified dividends or return of capital.

The Company has adopted a dividend reinvestment plan (“DRIP”) that provides for the reinvestment of dividends on behalf of its stockholders, unless a stockholder has elected to receive dividends in cash. As a result, if the Company declares a cash dividend, the Company’s stockholders who have not “opted out” of the DRIP at least two days prior to the dividend payment date will have their cash dividend automatically reinvested into additional shares of the Company’s common stock. The Company has the option to satisfy the share requirements of the DRIP through the issuance of new shares of common stock or through open market purchases of common stock by the DRIP plan administrator. Newly issued shares are valued based upon the final closing price of the Company's common stock on a date determined by the Board. Shares purchased in the open market to satisfy the DRIP requirements will be valued based upon the average price of the applicable shares purchased by the DRIP plan administrator before any associated brokerage or other costs. See Note 9 to the consolidated financial statements regarding dividend declarations and distributions.

Earnings and net asset value per share: The earnings per share calculations for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, are computed utilizing the weighted average shares outstanding for the period. Net asset value per share is calculated using the number of shares outstanding as of the end of the period.

Stock repurchase plan: The Company has an open market stock repurchase program (the "Program") under which the Company may acquire up to $5,000 of its outstanding common stock. Under the Program, the Company may, but is not obligated to, repurchase outstanding common stock in the open market from time to time provided that the Company complies with the prohibitions under its insider trading policies and the requirements of Rule 10b-18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, including certain price, market value and timing constraints. The timing, manner, price and amount of any share repurchases will be determined by the Company's management, in its discretion, based upon the evaluation of economic and market conditions, stock price, capital availability, applicable legal and regulatory requirements and other corporate considerations. On October 30, 2017, the Board extended the Program through December 31, 2018, or until the approved dollar amount has been used to repurchase shares. The Program does not require the Company to repurchase any specific number of shares and the Company cannot assure that any shares will be repurchased under the Program. The Program may be suspended, extended, modified or discontinued at any time. The Company did not make any repurchases of common stock during the years ended December 31, 2017 or 2016.

Recent accounting pronouncements: In May 2014, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)*, which supersedes the revenue recognition requirements in *Revenue Recognition (Topic 605)*. Under the new guidance, an entity should recognize revenue to depict the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. The guidance is effective for annual and interim reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017. The Company completed its evaluation of the impact of this ASU and concluded that the majority of its income streams are specifically excluded from the scope of the ASU as they relate to financial instruments that are within the scope of other topics, and in general the impact of the ASU is not material to the Company's consolidated financial position or disclosures.

In October 2016, the SEC adopted new rules and amended rules to Regulation S-X (collectively, the "Reporting Rules") intended to modernize the reporting and disclosures of information by BDCs. The adopted amendments to Regulation S-X include an update to the disclosures for investments in and advances to affiliates, presentation changes to the statement of operations and schedule of investments, and the requirement to include a standardized schedule containing detailed information about derivative investments (among other changes). The amendments to Regulation S-X are effective for reporting periods ending after August 1, 2017. The Company adopted the Reporting Rules effective August 1, 2017. The amendments do not have a material effect on the Company's consolidated financial position or disclosures.

In December 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-19, *Technical Corrections and Improvements*, which includes minor corrections and clarifications that affect a wide variety of topics in the Accounting Standards Codification, including an amendment to Topic 820, Fair Value Measurement, which clarifies the difference between a valuation approach and a valuation technique when applying the guidance of that Topic. The

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

amendment also requires an entity to disclose when there has been a change in either or both a valuation approach and/or a valuation technique. The transition guidance for the Topic 820 amendment must be applied prospectively because it could potentially involve the use of hindsight that includes fair value measurements. The guidance is effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those fiscal years, for all entities beginning after December 15, 2016. The Company adopted this ASU effective January 1, 2017, and the amendments do not have a material effect on the Company's consolidated financial position or disclosures.

Note 3. Portfolio Company Investments

The Company's portfolio investments principally consist of secured and unsecured debt, equity warrants and direct equity investments in privately held companies. The debt investments may or may not be secured by either a first or second lien on the assets of the portfolio company. The debt investments generally bear interest at fixed rates, and generally mature between five and seven years from the original investment. In connection with a debt investment, the Company also may receive nominally priced equity warrants and/or make a direct equity investment in the portfolio company. The Company's warrants or equity investments may be investments in a holding company related to the portfolio company. In addition, the Company periodically makes equity investments in its portfolio companies through Taxable Subsidiaries. In both situations, the investment is generally reported under the name of the operating company on the consolidated schedules of investments.

As of December 31, 2017, the Company had active investments in 60 portfolio companies and residual investments in three portfolio companies that have sold their underlying operations. The aggregate fair value of the total portfolio was $596,308 and the weighted average effective yield on the Company's debt investments was 13.0% as of such date. As of December 31, 2017, the Company held equity investments in 87.3% of its portfolio companies and the average fully diluted equity ownership in those portfolio companies was 7.7%.

As of December 31, 2016, the Company had active investments in 53 portfolio companies and residual investments in four portfolio companies that have sold their underlying operations. The aggregate fair value of the total portfolio was $524,454 and the weighted average effective yield on the Company's debt investments was 13.1% as of such date. As of December 31, 2016, the Company held equity investments in 86.0% of its portfolio companies and the average fully diluted equity ownership in those portfolio companies was 7.3%.

The weighted average yield of the Company's debt investments is not the same as a return on investment for its stockholders but, rather, relates to a portion of the Company's investment portfolio and is calculated before the payment of all of the Company's and its subsidiaries' fees and expenses. The weighted average yields were computed using the effective interest rates for debt investments at cost as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, including accretion of OID and loan origination fees, but excluding investments on non-accrual status, if any.

Purchases of debt and equity investments for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, totaled $214,681, $197,801, and $136,380, respectively. Proceeds from sales and repayments, including principal, return of capital distributions and realized gains, of portfolio investments for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015 totaled $163,656, $137,508, and $94,686, respectively.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Investments by type with corresponding percentage of total portfolio investments consisted of the following:

	Fair Value				Cost			
	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016		December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016	
Second Lien Debt	$341,279	57.3%	$272,987	52.1%	$357,585	62.0%	$276,048	55.2%
Subordinated Debt	126,481	21.2	114,460	21.8	126,465	21.9	114,040	22.8
First Lien Debt	28,911	4.8	55,957	10.7	31,921	5.5	57,881	11.6
Equity	84,585	14.2	70,849	13.5	53,915	9.3	45,207	9.0
Warrants	15,052	2.5	10,201	1.9	7,723	1.3	7,153	1.4
Royalty rights	—	—	—	—	185	—	185	—
Total	$596,308	100.0%	$524,454	100.0%	$577,794	100.0%	$500,514	100.0%

All investments made by the Company as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, were made in portfolio companies headquartered in the U.S. The following table shows portfolio composition by geographic region at fair value and cost and as a percentage of total investments. The geographic composition is determined by the location of the corporate headquarters of the portfolio company, which may not be indicative of the primary source of the portfolio company's business.

	Fair Value				Cost			
	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016		December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016	
Midwest	$167,967	28.2%	$166,412	31.6%	$161,809	28.1%	$153,456	30.7%
Southeast	130,237	21.8	122,633	23.4	130,694	22.6	130,107	26.0
Northeast	107,814	18.1	98,470	18.8	105,267	18.2	94,481	18.9
West	63,396	10.6	73,703	14.1	53,970	9.3	63,717	12.7
Southwest	126,894	21.3	63,236	12.1	126,054	21.8	58,753	11.7
Total	$596,308	100.0%	$524,454	100.0%	$577,794	100.0%	$500,514	100.0%

The following table shows portfolio composition by type and by geographic region at fair value as a percentage of net assets.

By Type	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016	By Geographic Region	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Second Lien Debt	86.9%	77.1%	Midwest	42.8%	46.9%
Subordinated Debt	32.3	32.3	Southeast	33.2	34.6
First Lien Debt	7.5	15.7	Northeast	27.5	27.8
Equity	21.5	20.0	West	16.2	20.8
Warrants	3.8	2.9	Southwest	32.3	17.9
Royalty rights	—	—			
Total	152.0%	148.0%	Total	152.0%	148.0%

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company had no portfolio company investments that represented more than 10% of the total investment portfolio on a fair value or cost basis. As of December 31, 2017, there were investments in two portfolio companies on non-accrual status, which had an aggregate cost and fair value of $18,691 and $7,087, respectively. As of December 31, 2016, there were no investments on non-accrual status.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Consolidated Schedule of Investments In and Advances To Affiliates

The table below represents the fair value of control and affiliate investments as of December 31, 2016 and any additions and reductions made to such investments during the year ended December 31, 2017, the ending fair value as of December 31, 2017, and the total investment income earned on such investments during the period.

Portfolio Company (1) (2)	December 31, 2016 Fair Value	Purchases (Cost)	Sales and Repayments (Cost)	Interest and Dividend Income Paid-in-kind	Accretion of OID and Origination Fees	Net Realized Gains (Losses)	Net Unrealized Appreciation (Depreciation)	December 31, 2017 Fair Value	Total Investment Income (3)
Control Investments									
FDS Avionics Corp. (4)									
(dba Flight Display Systems)	$ —	$ 6,141	$ —	$ 152	$ 1	$ —	$ (1,571)	$ 4,723	$ 208
Total Control Investments	$ —	$ 6,141	$ —	$ 152	$ 1	$ —	$ (1,571)	$ 4,723	$ 208
Affiliate Investments									
Apex Microtechnology, Inc.	$ 2,221	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ 1,179	$ 3,400	$ 252
FAR Research Inc.	8,421	—	(7,436)	27	21	—	414	1,447	710
FDS Avionics Corp. (4)									
(dba Flight Display Systems)	—	7,548	(5,393)	205	2	(2,362)	—	—	444
Fiber Materials, Inc.	4,984	—	—	41	3	—	854	5,882	534
Inflexxion, Inc.	3,968	400	(100)	297	6	—	(1,761)	2,810	607
Malabar International	12,984	—	(16,576)	116	13	6,843	(3,380)	—	1,301
Medsurant Holdings, LLC	12,971	2,544	—	—	10	—	6,100	21,625	892
Microbiology Research Associates, Inc.	11,131	—	—	129	3	—	1,192	12,455	1,078
Mirage Trailers LLC	10,929	—	(2,384)	48	23	—	340	8,956	1,051
Pfanstiehl, Inc.	19,958	—	—	—	4	—	(4,684)	15,278	836
Pinnergy, Ltd.	14,414	—	—	886	7	—	12,614	27,921	918
Rhino Assembly Company, LLC	—	4,233	—	14	1	—	—	4,248	238
Safety Products Group, LLC	22	—	21	—	—	(21)	(10)	12	47
SES Investors, LLC (5)									
(dba SES Foam)	12,017	500	(12,531)	—	14	—	—	—	952
Steward Holding LLC									
(dba Steward Advanced Materials)	7,859	—	—	200	7	—	(184)	7,882	1,126
Trantech Radiator Products, Inc.	7,236	—	—	—	3	—	(532)	6,707	1,034
World Wide Packaging, LLC	2,898	—	—	—	—	—	1,490	4,388	263
Total Affiliate Investments	$ 132,013	$ 15,225	$ (44,399)	$ 1,963	$ 117	$ 4,460	$ 13,632	$ 123,011	$ 12,283

(1) The investment type, industry, principal amount, ownership detail for equity investments, and if the investment is income producing is disclosed in the consolidated schedule of investments.
(2) Transfers between classifications are assumed to have occurred at the beginning of the quarter during which the investment was reclassified.
(3) Represents the total amount of interest, fees and dividends included in 2017 income for the portion of the year ended December 31, 2017 that the portfolio company was categorized in the Control or Affiliate category, as applicable.
(4) Portfolio company was transferred to Control investments from Affiliate investments in the fourth quarter of 2017, and earlier in the year from Non-control/Non-affiliate investments to Affiliate investments in the second quarter of 2017. The cost at the time of the respective transfers is included in the purchases column. The cost at the time of the transfer from Affiliate investments to Control investments is also included in the sales and repayments column of the Affiliate category. The accumulated net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) at the time of the respective transfers was reclassified to the new classification.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

(5) Portfolio company was transferred from Affiliate investments to Non-control/Non-affiliate investments during the year ended December 31, 2017. The cost at the time of transfer is included in the sales and repayments column, and the accumulated net unrealized (depreciation) at the time of transfer was reclassified to the new classification.

Note 4. Fair Value Measurements

Investments

The Board has established and documented processes and methodologies for determining the fair values of portfolio company investments on a recurring basis in accordance with ASC Topic 820 and consistent with the requirements of the 1940 Act. Fair value is the price, determined at the measurement date, that would be received in the sale of an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants. Where available, fair value is based on observable market prices or parameters, or derived from such prices or parameters. Where observable prices or inputs are not available or reliable, valuation techniques described below are applied. Under ASC Topic 820, portfolio investments recorded at fair value in the consolidated financial statements are classified within the fair value hierarchy based upon the level of judgment associated with the inputs used to measure their value, as defined below:

Level 1 — Inputs are unadjusted, quoted prices in active markets for identical assets as of the measurement date.

Level 2 — Inputs include quoted prices for similar assets in active markets, or that are quoted prices for identical or similar assets in markets that are not active and inputs that are observable, either directly or indirectly, for substantially the full term, if applicable, of the investment.

Level 3 — Inputs include those that are both unobservable and significant to the overall fair value measurement.

An investment's categorization within the valuation hierarchy is based upon the lowest level of input that is significant to the fair value measurement. The Company's investment portfolio is comprised entirely of debt and equity securities of privately held companies for which quoted prices falling within the categories of Level 1 and Level 2 inputs are not available. Therefore, the Company values all of its portfolio investments at fair value, as determined in good faith by the Board, using Level 3 inputs. The degree of judgment exercised by the Board in determining fair value is greatest for investments classified as Level 3 inputs. Due to the inherent uncertainty of determining the fair values of investments that do not have readily available market values, the Board's estimate of fair values may differ significantly from the values that would have been used had a ready market for the securities existed, and those differences may be material. In addition, changes in the market environment, portfolio company performance and other events that may occur over the lives of the investments may cause the amounts ultimately realized on these investments to be materially different than the valuations currently assigned.

With respect to investments for which market quotations are not readily available, the Board undertakes a multi-step valuation process each quarter, as described below:

- the quarterly valuation process begins with each portfolio company or investment being initially evaluated and rated by the investment professionals of the Investment Advisor responsible for the portfolio investment;

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

- preliminary valuation conclusions are then documented and discussed with the investment committee of the Investment Advisor;
- the Board engages one or more independent valuation firm(s) to conduct independent appraisals of a selection of our portfolio investments for which market quotations are not readily available. Each portfolio company investment is generally appraised by the valuation firm(s) at least once every calendar year and each new portfolio company investment is appraised at least once in the twelve-month period following the initial investment. In certain instances, the Company may determine that it is not cost-effective, and as a result it is not in the Company's stockholders' best interest, to request the independent appraisal of certain portfolio company investments. Such instances include, but are not limited to, situations where the Company determines that the fair value of the portfolio company investment is relatively insignificant to the fair value of the total portfolio. The Board consulted with the independent valuation firm(s) in arriving at the Company's determination of fair value for 18 and 13 of its portfolio company investments, representing 32.0% and 30.5% of the total portfolio investments at fair value (exclusive of new portfolio company investments made during the three months ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively) as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.
- the audit committee of the Board reviews the preliminary valuations of the Investment Advisor and of the independent valuation firm(s) and responds and supplements the valuation recommendations to reflect any comments; and
- the Board discusses these valuations and determines the fair value of each investment in our portfolio in good faith, based on the input of the Investment Advisor, the independent valuation firm(s) and the audit committee.

In making the good faith determination of the value of portfolio investments, the Board starts with the cost basis of the security. The transaction price is typically the best estimate of fair value at inception. When evidence supports a subsequent change to the carrying value from the original transaction price, adjustments are made to reflect the expected exit values.

Consistent with the policies and methodologies adopted by the Board, the Company performs detailed valuations of its debt and equity investments, including an analysis on the Company's unfunded loan commitments, using both the market and income approaches as appropriate. Under the market approach, the Company typically uses the enterprise value methodology to determine the fair value of an investment. There is no one methodology to estimate enterprise value and, in fact, for any one portfolio company, enterprise value is generally best expressed as a range of values, from which the Company derives a single estimate of enterprise value. Under the income approach, the Company typically prepares and analyzes discounted cash flow models to estimate the present value of future cash flows of either an individual debt investment or of the underlying portfolio company itself.

The Company evaluates investments in portfolio companies using the most recent portfolio company financial statements and forecasts. The Company also consults with the portfolio company's senior management to obtain further updates on the portfolio company's performance, including information such as industry trends, new product development and other operational issues.

For the Company's debt investments the primary valuation technique used to estimate the fair value is the discounted cash flow method. However, if there is deterioration in credit quality or a debt investment is in workout status, the Company may consider other methods in determining the fair value, including the value attributable to the debt investment from the enterprise value of the portfolio company or the proceeds that would

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

be received in a liquidation analysis. The Company's discounted cash flow models estimate a range of fair values by applying an appropriate discount rate to the future cash flow streams of its debt investments, based on future interest and principal payments as set forth in the associated loan agreements. The Company prepares a weighted average cost of capital for use in the discounted cash flow model for each investment, based on factors including, but not limited to: current pricing and credit metrics for similar proposed or executed investment transactions of private companies; the portfolio company's historical financial results and outlook; and the portfolio company's current leverage and credit quality as compared to leverage and credit quality as of the date the investment was made. The Company may also consider the following factors when determining the fair value of debt investments: the portfolio company's ability to make future scheduled payments; prepayment penalties and other fees; estimated remaining life; the nature and realizable value of any collateral securing such debt investment; and changes in the interest rate environment and the credit markets that generally may affect the price at which similar investments may be made. The Company estimates the remaining life of its debt investments to generally be the legal maturity date of the instrument, as the Company generally intends to hold its loans to maturity. However, if the Company has information available to it that the loan is expected to be repaid in the near term, it would use an estimated remaining life based on the expected repayment date.

For the Company's equity investments, including equity and warrants, the Company generally uses a market approach, including valuation methodologies consistent with industry practice, to estimate the enterprise value of portfolio companies. Typically, the enterprise value of a private company is based on multiples of EBITDA, net income, revenues, or in limited cases, book value. In estimating the enterprise value of a portfolio company, the Company analyzes various factors consistent with industry practice, including but not limited to original transaction multiples, the portfolio company's historical and projected financial results, applicable market trading and transaction comparables, applicable market yields and leverage levels, the nature and realizable value of any collateral, the markets in which the portfolio company does business, and comparisons of financial ratios of peer companies that are public. Where applicable, the Company considers the Company's ability to influence the capital structure of the portfolio company, as well as the timing of a potential exit.

The Company may also utilize an income approach when estimating the fair value of its equity securities, either as a primary methodology if consistent with industry practice or if the market approach is otherwise not applicable, or as a supporting methodology to corroborate the fair value ranges determined by the market approach. The Company typically prepares and analyzes discounted cash flow models based on projections of the future free cash flows (or earnings) of the portfolio company. The Company considers various factors, including, but not limited to, the portfolio company's projected financial results, applicable market trading and transaction comparables, applicable market yields and leverage levels, the markets in which the portfolio company does business, and comparisons of financial ratios of peer companies that are public.

The fair value of the Company's royalty rights are calculated based on projected future cash flows and the specific provisions contained in the pertinent agreements. The determination of the fair value of such royalty rights is not a significant component of the Company's valuation process.

The Company reviews the fair value hierarchy classifications on a quarterly basis. Reclassifications impacting Level 3 of the fair value hierarchy are reported as transfers in or out of the Level 3 category as of the beginning of the quarter in which the reclassifications occur. There were no transfers among Levels 1, 2, and 3 during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

The following tables present a reconciliation of the beginning and ending balances for fair valued investments measured using significant unobservable inputs (Level 3) for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016:

	Second Lien Debt	Subordinated Debt	First Lien Debt	Equity	Warrants	Royalty Rights	Total
Balance, December 31, 2015	$225,306	$ 89,604	$ 74,042	$ 44,899	$ 9,233	$ 185	$ 443,269
Net realized (losses) gains on investments	(11,131)	(2,926)	—	497	(275)	—	(13,835)
Net change in unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on investments	3,760	2,981	(1,854)	23,394	913	(185)	29,009
Purchase of investments	99,293	55,000	26,600	16,577	331	—	197,801
Proceeds from sales and repayments of investments	(47,189)	(31,527)	(44,102)	(14,689)	(1)	—	(137,508)
Interest and dividend income paid-in-kind	2,945	1,391	882	162	—	—	5,380
Proceeds from loan origination fees	(609)	(287)	(128)	—	—	—	(1,024)
Accretion of loan origination fees	424	181	517	6	—	—	1,128
Accretion of original issue discount	188	43	—	3	—	—	234
Balance, December 31, 2016	$272,987	$ 114,460	$ 55,957	$ 70,849	$10,201	$ —	$ 524,454
Net realized gains (losses) on investments	(376)	—	—	17,519	761	—	17,904
Net change in unrealized (depreciation) appreciation on investments	(13,307)	(404)	(1,024)	5,028	4,281	—	(5,426)
Purchase of investments	127,169	61,758	10,894	14,004	856	—	214,681
Proceeds from sales and repayments of investments	(55,581)	(51,312)	(32,725)	(22,991)	(1,047)	—	(163,656)
Interest and dividend income paid-in-kind	4,569	1,845	1,128	164	—	—	7,706
Proceeds from loan origination fees	(761)	(349)	(102)	—	—	—	(1,212)
Accretion of loan origination fees	405	305	754	8	—	—	1,472
Accretion of original issue discount	203	178	—	4	—	—	385
Transfers from first lien debt to second lien debt	5,971	—	(5,971)	—	—	—	—
Balance, December 31, 2017	$341,279	$ 126,481	$ 28,911	$ 84,585	$15,052	$ —	$ 596,308

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Net change in unrealized appreciation of $4,700 and $12,619 for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, was attributable to Level 3 investments held at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

The following tables summarize the significant unobservable inputs by valuation technique used to determine the fair value of the Company's Level 3 debt and equity investments as of December 31, 2017 and 2016. The tables are not intended to be all-inclusive, but instead capture the significant unobservable inputs relevant to the Company's determination of fair values.

	Fair Value at December 31, 2017	Valuation Techniques	Unobservable Inputs	Range (weighted average)
Debt investments:				
Second Lien Debt	$ 332,539	Discounted cash flow	Weighted average cost of capital	10.6% - 44.7% (14.6%)
	8,740	Enterprise value	EBITDA multiples	2.2x - 6.0x (5.1x)
Subordinated Debt	126,481	Discounted cash flow	Weighted average cost of capital	10.9% - 20.8% (13.6%)
First Lien Debt	16,289	Discounted cash flow	Weighted average cost of capital	11.8% - 13.1% (12.3%)
	9,812	Enterprise value	EBITDA multiples	5.5x - 5.5x (5.5x)
	2,810	Enterprise value	Revenue multiples	0.5x - 0.5x (0.5x)
Equity investments:				
Equity	84,585	Enterprise value	EBITDA multiples	4.0x - 17.3x (7.8x)
Warrants	15,052	Enterprise value	EBITDA multiples	4.0x - 9.5x (7.7x)
Royalty Rights	—	Discounted cash flow	Weighted average cost of capital	N/A

	Fair Value at December 31, 2016	Valuation Techniques	Unobservable Inputs	Range (weighted average)
Debt investments:				
Second Lien Debt	$ 264,573	Discounted cash flow	Weighted average cost of capital	10.9% - 26.5% (14.8%)
	8,414	Enterprise value	Asset coverage	85.0% - 95.0% (87.3%)
Subordinated Debt	114,460	Discounted cash flow	Weighted average cost of capital	10.9% - 17.7% (13.6%)
First Lien Debt	47,892	Discounted cash flow	Weighted average cost of capital	10.9% - 21.0% (12.6%)
	8,065	Enterprise value	Asset coverage	80.0% - 92.2% (84.2%)
Equity investments:				
Equity	64,596	Enterprise value	EBITDA multiples	5.0x - 12.9x (7.8x)
	6,253	Enterprise value	Revenue multiples	0.7x - 0.7x (0.7x)
Warrants	10,201	Enterprise value	EBITDA multiples	5.5x - 9.5x (6.6x)
Royalty Rights	—	Discounted cash flow	Weighted average cost of capital	N/A

The significant unobservable input used in determining the fair value under the discounted cash flow technique is the weighted average cost of capital of each security. Significant increases (or decreases) in this input would likely result in significantly lower (or higher) fair value estimates.

The significant unobservable inputs used in determining fair value under the enterprise value technique are revenue and EBITDA multiples, as well as asset coverage. Significant increases (or decreases) in these inputs could result in significantly higher (or lower) fair value estimates.

Other Financial Assets and Liabilities

ASC Topic 820 requires disclosure of the fair value of financial instruments for which it is practical to estimate such value. The Company believes that the carrying amounts of its other financial instruments such as cash and cash equivalents, interest receivable and accounts payable and other liabilities approximate the fair value of such items due to the short maturity of such instruments. The Company's borrowings under the Credit Facility (as defined in Note 6) and SBA debentures are recorded at their respective carrying values. The fair value of borrowings under the Credit Facility, if valued under ASC Topic 820, are based on a market yield approach and current interest rates, which are Level 3 inputs to the market yield model, and is estimated to be $11,500 as of December 31, 2017, which is the same as the Company's carrying value of the borrowings. There were no borrowings outstanding under the Credit Facility as of December 31, 2016. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the fair value of the Company's SBA debentures, if valued under ASC Topic 820 using Level 3 inputs, is estimated to be $231,300 and $224,000, respectively, which is the same as the Company's carrying value of the debentures. The fair value of SBA debentures is estimated by discounting remaining payments using current market rates for similar instruments and considering such factors as the legal maturity date and the ability of market participants to prepay the debentures.

Note 5. Related Party Transactions

Investment Advisory Agreement: The Company has entered into an Investment Advisory Agreement with the Investment Advisor. On June 1, 2017, the Board approved the renewal of the Investment Advisory Agreement through June 20, 2018. Pursuant to the Investment Advisory Agreement and subject to the overall supervision of the Board, the Investment Advisor provides investment advisory services to the Company. For providing these services, the Investment Advisor receives a fee, consisting of two components — a base management fee and an incentive fee.

The base management fee is calculated at an annual rate of 1.75% based on the average value of total assets (other than cash or cash equivalents, but including assets purchased with borrowed amounts) at the end of the two most recently completed calendar quarters. The base management fee is payable quarterly in arrears. The base management fee under the Investment Advisory Agreement for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 totaled $9,788, $8,254 and $7,545, respectively. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the base management fee payable was $2,586 and $2,211, respectively; such amounts are reported in the management and incentive fees payable – due to affiliate line on the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities.

The incentive fee consists of two parts. The first part is calculated and payable quarterly in arrears based on the Company's pre-incentive fee net investment income for the quarter. Pre-incentive fee net investment income means interest income, dividend income and any other income (including any other fees such as commitment, origination, structuring, diligence and consulting fees or other fees that the Company receives from portfolio companies but excluding fees for providing managerial assistance) accrued during the calendar quarter, minus operating expenses for the quarter (including the base management fee, any expenses payable under the Administration Agreement (defined below) and any interest expense and dividends paid on any outstanding preferred stock, but excluding the incentive fee and excise taxes on realized gains). Pre-incentive fee net investment income includes, in the case of investments with a deferred interest feature (such as market discount, debt instruments with PIK income, preferred stock with PIK dividends and zero-coupon securities), accrued income the Company has not yet received in cash. The Investment Advisor is not under any obligation to reimburse the Company for any part of the incentive fee it receives that was based on accrued interest that the Company never collects.

Pre-incentive fee net investment income does not include any realized capital gains, taxes associated with such realized capital gains, realized capital losses or unrealized capital appreciation or depreciation. Because of the structure of the incentive fee, it is possible that the Company may pay an incentive fee in a quarter where the Company incurs a loss. For example, if the Company generates pre-incentive fee net investment income in excess of the hurdle rate (as defined below) for a quarter, the Company will pay the applicable incentive fee even if the Company has incurred a loss in that quarter due to a net loss on investments.

Pre-incentive fee net investment income, expressed as a rate of return on the value of the Company's weighted average net assets (defined as total assets less indebtedness and before taking into account any incentive fees payable during the period) at the end of the immediately preceding calendar quarter, is compared to a fixed "hurdle rate" of 2.0% per quarter. If market interest rates rise, the Company may be able to invest funds in debt instruments that provide for a higher return, which would increase the Company's pre-incentive fee net investment income and make it easier for the Investment Advisor to surpass the fixed hurdle rate and receive an incentive fee based on such net investment income.

The Company pays the Investment Advisor an incentive fee with respect to pre-incentive fee net investment income in each calendar quarter as follows:

- no incentive fee in any calendar quarter in which the pre-incentive fee net investment income does not exceed the hurdle rate of 2.0%;
- 100.0% of the Company's pre-incentive fee net investment income with respect to that portion of such pre-incentive fee net investment income, if any, that exceeds the hurdle rate but is less than 2.5% in any calendar quarter. This portion of the pre-incentive fee net investment income (which exceeds the hurdle rate but is less than 2.5%) is referred to as the "catch-up" provision. The catch-up is meant to provide the Investment Advisor with 20.0% of the pre-incentive fee net investment income as if a hurdle rate did not apply if this net investment income exceeds 2.5% in any calendar quarter; and
- 20.0% of the amount of the Company's pre-incentive fee net investment income, if any, that exceeds 2.5% in any calendar quarter.

The sum of the calculations above equals the income incentive fee. The income incentive fee is appropriately prorated for any period of less than three months and adjusted for any share issuances or repurchases during the calendar quarter. The income incentive fee for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 totaled $8,913, $7,375 and $6,582, respectively. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the income incentive fee payable was $2,154 and $2,197, respectively; such amounts are reported in the management and incentive fees payable – due to affiliate line on the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities.

The second part of the incentive fee is a capital gains incentive fee that is determined and paid in arrears as of the end of each fiscal year (or upon termination of the Investment Advisory Agreement, as of the termination date), and equals 20.0% of the net capital gains as of the end of the fiscal year. In determining the capital gains incentive fee to be paid to the Investment Advisor, the Company calculates the cumulative aggregate realized capital gains and cumulative aggregate realized capital losses since the IPO, and the aggregate unrealized capital depreciation as of the date of the calculation, as applicable, with respect to each of the investments in the Company's portfolio. At the end of the applicable year, the amount of capital gains that serves as the basis for the calculation of the capital gains incentive fee to be paid equals the cumulative aggregate realized capital gains less cumulative aggregate realized capital losses, less aggregate unrealized capital depreciation, with respect to the Company's portfolio of investments. If this number is positive at the end of such year, then the capital gains incentive fee to be paid for such year equals 20.0% of such amount, less the aggregate amount of any capital gains incentive fees paid in all prior years. As of both December 31, 2017 and 2016, the capital gains incentive fee payable was $0. The aggregate amount of capital gains incentive fees paid from the IPO through December 31, 2017 is $348.

In addition, the Company accrues, but does not pay, a capital gains incentive fee in connection with any unrealized capital appreciation, as appropriate. If, on a cumulative basis, the sum of net realized gains/(losses) plus net unrealized appreciation/(depreciation) decreases during a period, the Company will reverse any excess capital gains incentive fee previously accrued such that the amount of capital gains incentive fee accrued is no more than 20.0% of the sum of net realized gains/(losses) plus net unrealized appreciation/(depreciation). During the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the Company accrued (reversed) capital gains incentive fees

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

of $2,055, $2,994, and $(101), respectively. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the accrued capital gains incentive fee payable was $6,477 and $4,422, respectively; such amounts are reported in the management and incentive fees payable – due to affiliate line on the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities.

The sum of the income incentive fee and the capital gains incentive fee is the incentive fee and is reported in the consolidated statements of operations. Accrued management fees, income incentive fees and capital gains incentive fees are reported in the management and incentive fees payable – due to affiliate line in the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities.

Unless terminated earlier as described below, the Investment Advisory Agreement will continue in effect from year to year if approved annually by the Board or by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the Company’s outstanding voting securities, and, in either case, if also approved by a majority of the Independent Directors. The Investment Advisory Agreement automatically terminates in the event of its assignment, as defined in the 1940 Act, by the Investment Advisor and may be terminated by either party without penalty upon not less than 60 days’ written notice to the other. The holders of a majority of the Company’s outstanding voting securities may also terminate the Investment Advisory Agreement without penalty.

Administration Agreement: The Company also entered into an administration agreement (the “Administration Agreement”) with the Investment Advisor. On June 1, 2017, the Board approved the renewal of the Administration Agreement through June 20, 2018. Under the Administration Agreement, the Investment Advisor furnishes the Company with office facilities and equipment, provides clerical, bookkeeping, and record keeping services at such facilities and provides the Company with other administrative services necessary to conduct its day-to-day operations. The Company reimburses the Investment Advisor for the allocable portion of overhead expenses incurred in performing its obligations under the Administration Agreement, including rent and the Company’s allocable portion of the cost of its chief financial officer and chief compliance officer and their respective staffs. Under the Administration Agreement, the Investment Advisor also provides managerial assistance to those portfolio companies to which the Company is required to provide such assistance and the Company reimburses the Investment Advisor for fees and expenses incurred with providing such services. In addition, the Company reimburses the Investment Advisor for fees and expenses incurred while performing due diligence on the Company’s prospective portfolio companies, including “dead deal” expenses. Under the Administration Agreement, administrative expenses for services provided for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 totaled $1,428, $1,422 and $1,465, respectively. Accrued administrative expenses are reported in the administration fee payable and other – due to affiliate line on the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities.

Note 6. Debt

Revolving Credit Facility: On June 16, 2014, FIC entered into a senior secured revolving credit agreement (the “Credit Facility”) with ING Capital LLC (“ING”), as the administrative agent, collateral agent, and lender. The Credit Facility has a commitment of $50,000 with an accordion feature that allows for an increase in the total commitments up to $75,000, subject to certain conditions and the satisfaction of specified financial covenants. The Credit Facility is secured by certain portfolio investments held by the Company, but portfolio investments held by the Funds are not collateral for the Credit Facility. On December 29, 2017, the Company entered into an amendment to the Credit Facility to, among other things, extend the maturity date from June 16, 2018 to June 16, 2019.

Amounts available to borrow under the Credit Facility are subject to a minimum borrowing/collateral base that applies an advance rate to certain investments held by the Company, excluding investments held by the

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Funds. The Company is subject to limitations with respect to the investments securing the Credit Facility, including, but not limited to, restrictions on sector concentrations, loan size, payment frequency and status and collateral interests, as well as restrictions on portfolio company leverage, which may also affect the borrowing base and therefore amounts available to borrow.

Borrowings under the Credit Facility bear interest, subject to the Company's election, on a per annum basis equal to (i) the alternate base rate plus 2.5% or (ii) the applicable London Interbank Offered Rate, or LIBOR, which varies depending on the period of the borrowing under the Credit Facility, plus 3.5%. The alternate base rate is equal to the greater of (i) prime rate, (ii) the federal funds rate plus 0.5% or (iii) the three-month LIBOR plus 1.0%. The Company pays a commitment fee between 0.5% and 1.0% per annum based on the size of the unused portion of the Credit Facility.

The Company has made customary representations and warranties and is required to comply with various covenants, reporting requirements and other customary requirements for similar credit facilities. These covenants are subject to important limitations and exceptions that are described in the documents governing the Credit Facility. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company was in compliance in all material respect with the terms of the Credit Facility.

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company had outstanding borrowings under the Credit Facility of $11,500 and zero, respectively. For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, interest and fees related to the Credit Facility amounted to $874, $980 and $1,069, respectively, which are included in interest and financing expenses on the consolidated statements of operation. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, accrued interest and fees payable related to the Credit Facility totaled $136 and $127, respectively.

SBA debentures: The Company uses debenture leverage provided through the SBA to fund a portion of its investment purchases.

Under the SBA debenture program, the SBA commits to purchase debentures issued by SBICs; such debentures have 10-year terms with the entire principal balance due at maturity and are guaranteed by the SBA. Approved SBA debenture commitments that were unused as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 were $27,000 and $51,000, respectively. The SBA may limit the amount that may be drawn each year under these commitments, and each issuance of leverage is conditioned on the Company's full compliance, as determined by the SBA, with the terms and conditions set forth in the SBIC Act.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company's issued and outstanding SBA debentures mature as follows:

Pooling Date (1)	Maturity Date	Fixed Interest Rate	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
3/26/2008	3/1/2018	6.188%	$ —	$ 24,750
9/24/2008	9/1/2018	6.442	—	11,950
3/25/2009	3/1/2019	5.337	14,750	19,750
9/23/2009	9/1/2019	4.950	10,000	10,000
3/24/2010	3/1/2020	4.825	13,000	13,000
9/22/2010	9/1/2020	3.932	12,500	12,500
3/29/2011	3/1/2021	4.801	1,550	1,550
9/21/2011	9/1/2021	3.594	3,250	3,250
3/21/2012	3/1/2022	3.483	3,250	3,250
3/21/2012	3/1/2022	3.051	19,000	19,000
9/19/2012	9/1/2022	2.530	11,000	11,000
9/19/2012	9/1/2022	3.049	11,500	11,500
3/27/2013	3/1/2023	3.155	3,000	3,000
9/24/2014	9/1/2024	3.775	1,000	1,000
3/25/2015	3/1/2025	3.321	5,500	5,500
3/25/2015	3/1/2025	3.277	22,500	22,500
9/23/2015	9/1/2025	3.571	16,700	16,700
3/23/2016	3/1/2026	3.267	1,500	1,500
3/23/2016	3/1/2026	3.249	21,800	21,800
9/21/2016	9/1/2026	2.793	500	500
3/29/2017	3/1/2027	3.587	10,000	10,000
9/20/2017	9/1/2027	3.260	1,000	—
9/20/2017	9/1/2027	3.190	33,000	—
(2)	(2)	(2)	10,000	—
(2)	(2)	(2)	5,000	—
Total outstanding SBA debentures			$ 231,300	$ 224,000

(1) The SBA has two scheduled pooling dates for debentures (in March and in September). Certain debentures funded during the reporting periods may not be pooled until the subsequent pooling date.

(2) The Company issued $15,000 in SBA debentures which will pool in March 2018. Until the pooling date, the debentures bear interest at a fixed rate interim interest rate of approximately 2.515%. The Company expects the current interim interest rate will reset to a higher long-term fixed rate on the pooling date.

Interest on SBA debentures is payable semi-annually on March 1 and September 1. For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, interest and fees on outstanding SBA debentures amounted to $9,019, $9,614, and $8,359, respectively, which are included in interest and financing expenses on the consolidated statements of operations. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, accrued interest and fees payable related to the SBA debentures totaled $2,576 and $2,995, respectively.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Deferred Financing Costs

Deferred financing costs are amortized into interest and financing expenses on the consolidated statements of operations using the effective interest method, over the term of the respective financing instrument. Deferred financing cost amortization for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 was $1,245, $1,112 and $1,010, respectively. Deferred financing costs related to the Credit Facility and SBA debentures as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, were as follows:

	December 31, 2017			December 31, 2016		
	SBA debentures	Credit Facility	Total	SBA debentures	Credit Facility	Total
SBA debenture commitment fees	$ 3,000	$ —	$ 3,000	$ 2,750	$ —	$ 2,750
SBA debenture leverage fees	6,621	—	6,621	5,433	—	5,433
Credit Facility upfront fees	—	1,495	1,495	—	1,284	1,284
Total deferred financing costs	9,621	1,495	11,116	8,183	1,284	9,467
Less: accumulated amortization	(4,981)	(1,170)	(6,151)	(4,084)	(822)	(4,906)
Unamortized deferred financing costs	$ 4,640	$ 325	$ 4,965	$ 4,099	$ 462	$ 4,561

Unamortized deferred financing costs are presented as a direct offset to the SBA debentures and Credit Facility liabilities on the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities. The following table summarizes the outstanding debt net of unamortized deferred financing costs as of December 31, 2017 and 2016:

	December 31, 2017			December 31, 2016		
	SBA debentures	Credit Facility	Total	SBA debentures	Credit Facility	Total
Outstanding debt	$231,300	$11,500	$242,800	$224,000	$ —	$224,000
Less: unamortized deferred financing costs	(4,640)	(325)	(4,965)	(4,099)	(462)	(4,561)
Debt, net of unamortized deferred financing costs	$226,660	$11,175	$237,835	$219,901	$ (462)	$219,439

The weighted average interest rate for all SBA debentures and borrowings outstanding under the Credit Facility as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 was 3.6% and 4.1%, respectively.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Note 7. Commitments and Contingencies

Commitments: The Company had outstanding commitments to portfolio companies to fund various undrawn revolving loans, other credit facilities and capital commitments totaling $8,352 and $6,566 as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively. Such outstanding commitments are summarized in the following table:

	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016	
Portfolio Company — Investment	Total Commitment	Unfunded Commitment	Total Commitment	Unfunded Commitment
FAR Research Inc. — Revolving Loan	$ —	$ —	$ 1,750	$ 1,614
Inflexxion, Inc. — Revolving Loan	275	—	500	350
inthinc Technology Solutions, Inc. — Second Lien Debt	—	—	5,000	1,000
Lightning Diversion Systems, LLC — Revolving Loan	—	—	250	250
Mesa Line Services, LLC — Delayed Draw Commitment	4,000	4,000	—	—
Oaktree Medical Centre, P.C. — Revolving Loan	2,500	—	2,500	—
Rhino Assembly Company, LLC — Delayed Draw Commitment	1,500	1,500	—	—
Safety Products Group, LLC — Common Equity	2,852	2,852	2,852	2,852
SES Investors, LLC (dba SES Foam) — Revolving Loan	—	—	1,500	500
Total	$ 11,127	$ 8,352	$ 14,352	$ 6,566

Additional detail for each of the commitments above is provided in the Company's consolidated schedules of investments.

The commitments are generally subject to the borrowers meeting certain criteria such as compliance with financial and nonfinancial covenants. Since commitments may expire without being drawn upon, the total commitment amount does not necessarily represent future cash requirements.

Indemnifications: In the normal course of business, the Company enters into contracts and agreements that contain a variety of representations and warranties that provide indemnifications under certain circumstances. In addition, in connection with the disposition of an investment in a portfolio company, the Company may be required to make representations about the business and financial affairs of such portfolio company typical of those made in connection with the sale of a business. The Company may also be required to indemnify the purchasers of such investment to the extent that any such representations are inaccurate. The Company's maximum exposure under these arrangements is unknown, as this would involve future claims that may be made against the Company that have not yet occurred. The Company expects the risk of future obligation under these indemnifications to be remote.

Legal proceedings: In the normal course of business, the Company may be subject to legal and regulatory proceedings that are generally incidental to its ongoing operations. While the outcome of these legal proceedings cannot be predicted with certainty, the Company does not believe these proceedings will have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Note 8. Common Stock

The following table summarizes the total shares issued, offering price and net proceeds received in public offerings of the Company's common stock since the IPO:

Offering Date	Number of Shares	Gross Proceeds	Underwriting Fees and Commissions and Offering Costs	Offering Price
September 11, 2012	2,472,500	$39,807	$ 1,855	$ 16.10
February 8, 2013	1,725,000	30,361	1,504	17.60
September 30, 2014	2,083,414(1)	35,418	1,747	17.00
May 27, 2016	2,875,000(2)	43,755	56(5)	15.22(6)
November 29, 2016	3,220,000(3)	53,446	2,319	16.60(7)
June 20, 2017	2,012,500(4)	33,810	1,508	16.80

(1) Includes 83,414 shares purchased by underwriters pursuant to the over-allotment option on October 21, 2014.
(2) Includes 375,000 shares purchased by underwriters pursuant to the over-allotment option on June 10, 2016.
(3) Includes 420,000 shares purchased by underwriters pursuant to the over-allotment option on December 13, 2016.
(4) Includes 262,500 shares purchased by underwriters pursuant to the over-allotment option on June 29, 2017.
(5) Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC agreed to bear up to $169 of the offering costs associated with this offering. Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC has also agreed to bear $1,756, or 100%, of the underwriting fees and commissions in connection with this offering and the exercise of the over-allotment option. All payments made by Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC are not subject to reimbursement by the Company.
(6) Represents the weighted average offering price of shares issued, including the shares issued pursuant to the over-allotment option. Shares were issued on May 27, 2016 at an offering price of $15.27. The offering price of the over-allotment option shares was adjusted for the $0.39 dividend to shareholders of record on June 10, 2016.
(7) Represents the weighted average offering price of shares issued, including the shares issued pursuant to the over-allotment option. Shares were issued on November 29, 2016 at an offering price of $16.65. The offering price of the over-allotment option shares was adjusted for the $0.43 dividend to shareholders of record on November 30, 2016.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

On August 21, 2014, the Company entered into an equity distribution agreement with Raymond James & Associates, Inc. and Robert W. Baird & Co. Incorporated through which the Company could sell, by means of at-the-market offerings from time to time, shares of the Company's common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to $50,000 (the "ATM Program"). The gross proceeds raised, the related sales agent commission, the offering expenses and the average price at which shares were issued under the ATM Program during the last three fiscal years are as follows:

Year Ended December 31, 2015	Number of Shares	Gross Proceeds	Underwriting Fees and Commissions and Offering Costs	Average Offering Price
First Quarter ended March 31, 2015	49,193	$ 819	$ 16	$ 16.65
Second Quarter ended June 30, 2015	141,430	2,347	50	16.60
Third Quarter ended September 30, 2015	—	—	—	—
Fourth Quarter ended December 31, 2015	—	—	—	—
Total	190,623	$ 3,166	$ 66	$ 16.61
Year Ended December 31, 2016				
First Quarter ended March 31, 2016	—	$ —	$ —	$ —
Second Quarter ended June 30, 2016	—	—	—	—
Third Quarter ended September 30, 2016	—	—	—	—
Fourth Quarter ended December 31, 2016	—	—	—	—
Total	—	$ —	$ —	$ —
Year Ended December 31, 2017				
First Quarter ended March 31, 2017	—	$ —	$ —	$ —
Second Quarter ended June 30, 2017	—	—	—	—
Third Quarter ended September 30, 2017	—	—	—	—
Fourth Quarter ended December 31, 2017	—	—	—	—
Total	—	$ —	$ —	$ —

See Note 9 for additional information regarding the issuance of shares under the DRIP.

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company had 24,507,940 and 22,446,076 shares of common stock outstanding, respectively.

Note 9. Dividends and Distributions

The Company's dividends and distributions are recorded on the record date. The following table summarizes the dividends paid during the last three fiscal years.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Date Declared	Record Date	Payment Date	Amount Per Share	Total Distribution	Cash Distribution	DRIP Shares Value	DRIP Shares	DRIP Share Issue Price
Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2015:								
2/17/2015	3/12/2015	3/26/2015	$ 0.38	$ 6,099	$ 5,886	$ 213	12,922	$16.46
5/5/2015	6/11/2015	6/25/2015	0.38	6,176	5,968	208	12,883	16.18
5/5/2015 (1)	6/11/2015	6/25/2015	0.02	325	314	11	678	16.18
8/3/2015	9/17/2015	9/25/2015	0.39	6,345	6,097	248	16,985	14.61
11/2/2015 (1)	11/27/2015	12/11/2015	0.04	651	624	27	2,034	13.43
11/2/2015	12/4/2015	12/18/2015	0.39	6,351	6,157	194	13,570	14.29
			$ 1.60	$ 25,947	$ 25,046	$ 901	59,072	
Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2016:								
2/16/2016	3/11/2016	3/25/2016	$ 0.39	$ 6,357	$ 6,177	$ 180	11,631	15.49
5/2/2016	6/10/2016	6/24/2016	0.39	7,337	7,143	194	12,722	15.25
8/1/2016	9/9/2016	9/23/2016	0.39	7,488	7,293	195	12,340	15.76
11/1/2016	12/2/2016	12/16/2016	0.39	8,585	8,386	199	12,381	16.08
11/1/2016 (1)	12/2/2016	12/16/2016	0.04	880	860	20	1,270	16.08
			$ 1.60	$ 30,647	$ 29,859	$ 788	50,344	
Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2017:								
2/14/2017	3/10/2017	3/24/2017	$ 0.39	$ 8,754	$ 8,556	$ 198	11,500	17.17
5/1/2017	6/9/2017	6/23/2017	0.39	8,758	8,582	176	10,548	16.74
7/31/2017	9/8/2017	9/22/2017	0.39	9,548	9,353	195	12,256	15.90
10/30/2017	12/20/2017	12/27/2017	0.39	9,552	9,343	209	13,659	15.30
10/30/2017(1)	12/20/2017	12/27/2017	0.04	980	959	21	1,401	15.30
			$ 1.60	$ 37,592	$ 36,793	$ 799	49,364	

(1) Special dividend.

Since the Company’s IPO, dividends and distributions to stockholders total $167,300 or $10.56 per share.

There were no deemed distributions during the years 2017, 2016, or 2015. See Note 12 for further discussion regarding deemed distributions.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Note 10. Financial Highlights

The following is a schedule of financial highlights for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014 and 2013:

	Year Ended December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
Per share data:					
Net asset value at beginning of period	$ 15.76	$ 15.17	$ 15.16	$ 15.35	$ 15.32
Net investment income (1)	1.43	1.45	1.64	1.62	1.43
Net realized gain (loss) on investments, net of tax benefit (refund) (1)	0.67	(0.77)	0.58	(1.18)	2.22
Net unrealized (depreciation) appreciation on investments (1)	(0.23)	1.59	(0.62)	0.92	(1.64)
Total increase from investment operations (1)	1.87	2.27	1.60	1.36	2.01
Accretive (dilutive) effect of share issuances	0.02	(0.05)	0.02	0.19	0.18
Dividends to stockholders	(1.60)	(1.60)	(1.60)	(1.72)	(1.94)
Taxes paid on deemed distribution	—	—	—	—	(0.21)
Other (2)	—	(0.03)	(0.01)	(0.02)	(0.01)
Net asset value at end of period	$ 16.05	$ 15.76	$ 15.17	$ 15.16	$ 15.35
Market value at end of period	$ 15.18	$ 15.73	$ 13.69	$ 14.85	$ 21.74
Shares outstanding at end of period	24,507,940	22,446,076	16,300,732	16,051,037	13,755,232
Weighted average shares outstanding during the period	23,527,188	18,283,715	16,201,449	14,346,438	13,524,368
Net assets at end of period	$ 393,273	$ 353,785	$ 247,362	$ 243,263	$ 211,125
Average net assets (6)	$ 376,292	$ 289,453	$ 245,705	$ 222,736	$ 209,136
Ratios to average net assets:					
Total expenses (4)(7)	9.2%	11.5%	11.1%	10.1%	10.6%
Net investment income (5)	8.9%	9.2%	10.8%	10.5%	9.2%
Total return (3)	6.7%	26.6%	3.0%	(23.8)%	44.0%
Portfolio turnover ratio	29.5%	29.3%	22.5%	18.9%	44.9%
Supplemental Data:					
Average debt outstanding	$ 219,920	$ 221,200	$ 199,340	$ 152,700	$ 144,500
Average debt per share (1)	$ 9.35	$ 12.10	$ 12.30	$ 10.64	$ 10.68

(1) Weighted average per share data.
(2) Represents the impact of different share amounts used in calculating per share data as a result of calculating certain per share data based on weighted average shares outstanding during the period and certain per share data based on the shares outstanding as of a period end or transaction date.
(3) The total return for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014 and 2013 equals the change in the market value of the Company's common stock per share during the period plus dividends paid per share during the period, divided by the market value per share at the beginning of the period.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

(4) The total expenses to average net assets ratio is calculated using the total expenses caption as presented on the consolidated statements of operations, which includes incentive fee and excludes the income tax provision.

(5) The net investment income to average net assets ratio is calculated using the net investment income caption as presented on the consolidated statements of operations, which includes incentive fee.

(6) Average net assets is calculated as the average of the net asset balances as of each quarter end during the fiscal year and the prior year end.

(7) The following is a schedule of supplemental expense ratios to average net assets:

	Year Ended December 31,				
Ratio to average net assets:	**2017**	**2016**	**2015**	**2014**	**2013**
Expenses other than incentive fee	6.3%	7.9%	8.5%	7.9%	7.4%
Incentive fee	2.9%	3.6%	2.6%	2.2%	3.2%
Total expenses	9.2%	11.5%	11.1%	10.1%	10.6%

Note 11. Selected Quarterly Financial Data (unaudited)

	March 31, 2017	June 30, 2017	September 30, 2017	December 31, 2017
Total investment income	$ 16,228	$17,271	$ 18,048	$ 17,068
Net investment income	7,859	8,942	9,189	7,687
Net increase in net assets from operations	9,532	9,957	12,055	12,407
Net investment income per share	0.35	0.39	0.38	0.31
Net increase in net assets from operations per share	0.42	0.44	0.49	0.51
Net asset value per share at end of period	15.80	15.87	15.97	16.05

	March 31, 2016	June 30, 2016	September 30, 2016	December 31, 2016
Total investment income	$ 14,691	$13,832	$ 14,431	$ 17,275
Net investment income	7,082	4,943	6,735	7,841
Net increase in net assets from operations	7,540	12,793	8,594	12,643
Net investment income per share	0.43	0.29	0.35	0.39
Net increase in net assets from operations per share	0.46	0.74	0.45	0.62
Net asset value per share at end of period	15.25	15.52	15.58	15.76

Note 12. Income Taxes

The Company has elected to be treated for federal income tax purposes as a RIC, whereby the Company generally will not pay corporate-level federal income taxes on any net ordinary income or capital gains that the Company distributes to its stockholders as dividends. The Company must generally distribute at least 90% of its investment company taxable income to maintain its RIC status. As part of maintaining RIC status, undistributed taxable income pertaining to a given fiscal year may be distributed up to 12 months subsequent to the end of that fiscal year, provided such dividends are declared prior to the later of the filing of the federal income tax return for the prior year or the 15th day of the 10th month following the prior tax year. Such taxable income carried forward to the next tax year will be subject to excise tax equal to 4% of the amount by which (i) 98% of the

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

Company's ordinary income recognized during a calendar year and (ii) 98.2% of the Company's long term capital gains, as defined by Subchapter M of the Code, recognized for the one year period ending October 31st of a calendar year exceeds the respective distributions for the year. For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the excise tax provision was $91, $370 and $395, respectively. Excise tax is included as a component of income tax provision and income tax (provision) on realized gains on investments, depending on the character of the underlying taxable income, on the consolidated statements of operations.

The Taxable Subsidiaries hold certain portfolio investments for the Company. The Taxable Subsidiaries are consolidated for financial reporting purposes, and the portfolio investments held by the Taxable Subsidiaries are included in the Company's consolidated financial statements. The principal purpose of the Taxable Subsidiaries are to permit the Company to hold equity investments in portfolio companies which are "pass through" entities for federal income tax purposes in order to comply with the "source-of-income" requirements contained in the RIC tax provisions of Subchapter M of the Code. The Taxable Subsidiaries are not consolidated for federal income tax purposes and may generate income tax expense or income tax benefit as a result of their ownership of various portfolio investments. The Company classifies interest and penalties, if any, as a component of income tax provision on the consolidated statements of operations. For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, income tax expense at the taxable subsidiaries was $1,973, $232, and $304, respectively. Income tax expense is included as a component of the income tax provisions on the consolidated statements of operations.

Listed below is a reconciliation of net increase in net assets resulting from operations on the consolidated statements of operations to taxable income and to total distributions declared to common stockholders for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015.

	2017 (1)	2016	2015
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	$ 43,951	$ 41,570	$ 25,977
Net change in unrealized depreciation (appreciation) on investments	5,426	(29,009)	10,086
Permanent book income and tax income differences	2,286	(104)	1,253
Temporary book income and tax income differences	(6,776)	2,240	(7,207)
Capital loss carry forward (utilization)	(9,217)	13,438	(3,134)
Taxable income	35,670	28,135	26,975
Taxable income earned in prior year and carried forward for distribution in current year	12,359	14,871	13,843
Taxable income earned in current period and carried forward for distribution in following year	(10,437)	(12,359)	(14,871)
Total distributions to common stockholders	$ 37,592	$ 30,647	$ 25,947

(1) The Company's taxable income for 2017 is an estimate and will not be finalized until the Company files its 2017 federal income tax return in 2018. Therefore, the Company's actual taxable income, and the Company's actual taxable income that was earned in 2017 and carried forward for distribution in 2018, may be different than this estimate.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

For tax purposes, distributions paid to stockholders are reported as ordinary income, long term capital gains, qualified dividends, return of capital or a combination thereof. There were no return of capital distributions paid during 2017, 2016 and 2015. The tax character of distributions paid for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 was as follows:

	2017	2016	2015
Ordinary income	$36,988	$29,211	$25,639
Long term capital gains	—	—	—
Qualified dividends	604	1,436	308
Total distributions	$37,592	$30,647	$25,947

The Company estimates that it generated undistributed ordinary taxable income of approximately $10,437, or $0.43 per share during 2017 that will be carried forward and distributed in 2018. Ordinary dividend distributions from a RIC do not qualify for the preferential federal income tax rate on dividend income from certain domestic corporations and qualified foreign corporations, except to the extent that the RIC received the income in the form of qualifying dividends from domestic corporations and qualified foreign corporations.

The Company may distribute a portion of its realized net long term capital gains in excess of realized net short term capital losses to its stockholders, but may also decide to retain a portion, or all, of its net capital gains and elect to make a "deemed distribution" to its stockholders. For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the Company did not elect to designate retained net capital gains as a deemed distribution.

As of December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the tax basis components of distributable earnings were as follows:

	2017 (1)	2016	2015
Undistributed ordinary income	$ 10,489	$ 12,315	$14,782
Undistributed qualified income	(52)	44	89
Undistributed long term capital gains	—	—	—
Unrealized appreciation (depreciation) (2)	19,018	23,944	(6,703)
Temporary book/tax differences	5,624	(1,153)	1,087
Capital loss carry forward	(12,375)	(21,592)	(8,154)
Total distributable earnings	$ 22,704	$ 13,558	$ 1,101

(1) The Company's undistributed earnings for 2017 is an estimate and will not be finally determined until the Company files its 2017 federal income tax return in 2018. Therefore, the Company's actual distributable earnings may be different than this estimate.
(2) In addition, there is net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) of $(504), $(4) and $1,633 included in additional paid in capital as of December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively, that was recognized prior to the IPO.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

For federal income tax purposes, the cost of investments owned at December 31, 2017 and 2016 was approximately $577,034 and $500,164, respectively.

	December 31, 2017 (1)	December 31, 2016
Tax-basis amortized cost of investments	$ 577,034	$ 500,164
Tax-basis gross unrealized appreciation on investments	47,001	37,651
Tax-basis gross unrealized depreciation on investments	(27,727)	(13,361)
Tax-basis net unrealized appreciation on investments	19,274	24,290
Fair value of investments	$ 596,308	$ 524,454

(1) The Company's tax-basis amortized cost of investments for 2017 is an estimate and will not be finally determined until 2018 when the Company receives the relevant tax forms from portfolio companies with equity investments. Therefore, the Company's actual tax-basis amortized cost of investments may be different than this estimate.

Distributions from net investment income and net realized capital gains are determined in accordance with U.S. federal tax regulations, which may differ from amounts determined in accordance with GAAP and those differences could be material. These permanent book-to-tax differences are reclassified on the consolidated statements of changes in net assets to reflect their tax character but have no impact on total net assets. The following permanent book-to-tax differences were reclassified on the consolidated statements of changes in net assets for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015.

	2017	2016	2015
Additional paid in capital	$(2,683)	$(1,700)	$(770)
Undistributed net investment income	(24)	(215)	908
Accumulated net realized gain (loss) on investments, net of taxes	2,707	1,915	(138)

Note 13. Subsequent Events

On January 3, 2018, the Company invested $19,500 in subordinated debt and common equity of AVC Investors, LLC (dba Auveco), a provider of fasteners and autobody hardware to the automotive aftermarket and general industrial markets.

On January 5, 2018, the Company exited its debt investment in United Biologics, LLC. The Company received payment in full of $8,893 on its second lien debt.

On January 8, 2018, the Company invested $11,000 in second lien debt and common equity of SpendMend LLC, a leading provider of spend visibility and audit recovery services to the healthcare industry.

On January 25, 2018, the Company exited its debt investment in Comprehensive Logistics Co., Inc. The Company received payment in full of $16,416 on its subordinated debt, which includes a prepayment penalty.

On February 2, 2018, the Company closed the public offering of approximately $43,478 in aggregate principal amount of its 5.875% notes due 2023, or the "Notes." On February 22, 2018, the underwriters exercised their option to purchase an additional $6,522 in aggregate principal of the Notes. The total net proceeds to the Company from the Notes, including the exercise of the underwriters option, after deducting underwriting discounts of approximately $1,500 and estimated offering expenses of $400, were approximately $48,100.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—(Continued)
(in thousands, except shares and per share data)

The Notes will mature on February 1, 2023 and bear interest at a rate of 5.875%. The Notes are unsecured obligations of the Company and rank pari passu with the Company's future unsecured indebtedness; effectively subordinated to all of the existing and future secured indebtedness of the Company; and structurally subordinated to all existing and future indebtedness and other obligations of any subsidiaries, financing vehicles, or similar facilities the Company may form in the future, with respect to claims on the assets of any such subsidiaries, financing vehicles, or similar facilities. The Notes may be redeemed in whole or in part at any time or from time to time at the Company's option on or after February 1, 2020. Interest on the Notes is payable quarterly on February 1, May 1, August 1 and November 1 of each year. The Notes are listed on the NASDAQ Global Select Market under the trading symbol "FDUSL." The Company may from time to time repurchase Notes in accordance with the 1940 Act and the rules promulgated thereunder. As of February 27, 2018, the outstanding principal balance of the Notes was approximately $50,000.

The indenture governing the Notes, or the "Indenture," contains certain covenants, including covenants (i) requiring the Company's compliance with the asset coverage requirements set forth in Section 18(a)(1)(A) as modified by Section 61(a)(1) of the 1940 Act, whether or not the Company continues to be subject to such provisions of the 1940 Act; (ii) requiring the Company's compliance, under certain circumstances, with a modified version of the requirements set forth in Section 18(a)(1)(B) as modified by Section 61(a)(1) of the 1940 Act, whether or not the Company continues to be subject to such provisions of the 1940 Act, prohibiting the declaration of any cash dividend or distribution upon any class of the Company's capital stock (except to the extent necessary for the Company to maintain its treatment as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code), or purchasing any such capital stock, if the Company's asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, were below 200% at the time of the declaration of the dividend or distribution or the purchase and after deducting the amount of such dividend, distribution, or purchase; and (iii) requiring the Company to provide financial information to the holders of the Notes and the Trustee if the Company ceases to be subject to the reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. These covenants are subject to limitations and exceptions that are described in the Indenture.

On February 13, 2018, the Board declared a regular quarterly dividend of $0.39 per share payable on March 23, 2018 to stockholders of record as of March 9, 2018.

On February 27, 2018, the Company invested $10,500 in second lien debt and common equity of B&B Roadway and Security Solutions, LLC, a leading manufacturer of traffic control and perimeter security solutions.

On February 28, 2018, the Company repaid $43,800 of SBA debentures with a weighted average interest rate of 4.9% which would have matured on dates ranging from March 1, 2019 to September 1, 2021.

Fidus Investment Corporation

PROSPECTUS

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION
PART C
Other Information

Item 25. Financial Statements and Exhibits

(1) Financial Statements

The following financial statements of the Company are provided in Part A of this registration statement:

Audited Financial Statements

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm
Consolidated Statements of Assets and Liabilities as of December 31, 2017 and 2016
Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015
Consolidated Statements of Changes in Net Assets for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015
Consolidated Schedules of Investments as of December 31, 2017 and 2016
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

(2) Exhibits

(a)(1)	Articles of Amendment and Restatement of the Registrant (Filed as Exhibit (a)(1) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 29, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(b)(1)	Bylaws of the Registrant (Filed as Exhibit (b)(1) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 29, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(c)	Not applicable
(d)(1)	Form of Stock Certificate of the Registrant (Filed as Exhibit (d) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 29, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(d)(2)	Form of Subscription Certificate(1)
(d)(3)	Form of Subscription Agent Agreement(1)
(d)(4)	Form of Warrant Agreement(1)
(d)(5)	Form of Indenture (Filed as Exhibit (d)(5) to Post-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-202531) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 29, 2016 and incorporated herein by reference).
(d)(6)	Form of Note(1)
(d)(7)	Form of Preferred Stock Certificate(1)
(d)(8)	Statement of Eligibility of Trustee on Form T-1 (Filed as Exhibit (d)(8) to the Registrant's post-effective Amendment No. 4 to the Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-202531) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 18, 2017 and incorporated herein by reference).
(d)(9)	First Supplemental Indenture dated as of February 2, 2018, between Fidus Investment Corporation and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee, including the form of global note attached thereto (Filed as Exhibit (d)(9) to the Registrant's post-effective Amendment No. 9 to the Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-202531) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on February 2, 2018 and incorporated herein by reference).

(d)(10)	Form of 5.875% Notes due 2023 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit (d)(9) hereto and Exhibit A therein).
(e)	Dividend Reinvestment Plan (Filed as Exhibit (e) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-182785) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on August 27, 2012 and incorporated herein by reference).
(f)(1)	Debentures Guaranteed by the SBA (Filed as Exhibit (f)(1) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 3 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on May 26, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(f)(2)	Agreement to Furnish Certain Instruments (Filed as Exhibit (f)(2) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 3 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on May 26, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(g)(1)	Investment Advisory and Management Agreement between Registrant and Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC (Filed as Exhibit (g) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 29, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(g)(2)	First Amendment to Investment Advisory and Management Agreement between Registrant and Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC (Filed as Exhibit 10.7 to the Registrant's annual report on Form 10-K (File No. 333-172550), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on March 6, 2014 and incorporated herein by reference).
(h)(1)	Form of Underwriting Agreement for Equity (Filed as Exhibit (h) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 29, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(h)(2)	Form of Underwriting Agreement for Debt(1)
(h)(3)	Underwriting Agreement dated January 30, 2018 by and among Fidus Investment Corporation, Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC and the Underwriters named therein (Filed as Exhibit (h)(6) to Post-Effective Amendment No. 9 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-202531) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on February 2, 2018 and incorporated herein by reference.
(i)	Not applicable
(j)	Custody Agreement (Filed as Exhibit (j) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 3 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on May 26, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(k)(1)	Administration Agreement between Registrant and Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC (Filed as Exhibit (k)(1) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 29, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(k)(2)	Trademark License Agreement between Registrant and Fidus Partners, LLC (Filed as Exhibit (k)(2) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 3 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on May 26, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(k)(3)	Form of Indemnification Agreement by and between Registrant and each of its directors (Filed as Exhibit (k)(3) to Pre-Effective Amendment No. 4 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-172550) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on June 10, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
(k)(4)	Senior Secured Revolving Credit Agreement, dated June 16, 204, by and among the Registrant, the lenders party thereto and ING Capital LLC as Administrative Agent filed as exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's current report on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on June 20, 2014 and incorporated herein by reference.

(k)(5)	Amendment No. 1, dated December 19, 2014, to the Senior Secured Revolving Credit Agreement dated June 16, 2014, by and among the Registrant, the lenders party thereto and ING Capital LLC as Administrative Agent filed as exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's current report on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on December 22, 2014 and incorporated herein by reference.
(k)(6)	Amendment No. 2, dated December 29, 2017, to the Senior Secured Revolving Credit Agreement dated June 16, 2014, by and among the Registrant, the lenders party thereto and ING Capital LLC as Administrative Agent filed as exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's current report on Form 8-K filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission on January 2, 2018 and incorporated herein by reference.
(l)(1)	Opinion and Consent of Eversheds Sutherland (US) LLP (Filed as Exhibit (l) to the Registrant's post-effective Amendment No. 4 to the Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-202531) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 18, 2017 and incorporated herein by reference).
(l)(2)	Opinion and Consent of Eversheds Sutherland (US) LLP(Filed as Exhibit (l)(2) to the Registrant's post-effective Amendment No. 9 to the Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-202531) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on February 2, 2018 and incorporated herein by reference).
(m)	Not applicable
(n)(1)	Consent of RSM US LLP(2)
(n)(2)	Report of RSM US LLP regarding the senior security table contained herein(2)
(o)	Not applicable
(p)	Not applicable
(q)	Not applicable
(r)(1)	Joint Code of Ethics of Registrant, Fidus Mezzanine Capital, L.P. and Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC (filed as Exhibit (r)(1) to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-182785) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 20, 2012 and incorporated herein by reference).
(r)(2)	Code of Ethics of Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC (Filed as Exhibit (r)(2) to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-182785) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 20, 2012 and incorporated herein by reference).
99.1	Form of Preliminary Prospectus Supplement for Notes offering (Filed as Exhibit 99.1 to the Registrant's Pre-effective Amendment No. 1 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-182785) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 20, 2012 and incorporated herein by reference).
99.2	Statement of Computation of Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges(2)

(1) To be filed by subsequent amendment.
(2) Filed herewith.

Item 26. Marketing Arrangements

The information contained under the heading "Plan of Distribution" on this registration statement is incorporated herein by reference and any information concerning any underwriters will be contained in the accompanying prospectus supplement, if any.

Item 27. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution

Securities and Exchange Commission registration fee	$ 22,750
FINRA filing fee	27,910
Nasdaq Global Select Market listing fees	175,000(1)
Printing expenses	60,000(1)
Legal fees and expenses	75,000(1)
Accounting fees and expenses	75,000(1)
Miscellaneous	50,000(1)
Total	$485,660 (1)

(1) These amounts are estimates.

All of the expenses set forth above shall be borne by the Company.

Item 28. Persons Controlled by or Under Common Control

The following is a list of our wholly-owned subsidiaries and the jurisdiction in which each subsidiary was organized:

Name	Jurisdiction
FCCG Equity Corp.	Delaware
FCIHA, Inc.	Delaware
FCMGI, Inc.	Delaware
FCMH Equity Corp.	Delaware
Fidus Investment GP, LLC	Delaware
Fidus Mezzanine Capital, L.P.	Delaware
Fidus Mezzanine Capital II, L.P.	Delaware
Fidus Investment Holdings, Inc.	Delaware

Item 29. Number of Holders of Securities

The following table sets forth the approximate number of record holders of our common stock as of February 27, 2018.

Title of Class	Number of Record Holders
Common Stock, $0.001 par value	19

Item 30. Indemnification

Maryland law permits a Maryland corporation to include in its charter a provision limiting the liability of its directors and officers to the corporation and its stockholders for money damages except for liability resulting from (a) actual receipt of an improper benefit or profit in money, property or services or (b) active and deliberate dishonesty established by a final judgment as being material to the cause of action. Our charter contains such a provision that eliminates directors' and officers' liability to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law, subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act.

Our charter authorizes us, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law and subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act, to indemnify any present or former director or officer or any individual who, while a director or officer and at our request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee, from and against any claim or liability to which such person may become subject or which such person may incur by reason of his or her service in any such capacity.

Our bylaws obligate us, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law and subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act, to indemnify any present or former director or officer or any individual who, while a director or officer and at our request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee and who is made, or threatened to be made, a party to the proceeding by reason of his or her service in any such capacity from and against any claim or liability to which that person may become subject or which that person may incur by reason of his or her service in any such capacity. Our bylaws also provide that, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law, with the approval of our board of directors and provided that certain conditions described in our bylaws are met, we may pay certain expenses incurred by any such indemnified person in advance of the final disposition of a proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such indemnified person to repay amounts we have so paid if it is ultimately determined that indemnification of such expenses is not authorized under our bylaws.

Maryland law requires a corporation (unless its charter provide otherwise, which our charter does not) to indemnify a director or officer who has been successful in the defense of any proceeding to which he or she is made, or threatened to be made, a party by reason of his or her service in that capacity. Maryland law permits a corporation to indemnify its present and former directors and officers, among others, against judgments, penalties, fines, settlements and reasonable expenses actually incurred by them in connection with any proceeding to which they may be made, or threatened to be made, a party by reason of their service in those or other capacities unless it is established that (a) the act or omission of the director or officer was material to the matter giving rise to the proceeding and (1) was committed in bad faith or (2) was the result of active and deliberate dishonesty, (b) the director or officer actually received an improper personal benefit in money, property or services or (c) in the case of any criminal proceeding, the director or officer had reasonable cause to believe that the act or omission was unlawful. However, under Maryland law, a Maryland corporation may not indemnify for an adverse judgment in a suit by or in the right of the corporation or for a judgment of liability on the basis that a personal benefit was improperly received, unless in either case a court orders indemnification, and then only for expenses. In addition, Maryland law permits a corporation to advance reasonable expenses to a director or officer upon the corporation's receipt of (a) a written affirmation by the director or officer of his or her good faith belief that he or she has met the standard of conduct necessary for indemnification by the corporation and (b) a written undertaking by him or her or on his or her behalf to repay the amount paid or reimbursed by the corporation if it is ultimately determined that the standard of conduct was not met.

We have obtained primary and excess insurance policies insuring our directors and officers against some liabilities they may incur in their capacity as directors and officers. Under such policies, the insurer, on our behalf, may also pay amounts for which we have granted indemnification to our directors or officers.

The Investment Advisory Agreement provides that, absent willful misfeasance, bad faith or gross negligence in the performance of its duties or by reason of the reckless disregard of its duties and obligations, Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC and its and its affiliates' officers, directors, members, managers, stockholders and employees are entitled to indemnification from us for any damages, liabilities, costs and expenses (including reasonable attorneys' fees and amounts reasonably paid in settlement) arising from the rendering of Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC's services under the Investment Advisory Agreement.

The Administration Agreement provides that, absent willful misfeasance, bad faith or negligence in the performance of its duties or by reason of the reckless disregard of its duties and obligations, Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC and its and its affiliates' officers, directors, members, managers, stockholders and employees are entitled to indemnification from us for any damages, liabilities, costs and expenses (including reasonable attorneys' fees and amounts reasonably paid in settlement) arising from the rendering of Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC's services under the Administration Agreement or otherwise as our administrator.

Insofar as indemnification for liability arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to our directors, officers and controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that in the opinion of the SEC such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by us of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of ours in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, we will, unless in the opinion of our counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by us is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

Item 31. Business and Other Connections of Investment Advisor.

A description of any other business, profession, vocation or employment of a substantial nature in which Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC, and each managing director, director or executive officer of Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC, is or has been during the past two fiscal years, engaged in for his or her own account or in the capacity of director, officer, employee, partner or trustee, is set forth in Part A of this registration statement in the section entitled “Management.” Additional information regarding the Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC and its officers and directors is set forth in its Form ADV, as filed with the SEC (File No. 801-72285), and is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 32. Location of Accounts and Records.

All accounts, books and other documents required to be maintained by Section 31(a) of the 1940 Act, and the rules thereunder are maintained at the offices of:

(1) Fidus Investment Corporation, 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201;

(2) the Transfer Agent, American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC, 59 Maiden Lane, Plaza Level, New York, New York 10038;

(3) the Custodian, U.S. Bank National Association, Corporate Trust Services, One Federal Street, 3rd Floor, Boston, Massachusetts 02110; and

(4) Fidus Investment Advisors, LLC, 1603 Orrington Avenue, Suite 1005, Evanston, Illinois 60201.

Item 33. Management Services

Not Applicable.

Item 34. Undertakings

(1) We undertake to suspend the offering of shares until the prospectus is amended if (a) subsequent to the effective date of its registration statement, the net asset value declines more than 10.0% from its net asset value as of the effective date of the registration statement; or (b) the net asset value increases to an amount greater than the net proceeds as stated in the prospectus.

(2) Not applicable.

(3) In the event that the securities being registered are to be offered to existing shareholders pursuant to warrants or rights, and any securities not taken by shareholders are to be reoffered to the public, we undertake to supplement the prospectus, after the expiration of the subscription period, to set forth the results of the subscription offer, the transactions by underwriters during the subscription period, the amount of unsubscribed securities to be purchased by underwriters, and the terms of any subsequent reoffering thereof; and further, if any public offering by the underwriters of the securities being registered is to be made on terms differing materially from those set forth on the cover page of the prospectus, we undertake to file a post-effective amendment to set forth the terms of such offering.

(4) We hereby undertake:

(a) to file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

a. to include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act;

b. to reflect in the prospectus or prospectus supplement any facts or events after the effective date of this registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in this registration statement; and

c. to include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in this registration statement or any material change to such information in this registration statement.

(b) for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act, that each such post-effective amendment to this registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of those securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(c) to remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.

(d) for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act to any purchaser, that if we are subject to Rule 430C under the Securities Act, each prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 497(b), (c), (d) or (e) under the Securities Act as part of this registration statement relating to an offering, other than prospectuses filed in reliance on Rule 430A under the Securities Act, shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the date it is first used after effectiveness. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus or prospectus supplement that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such first use, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such date of first use.

(e) for the purpose of determining liability of the Company under the Securities Act to any purchaser in the initial distribution of securities, in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell such securities to the purchaser, that if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, we will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to the purchaser:

a. any preliminary prospectus or prospectus or prospectus supplement of us relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 497 under the Securities Act;

b. the portion of any advertisement pursuant to Rule 482 under the Securities Act relating to the offering containing material information about us or our securities provided by or on behalf of us; and

c. any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by us to the purchaser.

(5) Not applicable.

(6) Not applicable.

(7) We undertake to file a post-effective amendment to the registration statement pursuant to Section 8(c) of the Securities Act of 1933 in connection with any rights offering off of the registration statement.

(8) We hereby undertake to file a post-effective amendment containing a prospectus pursuant to Section 8(c) of the Securities Act prior to any offering of shares of our common stock below net asset value ("NAV") if the cumulative dilution to our NAV per share, together with the cumulative dilution to our NAV per share of any prior offerings made pursuant to this registration statement (the "current registration statement"), exceeds fifteen percent (15%). If we file a new post-effective amendment to the current registration statement pursuant to Section 8(c) of the Securities Act, the threshold would reset.

Table of Contents

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, and/or the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Registrant has duly caused this Registration Statement on Form N-2 to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in Evanston, Illinois, on the 1st day of March, 2018.

FIDUS INVESTMENT CORPORATION

By: /s/ Edward H. Ross
Name: Edward H. Ross
Title: Chairman and Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

Signature	Title	Date
/s/ EDWARD H. ROSS Edward H. Ross	Chairman and Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)	March 1, 2018
* Thomas C. Lauer	President and Director	March 1, 2018
/s/ SHELBY E. SHERARD Shelby E. Sherard	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)	March 1, 2018
* Raymond L. Anstiss	Director	March 1, 2018
* Charles D. Hyman	Director	March 1, 2018
* John A. Mazzarino	Director	March 1, 2018

* Signed by Edward H. Ross pursuant to a power of attorney signed by each individual and filed with the Registration Statement on March 3, 2016.

Exhibit n(1)

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the use in this Registration Statement on Form N-2 of Fidus Investment Corporation and Subsidiaries (collectively, the Company) of our reports dated March 1, 2018, relating to our audits of the consolidated financial statements, the senior securities table and the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting of the Company appearing in the Registration Statement.

We also consent to the reference to our firm under the headings “Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm”, “Senior Securities”, and “Selected Consolidated Financial Data” in such Registration Statement.

/s/ RSM US LLP

Chicago, Illinois
March 1, 2018

Exhibit n(2)

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

Board of Directors and Stockholders
Fidus Investment Corporation and Subsidiaries

Our audit of the consolidated financial statements and internal control over financial reporting referred to in our report dated March 1, 2018, (appearing in the accompanying registration statement on Form N-2) also included an audit of the senior securities table of Fidus Investment Corporation and Subsidiaries appearing in this Form N-2. This table is the responsibility of Fidus Investment Corporation and Subsidiaries' management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our audits of the consolidated financial statements.

In our opinion, the senior securities table, when considered in relation to the basic consolidated financial statements taken as a whole, presents fairly in all material respects the information set forth therein.

/s/ RSM US LLP

Chicago, Illinois
March 1, 2018

Exhibit 99.2

Fidus Investment Corporation
Computation of Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges

	Years Ended December 31, 2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
	(Dollars in Thousands)				
Earnings:					
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	$27,203	$19,485	$25,977	$41,570	$43,951
Add back: Income tax provision	246	383	390	425	220
Add back: Income tax provision (benefit) on realized gains on investments	493	17	(39)	205	2,204
Add back: Fixed charges	7,076	7,507	9,428	10,594	9,893
Total earnings	$35,018	$27,392	$35,756	$52,794	$56,268
Fixed Charges:					
Interest and financing expenses	$ 7,076	$ 7,507	$ 9,428	$10,594	$ 9,893
Total fixed charges	$ 7,076	$ 7,507	$ 9,428	$10,594	$ 9,893
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges	4.95	3.65	3.79	4.98	5.69

Footnote disclosure:

Footnote (1) disclosure and calculation:

	Years Ended December 31, 2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
	(Dollars in Thousands)				
Earnings:					
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	$27,203	$ 19,485	$25,977	$ 41,570	$43,951
Add back: Income tax provision	246	383	390	425	220
Add back: Income tax provision (benefit) on realized gains on investments	493	17	(39)	205	2,204
Add back: Fixed charges	7,076	7,507	9,428	10,594	9,893
Exclude: Net change in unrealized (appreciation) depreciation on investments	22,188	(13,250)	10,086	(29,009)	5,426
Total earnings	$57,206	$ 14,142	$45,842	$ 23,785	$61,694
Fixed Charges:					
Interest and financing expenses	$ 7,076	$ 7,507	$ 9,428	$ 10,594	$ 9,893
Total fixed charges	$ 7,076	$ 7,507	$ 9,428	$ 10,594	$ 9,893
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges	8.08	1.88	4.86	2.25	6.24

Footnote (2) disclosure and calculation:

	Years Ended December 31, 2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
	(Dollars in Thousands)				
Earnings:					
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	$ 27,203	$ 19,485	$25,977	$ 41,570	$ 43,951
Add back: Income tax provision	246	383	390	425	220
Add back: Income tax provision (benefit) on realized gains on investments	493	17	(39)	205	2,204
Add back: Fixed charges	7,076	7,507	9,428	10,594	9,893
Exclude: Net change in unrealized (appreciation) depreciation on investments	22,188	(13,250)	10,086	(29,009)	5,426
Exclude: Net realized losses (gains) on investments	(30,588)	17,029	(9,531)	13,835	(17,904)
Total earnings	$ 26,618	$ 31,171	$36,311	$ 37,620	$ 43,790
Fixed Charges:					
Interest and financing expenses	$ 7,076	$ 7,507	$ 9,428	$ 10,594	$ 9,893
Total fixed charges	$ 7,076	$ 7,507	$ 9,428	$ 10,594	$ 9,893
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges	3.76	4.15	3.85	3.55	4.43